SIMetrix

SPICE and Mixed Mode Simulation

User's Manual

Copyright ©1992-2006 Catena Software Ltd.

Trademarks
PSpice is a trademark of Cadence Design Systems Inc.
Star-Hspice is a trademark of Synopsis Inc.

Contact
Catena Software Ltd., Terence House, 24 London Road,
Thatcham, RG18 4LQ, United Kingdom

Tel: +44 1635 866395
Fax: +44 1635 868322
Email: info@catena.uk.com
Internet http://www.catena.uk.com

Copyright © Catena Software Ltd 1992-2006
SIMetrix 5.2 User's Manual 1/1/06

Catena Software Ltd. is a member of the Catena group of companies.
See http://www.catena.nl

Table of Contents

Chapter 1 Introduction

Installation 15
General Information 15
Uninstalling 15
A Note for System Administrators 16
Installation - Linux Version 17
To Install from CD 17
Installing to Other Locations 17
Licensing 18
Overview 18
Installing Stand Alone License Files 18
Network Licensing- Overview 19
Installing Network Licensing for Windows 19
Installing Network Licensing for Linux 21
Starting SIMetrix Network Version 22
Using TCP Ports 22
Changing the Location of the License Server 24
License Server Version 24
Obtaining a License File 24
Using the License Server 25
What Is Simetrix 26
What is SIMPLIS 27
Why Simulate? 28
System Requirements 29
Operating System 29
Hardware 29
Recommended System 29
Upgrade Notes 30
Upgrading from Version 4.5 30
Upgrading from Version 5.0 30

Chapter 2 Quick Start

Examples and Tutorials - Where are They? 31
Simulation for the Novice 31
Tutorial 1 - A Simple Ready to Run Circuit 32
Tutorial 2 - A Simple SMPS Circuit 40
Tutorial 3 - Installing Third Party Models 48

Chapter 3 Getting Started

Simulation Modes - SIMetrix or SIMPLIS 52
Using the Schematic Editor 52
Creating a Schematic 52
Circuit Rules 54
Circuit Stimulus 55
Waveform Generator 55
PWL Source 56
Power Supply/Fixed Current Source 56
AC Source 56
Universal Source 56
Analysis Modes 57
Overview 57
Using the Choose Analysis Dialog 58
Setting Up a SIMPLIS Simulation 62
Manual Entry of Simulator Commands 64
Running the Simulator 64
SIMetrix 64
SIMPLIS 65
Plotting Simulation Results 65
Overview 65
Fixed Probes 65
Random Probes 66

Chapter 4 Schematic Editor

Schematic Windows and Sheets 69
Schematic Editor Window 69
Editing Operations 70
Wiring 74
Bus Connections 75
Copying to the Clipboard 76
Annotating a Schematic 77
Checking the Schematic 77
Schematic Preferences 77
Adding and Removing Worksheets 78
Finding and Specifying Net Names 78
Hierarchical Schematic Entry 78
Top-Down Method 79
Bottom-up method 79
Navigating Hierarchical designs 80
Placing - Full vs Relative Path 80
Connecting Busses in a Hierarchy 81

Global Nets 82
Global Pins 82
Passing Parameters Through a Hierarchy 84
Missing Hierarchical Blocks 84
Printing 84
Printing a Single Schematic Sheet 84
Printing a Hierarchical Schematic 84
File Operations 85
Saving 85
Exporting Windows Meta File 85
Exporting to Earlier Versions of SIMetrix 85
ASCII format 85
Creating Schematic Symbols - Overview 86
Symbol Generator 86
To Create a New Symbol 87
To Create a New Symbol From an Existing One 87
Symbol Shape 87
Pins 88
Netlist Order 88
Symbol Pin Order 88
Modifying Pins 88
Properties 88
Placing Symbol on Schematic 91
Graphically Editing Generated Symbols 91
Graphical Symbol Editor 91
Notes 91
Symbol Editor Window 91
The Elements of a Symbol 92
Creating a New Symbol 92
Editing an Existing Symbol 92
Drawing Straight Line Segments 92
Drawing Arcs, Circles and Ellipses 92
Placing and Defining Pins 93
Defining Properties 95
Saving Symbols 98
Creating a Symbol from a Script 99
Properties 100
Overview 100
What is a Property? 100
Template Property 102
Editing Properties in a Schematic 103
Restoring Properties 103
Template Property 103
Overview 103

Template Property Format 104
Template Scripts 111
Symbol Library Manager 111
Operations 112
PSpice Schematics Translation 114
Configuring the Translator 114
If you don't have PSpice 114
Reading PSpice Schematics 115
Installing PSpice Libraries for Use with SIMetrix 115
What the Translator will do 115
Limitations 115
Using Schematic Editor for CMOS IC Design 116
MOSFET Symbols 116
Automatic Area and Perimeter Calculation 117
Editing the MOS Symbols 117
Further Information 118
How Symbols are Stored 118
Summary of Simulator Devices 119

Chapter 5 Components

Numbered Components 121
Numbered Components in SIMPLIS 122
SPICE to SIMPLIS Conversion 123
Generic Components 127
Saturable Inductors and Transformers 129
Ideal Transformers 131
Coupling Factor 132
Mutual Inductors 132
Resistors, Capacitors and Inductors 133
Potentiometer 134
Lossless Transmission Line 135
Lossy Transmission Line 135
Fixed Voltage and Current Sources 135
Controlled Sources 136
Voltage Controlled Switch 136
Switch with Hysteresis 137
Generic ADCs and DACs 137
Generic Digital Devices 138
Functional Blocks - Overview 138
Non-linear Transfer Function 139
Laplace Transfer Function 141
Arbitrary Non-linear Passive Devices 142
Creating Models 143

Overview....143
Creating Soft Recovery Diode Models....143
Subcircuits....145
Overview....145
Creating a Sub-circuit from a Schematic....145
Calling a Sub-circuit in a Schematic....147
Special Components....149
Initial Conditions....149
Nodesets....149
Keeps....150
Parameters and Expressions....150
Example....150

Chapter 6 Device Library and Parts Management

Using Parts Browser....153
Parts Management - Installing Models....154
Overview....154
Procedure....154
Drag and Drop Model Installation....154
Removing Model Libraries....156
Associating Models with Symbols....156
Importing Models to a Schematic....159
Sundry Topics....159
.LIB Control....159
Drag and Drop to Schematic....160
Library Diagnostics....160
Local Models....160
Library Indexing Mechanism....160
Duplicate Model Names....160

Chapter 7 Analysis Modes

Running Simulations....163
Overview....163
Starting, Pausing and Aborting Analyses....163
Running Analyses in Asynchronous Mode....164
Running an Analysis on a Netlist....164
Transient Analysis....164
Setting up a Transient Analysis....164
Restarting a Transient Run....167
Transient Snapshots....167
Operating Point....169
Sweep Modes....170

Device Sweep 170
Temperature 171
Model Parameter 171
Parameter 171
Frequency 173
Monte Carlo 173
Setting up a Swept Analysis 173
DC Sweep 174
Setting up a DC sweep 174
Example 175
AC Sweep 176
Setting up an AC sweep 176
Example 177
Noise Analysis 177
Setting up an AC Noise analysis 177
Plotting Results of Noise Analysis 178
Example 1 179
Example 2 180
Real Time Noise 181
Setting Up a Real Time Noise Analysis 181
Transfer Function 182
Setting up a Transfer Function Analysis 182
Plotting Transfer Function Analysis Results 183
Example 183
Pole-zero 185
Setting up a Pole-zero Analysis 185
Viewing Results 185
Example 185
Sensitivity 185
Setting up a Sensitivity Analysis 186
Simulator Options 186
Setting Simulator Options 186
Multi-step Analyses 188
Setting up a Multi-step Analysis 189
Example 1 190
Example 2 191
Safe Operating Area Testing 192
Overview 192
Defining Simple Limit Tests 192
Advanced SOA Limit Testing 193

Chapter 8 SIMPLIS Analysis Modes

Transient Analysis 195

Setting up a Transient Analysis 196
Periodic Operating Point (POP) 197
Setting up a POP Analysis 198
AC Analysis 199
Setting up an AC Analysis 199
SIMPLIS Options 199
Multi-step and Monte Carlo Analyses 200
Overview 200
Comparison Between SIMetrix and SIMPLIS 200
Setting up a SIMPLIS Multi-step Parameter Analysis 200
Setting Up a SIMPLIS Monte Carlo Analysis 202
Tolerances and Distribution Functions 202
Performance Analysis and Histograms 203
Initial Condition Back-annotation 203
Overview 203
How to Back-annotate a Schematic 204
Disable/Enable Initial Conditions 204
Back-annotation Errors 204
Editing Back-annotated Initial Conditions 204
How Does it Work? 204
Hierarchical Blocks and Subcircuits 205

Chapter 9 Graphs, Probes and Data Analysis

Elements of the Graph Window 206
Main Window 206
Windows and Tabbed Sheets 206
Graph Toolbar 207
Probes: Fixed vs. Random 207
Fixed Probes 208
Fixed Voltage and Current Probe Options 209
Fixed Bus Probe Options 211
Using Fixed Probes in Hierarchical Designs 211
Adding Fixed Probes After a Run has Started 212
Changing Update Period and Start Delay 212
Random Probes 212
General Behaviour 212
Functions 212
Notes on Probe Functions 214
Plotting Noise Analysis Results 214
Plotting Transfer Function Analysis Results 215
Fourier Analysis 215
Probing Busses 220
Bus Probe Options 221

Plotting an Arbitrary Expression 222
Using Random Probes in Hierarchical Designs 227
Plot Journals and Updating Curves 228
Overview 228
Update Curves 229
Plot Journals 229
Graph Layout - Multiple Y-Axis Graphs 229
AutoAxis Feature 231
Manually Creating Axes and Grids 231
Selecting Axes 231
Moving Curves to Different Axis or Grid 231
Deleting Axes 232
Editing Axes 232
Reordering Grids and Digital Axes 233
Plotting the Results from a Previous Simulation 233
Combining Results from Different Runs 234
Curve Operations 235
Selecting Curves 235
Deleting Curves 235
Hiding and Showing Curves 235
Re-titling Curves 235
Highlighting Curves 236
Graph Cursors 236
Overview 236
Cursor Operations 237
Cursor Readout 238
Cursor Functions 240
Curve Measurements 240
Overview 240
Available Measurements 241
Notes on Curve Measurement Algorithms 244
Plots from curves 246
Graph Zooming and Scrolling 246
Copying to the Clipboard 247
Overview 247
Copy Data to the Clipboard 248
Copying Graphics to the Clipboard 248
Paste Data from the Clipboard 248
Using the Internal Clipboard 248
Annotating a Graph 249
Curve Markers 249
Legend Box 250
Text Box 252
Caption and Free Text 252

Saving Graphs 252
Saving 253
Restoring 253
Viewing DC Operating Point Results 253
Schematic Annotation 253
Displaying Device Operating Point Info 253
List File Data 253
Other Methods of Obtaining Bias Data 254
Bias Annotation in SIMPLIS 254
Bias Annotation Display Precision 254
Bias Annotation and Long Transient Runs 254
Saving Data 254
Saving the Data of a Simulation 254
Restoring SImulation Data 255
Performance Analysis and Histograms 255
Overview 255
Example 256
Histograms 258
Goal Functions 261
Data Import and Export 270
Importing SPICE3 Raw Files 270
Importing Data 270
Exporting SPICE3 Raw Files 271
Exporting Data 271
Launching Other Applications 271
Data Files Text Format 271

Chapter 10 The Command Shell

Command Line 273
Command History 273
Message Window 273
Multiple commands on one line 274
Scripts 274
Command Line Editing 274
Maximum Line Length 274
Command Line Switches 274
Editing the Menu System 274
Overview 274
Procedure 275
Message Window 277
Menu Reference 277
Keyboard 277

Chapter 11 Command and Function Reference

Command Summary 282
Reference 282
DefKey 282
DefMenu 284
DelMenu 286
ListStdKeys 286
OpenGroup 286
ReadLogicCompatibility 287
Reset 288
SaveRhs 288
Set 289
Show 289
Unset 290
Function Summary 290
Function Reference 293
abs(real/complex) 293
arg(real/complex) 293
arg_rad(real/complex) 293
atan(real/complex) 293
cos(real/complex) 293
db(real/complex) 293
diff(real) 293
exp(real/complex) 293
fft(real [, string]) 294
FIR(real, real [, real]) 294
Floor(real) 295
GroupDelay(real/complex) 295
Histogram(real, real) 295
Iff(real, any, any) 296
IIR(real, real [, real]) 296
im(real/complex), imag(real/complex) 297
integ(real) 297
Interp(real, real [, real, real]) 297
IsComplex(any) 298
length(any) 298
ln(real/complex) 298
log10(real/complex), log(real/complex) 298
mag(real/complex), magnitude(real/complex) 299
maxidx(real/complex) 299
Maxima(real [, real, string]) 299
Maximum(real/complex [, real, real]) 300
mean(real/complex) 300
Mean1(real [, real, real]) 300

minidx(real/complex) 300
Minima(real [, real, string]) 300
Minimum(real/complex [, real, real]) 301
norm(real/complex) 301
ph(real/complex), phase(real/complex) 301
phase_rad(real/complex) 301
Range(real/complex [, real, real]) 301
re(real/complex), real(real/complex) 301
Ref(real/complex) 301
Rms(real) 302
RMS1(real [, real, real]) 302
rnd(real) 302
RootSumOfSquares(real [, real, real]) 302
sign(real) 302
sin(real/complex) 302
sqrt(real/complex) 302
SumNoise(real [, real, real]) 302
tan(real/complex) 303
Truncate(real [, real, real]) 303
unitvec(real) 303
vector(real) 303
XFromY(real, real [, real, real]) 303
XY(real, real) 304
YFromX(real, real [, real]) 304

Chapter 12 Monte Carlo Analysis

An Example 305
Component Tolerance Specification 307
Setting Device Tolerances 307
Model Tolerances 308
Matching Devices 308
Random Distribution 309
Running Monte Carlo 309
Overview 309
Setting up a Single Step Monte Carlo Sweep 309
Setting up a Multi Step Monte Carlo Run 310
Running a Monte Carlo Analysis 310
Setting the Seed Value 310
Analysing Monte-Carlo Results 311
Plots 311
Creating Histograms 312

Chapter 13 Sundry Topics

Overview 313
Definition 313
Configuration File Example 314
Using Symbolic Names 314
SIMetrix Command Line Parameters 315
Using startup.ini 316
Configuration Settings 316
Overview 316
Default Configuration Location 316
Application Data Directory 317
Specifying Other Locations for Config Settings 317
Options 317
Overview 317
Using the Options Dialog 317
Using the Set and Unset commands 323
Colours and Fonts 331
Colours 331
Fonts 331
User Defined Key and Menu Definitions 332
Menu Short-cuts 333
User Defined Toolbars and Buttons 333
Startup Script 333

Chapter 1 Introduction

Installation - Windows Version

Installation

If you are upgrading from an earlier version, you must install to a new folder. Your previous version will continue to function as before.

See below for information on upgrading.

Procedure - Installing from CD

Insert CD. If AutoRun is enabled, a simple dialog box should appear automatically. If not execute SETUP.EXE in the Setup directory of the CD.

We recommend that SIMetrix is always installed on a local drive. By modern standards it is a compact application occupying less than 40MBytes so therefore consumes negligible resources.

Upgrading

If you are upgrading an earlier version of SIMetrix, when you run SIMetrix 5.1 for the first time you will be asked if you would like to migrate your old preference settings. If you choose to do this, your old settings such as colours, fonts and window locations will be copied across but not any file locations including model libraries. You will need to update these manually. Also, if you defined any new symbols, they will not automatically be copied across. See “Symbol Library Manager” on page 111 for details on how to copy symbols from an earlier version.

Please read “Upgrade Notes” on page 30.

General Information

All SIMetrix files are installed in the directory tree you specify to the setup program. No files are copied to any other location and no system files are updated or added. (But, SIMetrix does write files to other locations when it is run - see “Uninstalling” below).

SIMetrix does not use any files that may be shared with other applications other than those that form part of the standard operating system. This means that installing SIMetrix cannot affect the running of other applications.

SIMetrix does not use the system registry for any of its settings. Some settings get written to the registry by the installer, but SIMetrix itself does not use them.

Uninstalling

Nearly all applications provide an uninstall facility and SIMetrix is no exception. Uninstall utilities rarely if ever completely remove all traces of the application and

SIMetrix is no exception there either! Instead we have detailed below where everything is put so that a total uninstall is possible.

To uninstall SIMetrix:

1. In the system control panel, select Add/Remove Programs
2. Select SIMetrix then press Add/Remove

This will delete the program in accordance with Microsoft guidelines which stipulates that only files actually copied to the system during the install process will actually be deleted. Any files created after installation will still be present. Any remaining files will be in the following locations:

- Application root directory. Typically this is C:\Program Files\SIMetrix
- Application data directory. See "Application Data Directory" on page 317
- In a directory called SIMetrixTempData under the system defined temporary directory. This is the directory pointed to by the TEMP or TMP environment variables.
- Any other location specified in a Save operation.

SIMetrix will not place files in any other location unless you explicitly ask it to.

A Note for System Administrators

The SIMetrix standard installation makes some assumptions about how the user's system is setup and used as follows:

1. The user has exclusive access to the machine
2. The user has administrator privilege

If these conditions don't apply then some minor modifications may need to be made.

The main issue is the examples directory. This contains a number of example schematics and generally the user must have write access to them. It is also desirable for the user to have exclusive access. If one or other of the conditions above don't apply then you can either:

1. Install SIMetrix in non-administrator mode and logged in as the end user. In this case SIMetrix will install to a location exclusive to that user and to which he or she will have write access

OR

2. Install in administrator mode and make a copy of the example files to the directory 'My Documents\SIMetrix'. After SIMetrix first starts, you should delete the 'Examples' short cut that is automatically created in the 'My Documents\SIMetrix' directory

Other potentially user editable files also exist in support\symbollibs and support\models. Although these files can be edited by the user, our general recommendation is that they remain unchanged. There are facilities within the program to edit symbols and models without editing the standard files.

Installation - Linux Version

Currently SIMetrix for Linux has to be installed manually, but the procedure is nevertheless straightforward. Before proceeding, make sure you are using a supported distribution. See "System Requirements" on page 29 for details.

To Install from CD

Insert and mount CD. The following assumes that the CD is mounted at /mnt/cdrom. Proceed as follows:

1. Become root.
2. cd /usr/local
3. Extract the simetrix.tar file:

   tar xf /mnt/cdrom/linux/simetrix.tar
4. You can skip this stage if you are using Redhat 8 or later, or SusE 8.1 or later. Extract the lib_extra.tar file:

   tar xf /mnt/cdrom/linux/lib_extra.tar
5. This stage is optional. A number of example files are also provided and these may also be installed if required. Simply copy the examples tree to a suitable location where you have read-write access. We recommend $HOME/simetrix/examples:

   ```
   mkdir /home/username/simetrix
   cp -R /mnt/cdrom/examples /home/username/simetrix
   ```

   You will also need to change the ownership of the examples:

   ```
   chown -R username:group /home/username/simetrix
   ```

   Replace *username* and *group* as appropriate. The examples will still run if you leave the ownership at root, but you will not be able to edit the schematics.
6. To start Simetrix run /usr/local/simetrix_51/bin/SIMetrix. You may wish to set up some appropriate means to start simetrix in a more convenient manner such as by creating an icon for your chosen desktop environment.
7. If you have purchased a stand-alone license, you should leave the CDROM mounted for the time being as your license file will usually be located on it.
8. Exit to user mode.

Installing to Other Locations

The above procedure will install SIMetrix to /usr/local/simetrix_51 and additional files to /usr/lib/simetrix/v5.0.

You may relocate the entire /usr/local/simetrix_51 tree to any location that you choose, but you must keep the complete structure intact.

The contents of /usr/lib/simetrix/v5.0 may *not* be relocated. If disk space on the partition holding /usr/local is scarce, then you can move the directory and drop a symbolic link in its place.

Do not under any circumstances be tempted to move the contents of /usr/lib/simetrix/v5.0 to a global library directory such as /usr/lib. SIMetrix will probably work fine, but other applications could break, in particular, the KDE desktop environment.

Licensing

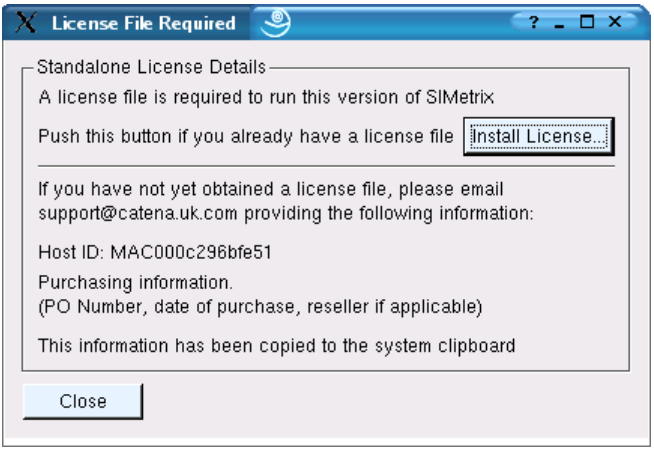
Overview

Essentially there are two classes of license namely, stand-alone licenses controlled by a single license file and network licenses controlled by a license server.

Installing Stand Alone License Files

Stand-alone license files are usually *pre-burned* on the SIMetrix CD and - on Windows systems - are automatically installed during the setup process. If this is the case, no action needs to be taken to setup a SIMetrix or SIMetrix/SIMPLIS license.

In cases where the license file is not automatically installed, such as on Linux systems, you will be prompted to find a license file with a dialog similar to the following.


License File Required
Standalone License Details
A license file is required to run this version of SIMetrix
Push this button if you already have a license file
Install License...
If you have not yet obtained a license file, please email support@catena.uk.com providing the following information:
Host ID: MAC000c296bfe51
Purchasing information.
(PO Number, date of purchase, reseller if applicable)
This information has been copied to the system clipboard
Close

(The above screen captured image was taken from a SusE Linux system. The layout will be similar for Windows and other Linux distributions, although the style may be quite different.)

If you have already received a license file, perhaps by Email, then simply press Install License... and locate the license file on your machine. SIMetrix will copy this file to the correct location. On Linux standalone systems, you will normally find the license file on the install CD at /mnt/cdrom/license.

If you do not yet have a license file, please email support@catena.uk.com providing the Host ID and Serial Number information supplied.

Standalone Licensing for Remote X Servers

Linux only: Standalone SIMetrix licenses cannot be used on a remote X-server. If you wish to use SIMetrix on such systems you *must* use a network license.

Network Licensing- Overview

SIMetrix uses the FLEXlm license manager from Macrovision.

Full end user documentation on this product can be found in \docs\flexlm\all.htm (/mnt/cdrom/docs/flexlm/all.htm) on the installation CDROM. However, most of what you will need to know to setup the system is contained within this chapter.

To use the license manager, a license server must be installed and started on a single machine on your network. The machine must be running Windows NT4, Windows 2000, Windows XP or later and use TCP/IP as its transport protocol. SIMetrix only products, that is without SIMPLIS, may also be licensed from a Linux machine even if the application itself is running on Windows. Note that Windows 95/98/ME systems are not supported.

Before you can use the license server, you will need a license file which we will supply you. The license file locks the server to a particular machine identified by its Host ID which is either an Ethernet ID or optionally the ID of a FLEXid dongle (Windows only). Before we can provide you with the license file we need to know the Host ID of your license server. See “Obtaining a License File” on page 24 for details.

Installing Network Licensing for Windows

Copying Files

No automatic installation program is supplied but the process in nevertheless straightforward. Simply copy all the files from the CD in the directory \flexlm\windows to a directory of your choice on the license server. Also copy the license file that we supply you to the same directory. License files have the extension .lic

Installing License Server as a Service

We recommend that the license server is installed as a *service*. When installed as a service, the license manager will be running all the time, even if no user is logged in, and will automatically be started when the machine is booted.

To install as a service, open a command prompt window (i.e. a DOS prompt) then CD to the directory where you copied the files. Type at the command line:

```
installs
```

This will install FLEXlm as a service and also automatically start it. A log file will be created in the same directory called LMGRD.LOG

You will not need to repeat the above procedure when the machine is re-booted. The services will start automatically even if no user is logged on.

Monitoring Service

You can check that the service has been installed using the Windows control panel. The procedure is slightly different for Windows NT4 than Windows 2000/XP.

On Windows NT4:

1. Open the Windows Control Panel
2. Select the Services icon.
3. You should see FLEXlm License Manager as one of the services with the Status shown as Started

On Windows 2000 and XP:

1. Open the Windows Control Panel
2. Select the Administrative Tools icon.
3. Select the Services icon.
4. You should see FLEXlm License Manager as one of the services with the Status shown as Started

Stopping and Starting the Service

Proceed as for Monitoring Service. Select flexlm item then for Windows NT press Start or Stop button and for Windows 2000/XP right click then select appropriate menu item.

Service Installation Options

The *installs* program has an option allowing the license file to be located in locations other then the directory containing the license manager. You can also change the name and location of the log file and the name of the service. The full syntax is:

installs [-n *service_name*] [-c *license_path*] [-l *logfile_path*]

service_name	Name of service, enclose name in quotation marks (“) if it contains spaces. The default is “Flexlm license manager”.
license_path	File system path of license file. Path is relative to current working directory.
logfile_path	File system path of log file. Path is relative to current working directory.

Removing the License Server Service

To uninstall the license server, open a command prompt window (i.e. a DOS prompt) then CD to the directory where you copied the license manager files. Type at the command line:

```
installs -r
```

This will attempt to stop the license server before uninstalling it. If this process fails, the service will be marked for deletion and will actually be deleted when the machine is next re-booted.

Starting the License Manager Manually

It is not compulsory to run the license manager as a service. It can be run as a normal application. However, it won't be started automatically when the machine is started and also required a user to be logged on.

To start the license manager manually, open a command prompt window then CD to the directory where you copied the files. Type at the command line:

```
lmgrd -c <license_path> [-z]
```

If -z is specified, the server will run in the current command prompt window, otherwise a new window will be opened.

Installing Network Licensing for Linux

Copying Files

1. Create a suitable directory on your machine for the FLEXlm files. The following assumes /usr/local/flexlm but you can use any location
2. Create target directory

   ```
   cd /usr/local
   mkdir flexlm
   cd flexlm
   ```

3. Copy the license manager files from the CD. These are at cdrom/Flexlm/linux:

   ```
   cp /mnt/cdrom/linux/Flexlm/linux/flexlm.tar .
   ```

4. Extract from tar ball:

   ```
   tar xf flexlm.tar
   ```

5. Copy the license file we have supplied to a suitable location. You may choose to use the same directory as the FLEXlm files.

Starting/Stopping License Manager

The following assumes that you have installed the license manager to /usr/local/flexlm and the license file is in the same directory.

To start the license manager:

1. `cd /usr/local/flexlm`
2. `./lmgrd -c licensefile`

   where *licensefile* is the name of the license file.

To stop the license manager:

1. `./lmutil/lmdown -q`

You may wish to install a run-level script to start up the license manager automatically when the machine is booted or enters a particular run level. However, this is really a system issue and is beyond the scope of this manual.

Starting SIMetrix Network Version

When you start SIMetrix for the very first time, it will be necessary to enter details of the license server.

You will be presented with a dialog box asking for the name of the license server...

This is the unique name assigned to every machine on a network. If you do not know this, ask your system administrator. You can also enter the IP address of the server in this box.

If required you can also enter a TCP port number. When asked for the license server name, press Advanced... and enter the required port number. For more information on ports and the circumstances when you would use them, see "Using TCP Ports" on page 22.

Using TCP Ports

In most situations, you can ignore this section. Situations where you need to know about ports are:

1. SIMetrix takes a long time to acquire a license
2. You are accessing the license manager through a firewall

The license manager communicates with the application using the TCP/IP protocol - the same protocol used for the Internet and virtually every LAN. TCP communications always specify a 'port' which is a number between 1 and 64000 and identifies a kind of communication channel. By default, the FLEXlm license manager uses one of the ports in the range 27000 to 27009 and the application will scan through these in sequence.

In most situations the server will use port 27000 and, as this is the first port to be scanned by the application, everything will work fine.

In some situations, the server might use another port usually because 27000 etc. is already in use. With the default settings, this may cause a start up delay as SIMetrix searches for the correct port. This problem mostly occurs when running under Windows. In this situation, specifying the exact port number at both ends will resolve this problem. See below to find out how to do this.

If you are accessing the license manager through a firewall, you will need to open up a suitable TCP port. In this situation, it is best to specify the exact port number so that only one port needs to be opened.

Specifying the License Server Port

To specify the port used by the license server, you must edit the license file. Simply add the port number to the end of the SERVER line. E.g:

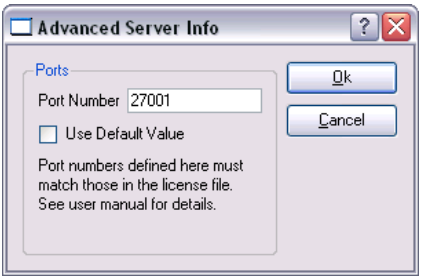
SERVER NT_SERV1 000CF1C97B71 27001

The above specifies port number 27001

Specifying the Application Port Number

When SIMetrix prompts you for server license information with...

...press the Advanced... button. You will a dialog box like...



... enter the port number as required.

If you have already entered license information and wish to change it, select the menu Help|Reinstall License... then restart SIMetrix. This will force the re-entry of license information.

Changing the Location of the License Server

If you need to move the license server to a different machine, then the end users' machines will also need to be re-configured.

To do this start SIMetrix then select the menu Help|Reinstall License... then re-start.This will delete all license information from the end user's machine. When you re-start SIMetrix, you will be prompted to re-enter the name of the license server.

Note that the above procedure can be used even if the license server is not running. SIMetrix will still run with no license present, but the simulator will be disabled.

License Server Version

If you have upgraded SIMetrix from version 4.5 or earlier, we strongly recommend that you update the license server to the latest flexlm version which is currently 9.5. The files needed can be obtained from http://www.catena.uk.com/Pages/users.html if you don't have the latest CD. To update, shutdown the license server then replace all the supplied files. Once done the server may be restarted. (See "Stopping and Starting the Service" on page 20 for details for Windows.)

You can find which version you are using with the lmutil utility. Run:

```
lmutil lmver NEWTECH
```

The result will be one of 7.0d, 7.2i, or 9.2.x. (8.2a was also shipped specially to some users). If the version you have is 7.0d then you *must* update as that version will not work with version 5.1 of SIMetrix. If you are using 7.2i or 8.2a we recommend you update now as these versions will not function with future versions of SIMetrix.

Obtaining a License File

Before we can issue you with a license file, we need two pieces of information:

1. The Ethernet address of the license server. The Ethernet address is a 12 digit hexadecimal number and is associated with the Ethernet adapter in the server. It is also known as the MAC address or sometimes the 'physical' address.
2. The computer/hostname of the license server.

Please use the supplied utilities (described below) to find this information and not system utilities such as ifconfig and ipconfig. The latter may return additional addresses that the license manager won't be able to see or use.

With Windows, you can use the LMTOOLS program to find this information. This is located on the CD at flexlm\windows. Click on the System Settings tab.

With Linux you must use the lmutil command line utility as described below. This utility is also available for Windows.

To use lmutil, open a terminal window (‘DOS’ prompt on Windows) at the license server and cd to the FLEXlm directory. Type:

```
./lmutil lmhostid
```

(Omit the ‘./’ on Windows). This will return the 12 digit Ethernet address. If you have more than one ethernet adapter, it might return more than one address. If so, the license can be locked to any of them, but you should advise us which one you want to use. One of the addresses may be a removable adapter for example which might not always be present. Its best to run the utility when any removable or temporary adapters are disabled or disconnected.

If you are using a FLEXid dongle (either supplied by us or from another software vendor using the FLEXlm manager) then type:

```
./lmutil lmhostid -flexid
```

Email the license information to support@catena.uk.com. Once we have the above information, we can issue a license file for the features you have ordered.

Using the License Server

Once the license server is installed and running, any machine on the network will be licensed to run SIMetrix. Licenses will be granted up to the number that have been ordered. Note that licenses are counted on a per user and per machine basis. The same user can start any number of instances of SIMetrix on the same machine and it will be counted as just one license. Note, however, that on Linux, each X display is considered as a separate computer for the purposes of counting licenses. So, for example, if you run SIMetrix from the local display and then launch another SIMetrix instance on a remote X server (e.g. VNC), two licenses will be required.

Note that the license server can serve licenses for SIMetrix running on either Linux or Windows regardless of what platform the license server is running.

Mixed Feature Licenses

The license file may list codes for between 1 and 6 types of feature. The features are:

Basic
Digital
Micron
Advanced
Rtn
Simplis_if

Basic is, as the name implies, the basic feature and is compulsory for the SIMetrix simulator to run. The remaining feature names enable functionality as defined in the following table:

Feature name	Functionality
Digital	Enables event driven digital simulator
Micron	Enables chip design features, e.g. : BSIM3, BSIM4, VBIC, Philips models, Star-Hspice model file compatibility
Advanced	Enables extended sweep modes
Rtn	Enables Real Time Noise analysis
Simplis_if	Enables the SIMPLIS simulator interface. Note that this does not enable the SIMPLIS simulator itself.

By default SIMetrix will attempt to check out all features that are available. If you have purchased the same number of licenses for all features then there is no problem. If, however, you have fewer, for example, *digital* licenses than *basic* licenses, then a problem could arise where the first users that check out licenses use up all the *digital* licenses leaving these features unavailable for later users. This would be a waste if the earlier users were not actually using the features. To overcome this SIMetrix has a command line switch that instructs it what licenses to check out. The syntax is:

```
SIMetrix /f "basic|micron|digital|advanced|rtn"
```

You can remove any of the feature names from the above other than *basic* to prevent those features from being checked out. The above allows you to setup alternative short-cuts or desktop icons to checkout different combinations of features.

The FLEXlm options file also allows you to reserve particular features for named users. See the end user documentation for details.

Client Node Crashes

If a user's (client) machine crashes while SIMetrix is running, the license will not be immediately checked in but will be after a time-out period of 5 minutes. Before this time has elapsed, the license can be checked in manually at the server by typing at the command line

```
lmutil lmremove <feature> <user_name> <host_name> <display>
```

For Windows, *display* is the same as the *host_name*, on Linux you will need to enter the display name which would usually be :0.0. *feature* will be one of *basic*, *digital*, *micron*, *advanced*, *rtn* or *simplis_if*. Each feature must be checked in individually.

What Is Simetrix

SIMetrix is a mixed-signal circuit simulator designed for ease and speed of use. It is based on two publicly available programs namely SPICE developed by the CAD/IC group at the department of Electrical Engineering and Computer Sciences, University of California at Berkeley and XSPICE developed by the Computer Science and

Information Technology Laboratory, Georgia Tech. Research Institute, Georgia Institute of Technology. XSPICE itself was developed from SPICE3C1.

Although originally derived from these programs only about 30% of the overall application code can be traced to them. A large part of the simulator code is either new or has been rewritten in order to provide new analysis features and to resolve convergence problems. In addition SIMetrix includes schematic entry and waveform analysis features that owe nothing to the original SPICE program.

Features

- Closely coupled direct matrix analog and event driven digital simulator.
- Fully integrated hierarchical schematic editor, simulator and graphical post-processor.
- Superior convergence for both DC and transient analyses. Pseudo transient analysis algorithm solves difficult operating points while enhanced transient analysis algorithm virtually eliminates transient analysis failures.
- Advanced swept analyses for AC, DC, Noise and transfer function. 6 different modes available.
- Real time noise analysis allowing noise simulation of oscillators and sampled data systems.
- Support for BSIM3, BSIM4 and MOS9 devices. Compatible with Star-Hspice® model files.
- Cross probing of voltage, current and device power from schematic. Current and power available for sub-circuits.
- Monte Carlo analysis including comprehensive tolerance specification features.
- Full featured scripting language allowing customised waveform analysis and automated simulation
- Incremental plotting of results as simulation proceeds.
- Functional modelling with arbitrary non-linear source and arbitrary linear s-domain transfer function.
- Arbitrary logic block for definition of any digital device using descriptive language. Supports synchronous, asynchronous and combinational logic as well as ROMS and RAMs.
- Models for saturable magnetic components including support for air-gaps.
- User definable fixed and popup menus and key definitions.

What is SIMPLIS

SIMPLIS is a circuit simulator designed for rapid modelling of switching power systems. An acronym for “SIMulation for Piecewise LInear System”, it is supplied with the premium version of SIMetrix namely SIMetrix/SIMPLIS.

SIMPLIS is a component level simulator like SPICE but is typically 10 to 50 times faster when simulating switching circuits. It achieves its speed by modelling devices using a series of straight-line segments rather than solving non-linear equations as SPICE does. By modelling devices in this way, SIMPLIS can characterise a complete system as a cyclical sequence of linear circuit topologies. This is an accurate

representation of a typical switching power system where the semiconductor devices function as switches. However, a linear system can be solved very much more rapidly than the non-linear systems that SPICE handles. The end result is accurate, but extremely fast simulations, allowing the modelling of complex topologies that would not be viable with SPICE.

SIMPLIS has three analysis modes: Transient, Periodic Operating Point and AC. Transient analysis is similar to the SPICE equivalent but is typically 10-50 times faster. Periodic Operating Point is a unique analysis mode that finds the steady-state operating waveforms of switching systems. AC analysis finds the frequency response of a switching system without needing to use averaged models. This is especially useful for what-if studies on new circuit topologies or control schemes where the small-signal averaged model has not yet been derived.

Because non-linear devices are defined using a sequence of straight line segments, models for such devices are quite different from SPICE models. There are of course many SPICE models available and so in order to retain compatibility with these, SIMetrix/SIMPLIS has the ability to convert models for some types of device into SIMPLIS format. This conversion is performed when the device is placed on the schematic. Devices currently supported are MOSFETs, BJTs and diodes. In the case of MOSFETs and Zener diodes, the conversion is achieved by performing a sequence of simulations using the SIMetrix-SPICE simulator. This method is independent of the method of implementation of the device.

Why Simulate?

Integrated circuit designers have been using analog simulation software for over two decades. The difficulty of bread-boarding and high production engineering costs have made the use of such software essential.

For discrete designers the case has not been so clear cut. For them prototyping is straightforward, inexpensive and generally provides an accurate assessment of how the final production version of a circuit will behave. By contrast computer simulation has been seen as slow and prone to inaccuracies stemming from imperfect models.

In recent years, however, the simulation of discrete analog circuits has become more viable. This has come about because of the almost relentless advances in CPU power, the increased availability of device models from their manufacturers and the introduction of easy to use and affordable simulation tools such as SIMetrix.

The pressure to reduce product development time-scales has meant that for many projects the traditional bread-boarding phase is skipped altogether - with or without simulation - and circuit development is carried out on the first revisions of PCB. The use of simulation on a circuit or parts of a circuit can help to eliminate errors in a circuit design prior to this stage and reduce the number of PCB revisions required before the final production version is reached. Of course, to be useful, the simulation process must therefore not be too time consuming.

Computer simulation, does however, have many more uses. There are some things you can do with a simulator which cannot be achieved with practical approaches. You can remove parasitic elements, you can make non-invasive measurements that are impossible in real-life or you can run components outside of their safe operating area. These abilities make simulation a valuable tool for finding out why a particular design

does not behave as expected. If the problem can be reproduced on a simulator then its cause can be much more easily identified. Even if a problem cannot be reproduced then this gives some clues. It means that it is caused by something that is not modelled, a wiring parasitic perhaps.

Simulation is extremely useful for testing ideas at the system level. Sometimes it is not easy to test a concept because the hardware to implement it is very costly or time consuming to build. It may even be that you don't know how to implement the idea in hardware at all. The alternative is to design a model and simulate it with a computer. Once it has been established that the concept is viable then attention can be given to its implementation. If it proves not to be viable, then a great deal of time will have been saved.

System Requirements

Operating System

Windows

Requires Windows NT4 with service pack 6 or Windows 2000 or Windows XP or any later system.

SIMetrix 5 will *not* install or run on Windows 95, 98 or ME

Linux

Currently tested and supported distributions are:
Redhat 7.2, 7.3, 8.0 and 9.0
SuSE 8.0, 8.1, 8.2 and 9.0

See http://www.catena.uk.com for information on the latest supported distributions.

Hardware

SIMetrix will run satisfactorily on any hardware that is sufficient to run the machine's operating system.

Recommended System

If you regularly run large circuit simulations or long runs on smaller circuits, we recommend investing in the most powerful CPU available. A large RAM system can be useful as this will allow caching of simulation data. This will speed up plotting results if a large amount of data is generated. The data is stored to disk in an efficient manner and therefore substantial RAM is not essential unless the circuits being simulated are very large indeed. 20,000 MOSFETs requires around 64MBytes. A high performance bus mastering SCSI disk system will improve simulation performance a little.

Upgrade Notes

Upgrading from Version 4.5

Non-linear Magnetics

The non-linear magnetics models and schematic support has been completely overhauled. The models and GUI for the older system are still supported but the menus for them have been removed. You can still create and edit devices using the old model but the procedure is different. Instead of using the Place|Passives|Saturable ??? use the Place|From Symbol Library menu then choose one of the following:

- Passives → Inductor (Saturable)
- Passives → Transformer (Saturable)
- Passives → Transformer 2 Secs. (Saturable)

For new designs we recommend using the new system. It supports an arbitrary number of windings and the models are more accurate. Use menu Place|Magnetics|Saturable Transformer/Inductor .

Use of μ Prefix in Graphs

Graph axes are no longer labelled using the greek letter μ to represent 10^{-6} and instead the letter u is used. This is for compatibility with non-English operating system versions. Use the option variable 'UseGreekMu' to change this, so type at the command line:

```
Set UseGreekMu
```

Upgrading from Version 5.0

Double Click to Edit Schematic Devices

Double clicking a schematic instance will now invoke the editing action in the same way as the F7 key. Double clicking outside an instance will start a new wire in the same manner as earlier versions.

You can revert to the old behaviour whereby double clicking always starts a new wire using an option setting. Select menu File|Options|General... then in the Schematic sheet select Classic under the Double click mode section.

CMOS Transistor Symbols

A new set of NMOS and PMOS schematic symbols for CMOS IC design have been developed which are simpler and easier to use. The old symbols are still present but have been relocated to Obsolete -> Semiconductors -> MOSFETs (IC).

Please see "Using Schematic Editor for CMOS IC Design" on page 116 for information on the new symbol design.

Chapter 2 Quick Start

Tutorials - Overview

This chapter covers a number of tutorials that will help you get started with SIMetrix.

Tutorial 1 is designed for total novices. You may wish to skip to tutorial 2 if you already have experience with SPICE type programs.

Tutorial 2 assumes you have grasped the basics of using the schematic editor. You don't have to worry about setting up analyses or the characteristics of any input stimulus such as V2 in tutorial 1; these procedures will be explained.

If you are an experienced circuit designer but have never used a circuit simulator before, we recommend you read the following notes. This will familiarise you with a few concepts about simulation that may be alien to you if you are used to traditional methods of evaluating circuits.

Examples and Tutorials - Where are They?

In Linux the examples and tutorials reside in the examples.tar file that forms part of the standard distribution. Note that this file is not automatically installed.

On Windows the examples are automatically installed to *simetrix_root*\examples. (*simetrix_root* is the SIMetrix install directory which is typically C:\Program Files\SIMetrix51). When the program first starts a shortcut at created in *My Documents*\SIMetrix\Examples that points to *simetrix_root*\examples. (But see “A Note for System Administrators” on page 16)

In the following tutorial discussions, the examples directory is referred to as *‘EXAMPLES’*.

Simulation for the Novice

When measuring a real circuit, you would probably connect up a power source - bench power supply perhaps - maybe also some signal source, then switch it on and take measurements using - probably - an oscilloscope. You can also make adjustments to the circuit and see the effects straight away.

For simulation, you have a choice of analysis modes and not all of them have an exact real life equivalent. The analysis mode that most closely resembles the method of bench testing a circuit described above is Transient Analysis. This performs an analysis over a specified (by you) time period and saves all the results - i.e. all the voltages and currents in the circuit - to your hard disk. The difference between real life testing and simulation is that the simulation is not running all the time. If you want to see the effects of changing a component value, you have to change it then re-run the simulation. (But note there is a potentiometer device that automates this procedure see “Potentiometer” on page 134).

In order to solve the circuit, the simulator has to calculate the voltage at every node at every time point. Disk space is cheap and plentiful so SIMetrix saves all these values

as well as the device currents. Not all simulators do this, some require you to state in advance what you want saved.

After the run is complete, you can then randomly probe the circuit to look at any voltage, current or device power over the analysis time period. You can also place fixed probes on the circuit before running the analysis which will cause the waveform at that point of the circuit to be automatically be displayed while the simulation is running or optionally after its completion.

Some of the other analysis modes are: AC analysis which performs a frequency sweep, DC sweep which ramps a voltage or current source and noise analysis which calculates total noise at a specified point and which components are responsible for that noise.

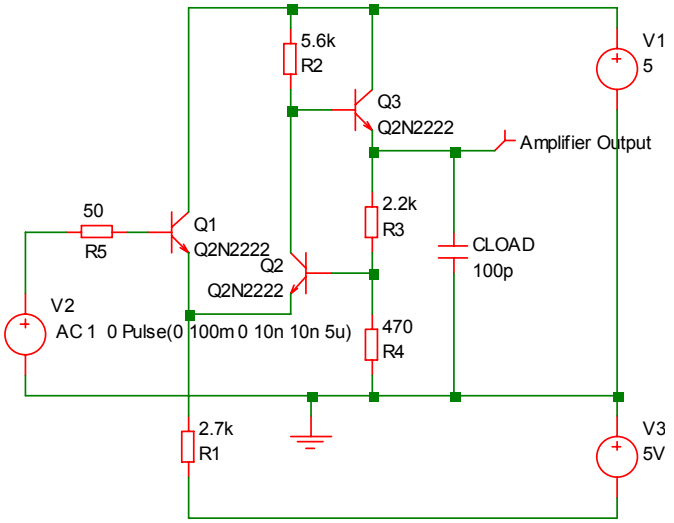
Tutorial 1 - A Simple Ready to Run Circuit

This tutorial demonstrates a basic simulation on a ready to run to circuit. All you need to do is load the circuit and press F9 to run it. We will then make a few changes to the circuit and make some extra plots.

This tutorial demonstrates the basic features without having to get into the details of setting up a simulation. Proceed as follows:

1. Select the menu File|Open Schematic.... Select the schematic file TUTORIAL1 which you should find in the folder *EXAMPLES*\TUTORIALS (See "Examples and Tutorials - Where are They?" on page 31). Select Open to open this file.

   A schematic window will open with the following circuit:



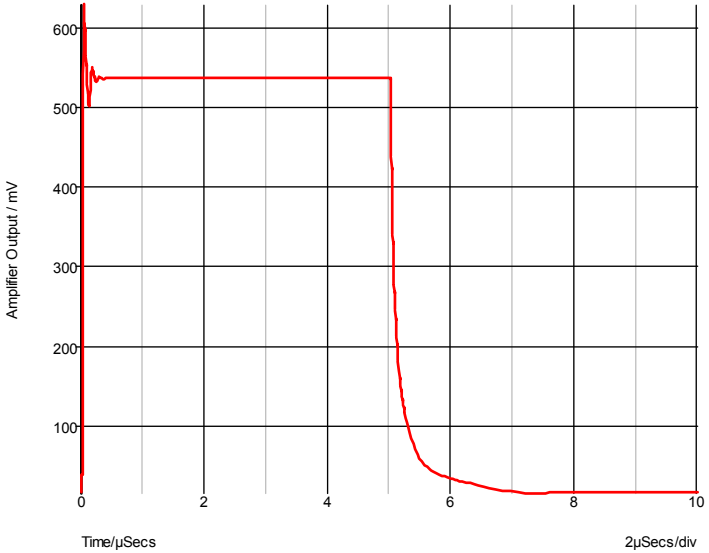
   This is a simple feedback amplifier designed to amplify a 100mV pulse up to around 500mV. The basic requirement of the design is that the pulse shape should be preserved, DC precision is important but is not critical. The above is our first

attempt at a design but has not yet been optimised.

This example circuit has been setup to be ‘ready to run’.

2. To start the simulation, select from the schematic window Simulator|Run or press F9. The simulation will not take long, on a modern machine less than half a second.

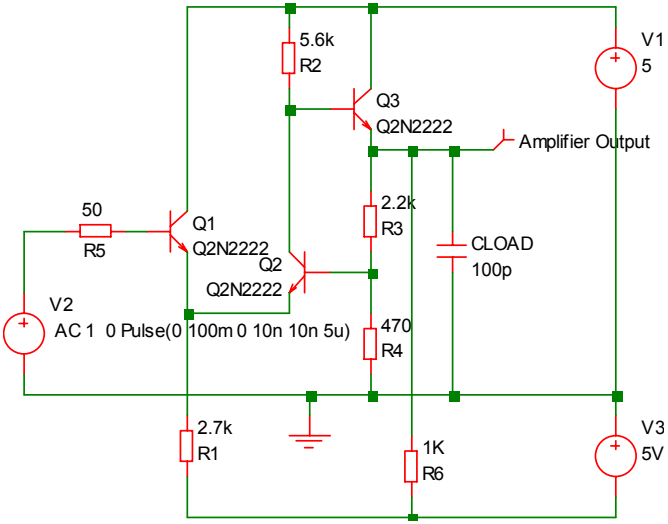
You will see a graph of the output voltage appear:



As can be seen, our amplifier doesn't work all that well. There are two problems.

1. There is substantial ringing on the rising edge, probably caused by the capacitative load.
2. The falling edge is somewhat sluggish

The sluggish falling edge is caused by the absence of any standing current in the output emitter follower, Q3. To rectify this, we will place a resistor from the emitter to the -5V rail. The resulting schematic is shown below:



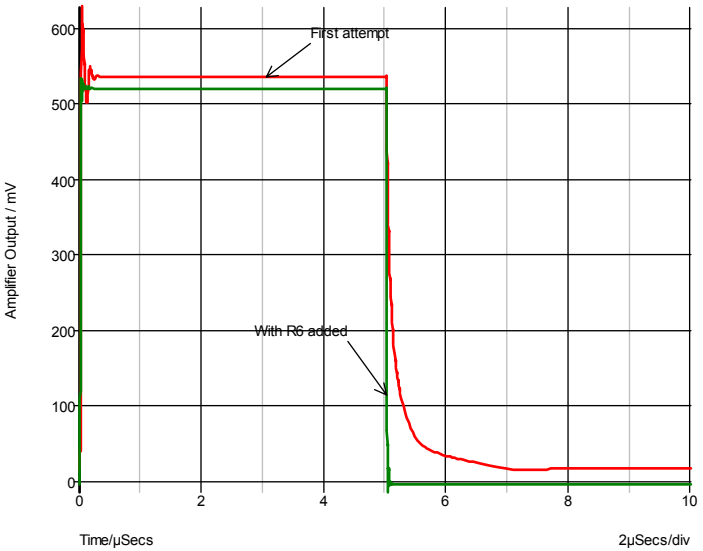
To make this modification, proceed as follows:

1. Press the Resistor button in the component toolbar. Alternatively, select the menu Place|Passives|Resistor (Box shape) or, if you prefer, Place|Passives|Resistor (Z shape). A resistor symbol will appear. Place this in the location shown in the diagram above. Click the left mouse button to fix it to the schematic. You may now see another resistor symbol appear (depending on how the system options are set). Cancel this by clicking the right mouse button.
2. Now wire up the resistor. There are a number of ways of doing this. If you have a three button mouse or wheel mouse, the easiest is to use the middle button (or wheel). Pressing it once will start a wire. Pressing it again will fix it and start a new one. Pressing the right button will terminate it.

   If you have a two button mouse, you can start wiring by pressing F3 followed by a left click or double clicking the left button. A left click will now finish a wire a start a new one. Right click will complete wiring operation.

   You can also enter wiring mode by selecting the toolbar wire button . This puts schematic into a permanent wiring mode where the left key is always used for wiring. Revert to normal mode by pressing the wire button again.
3. Re run the simulation by pressing F9.

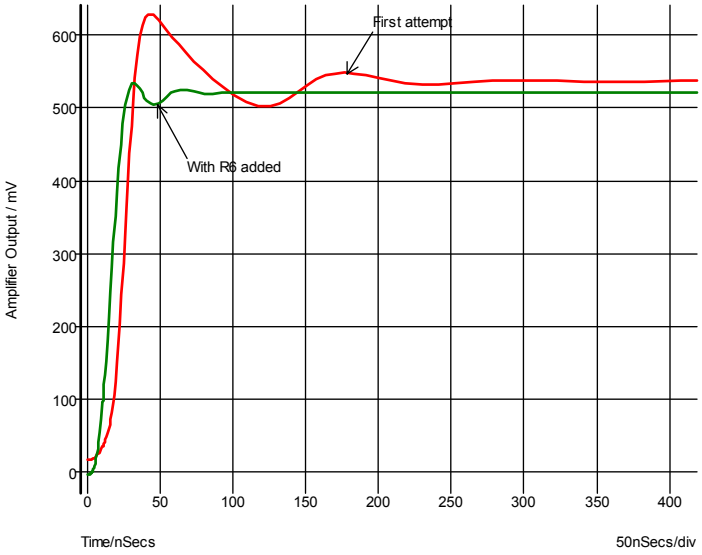
The graph will now be updated to:



As you can see, The problem with the trailing edge has been fixed and the ringing is much improved.

Now let's have a look at the ringing in more detail. To do this, we need to zoom in the graph by adjusting the limits of the axes. There are two ways of doing this. The quickest is to simply drag the mouse over the region of interest. The other method is to manually enter the limits using the Edit Axis Dialog Box. To zoom with the mouse, proceed as follows:

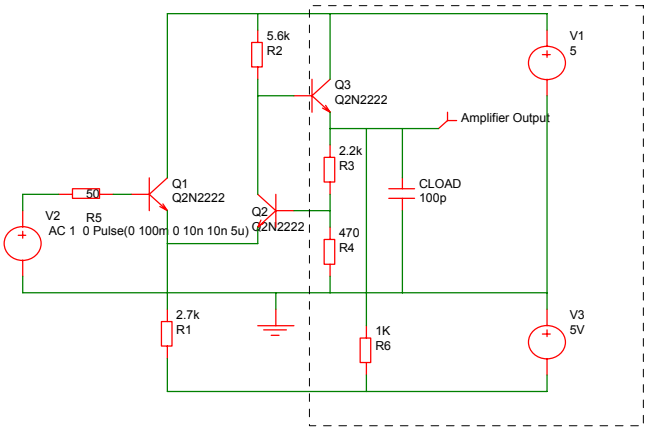
1. Make sure that the graph window is selected by clicking in its title bar.
2. Place the cursor at the top left of the region of interest i.e to the left of the y-axis and above the top of the red curve.
3. Press the left mouse key and while holding it down, drag the mouse to the bottom right of the area you wish to zoom in. You should see a rectangle appear as you drag the mouse.
4. Release the mouse key. You should see something like:



If you don't get it quite right, press the Undo Zoom button: to return to the previous view.

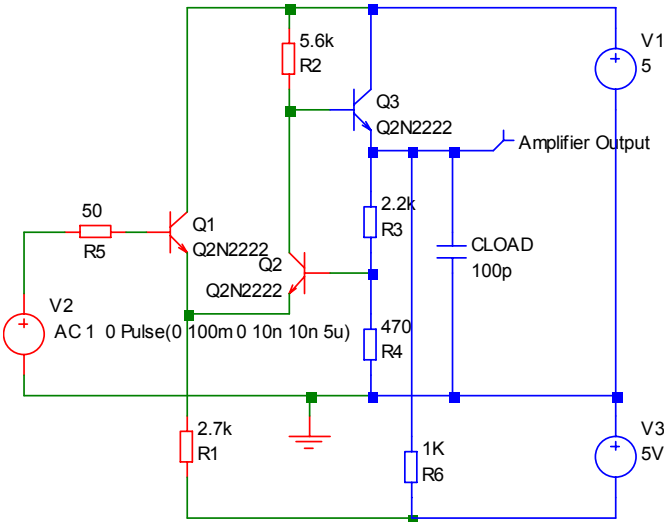
We can probably improve the ringing by adding a small phase lead in the feed back loop. This can be done by connecting a small capacitor between the emitter of Q3 and the base of Q2. There isn't room to add this tidily at present, so first, we will move a few components to make some space. Proceed as follows:

1. In the schematic window, drag the mouse with the left key pressed over the region shown by the dotted lines below:



As you drag the mouse, a rectangle should appear.

2. Release the mouse. The area enclosed will turn blue:

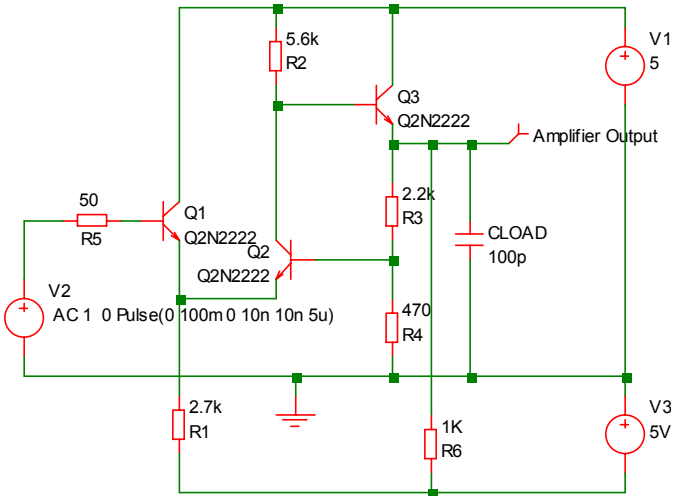


The blue wires and components are said to be *selected*. To move them...

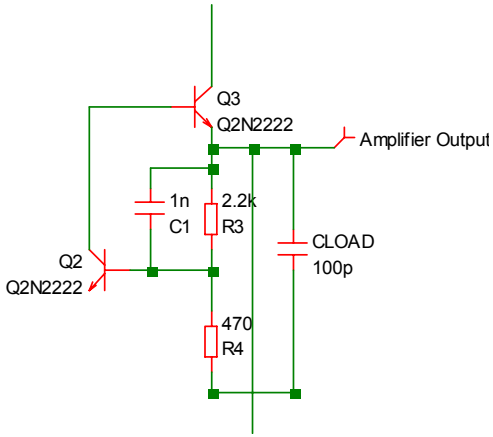
3. Place the cursor within one of the selected components - V1 say - then press and hold the left mouse key.

4. Move the mouse to the right by two grid squares then release the left key.

5. Unselect by left clicking in an empty area of the schematic. This is what you should now have:



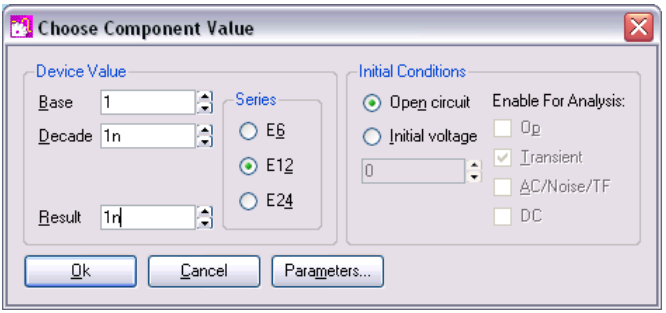
6. Wire in the capacitor C1 as shown below using a similar procedure as for the resistor R6.



1nF is obviously far too high a value so we will try 2.2pF. To change the component's value proceed as follows:

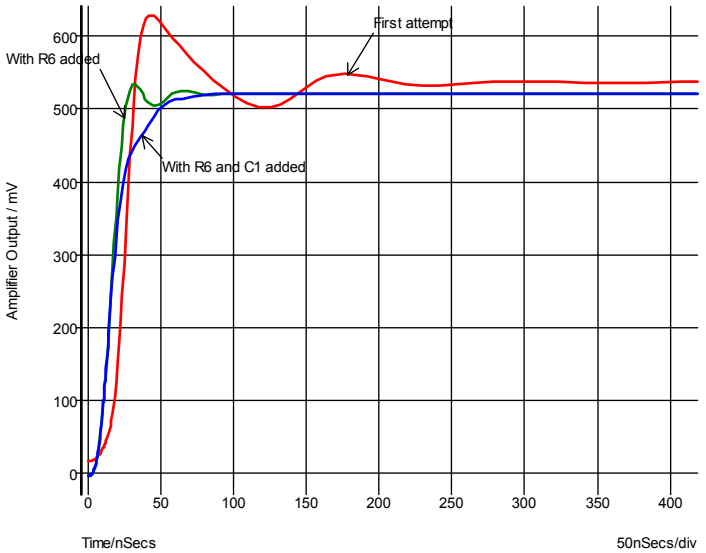
1. Select C1. To do this, just left click on it.

2. Either press F7 or right-click in the schematic and select popup menu Edit Part.... You should see the following dialog box appear:



You can type the new value in directly in the Result box or you can select a value using the mouse alone with the up and down arrow buttons. Leave the Initial Condition setting at its default (Open Circuit)

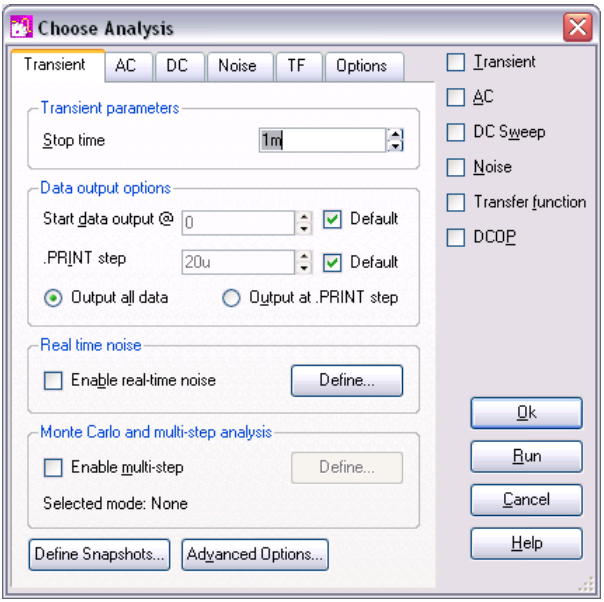
3. Now re-run the simulation. This is the result you should see:



The blue curve is the latest result. This is now a big improvement on our first attempt. We will now round off tutorial 1 by introducing AC analysis.

AC analysis performs a frequency sweep over a specified frequency range. To set one up, follow these instructions:

1. In the schematic window, select the menu Simulator|Choose Analysis... . This is what you will see

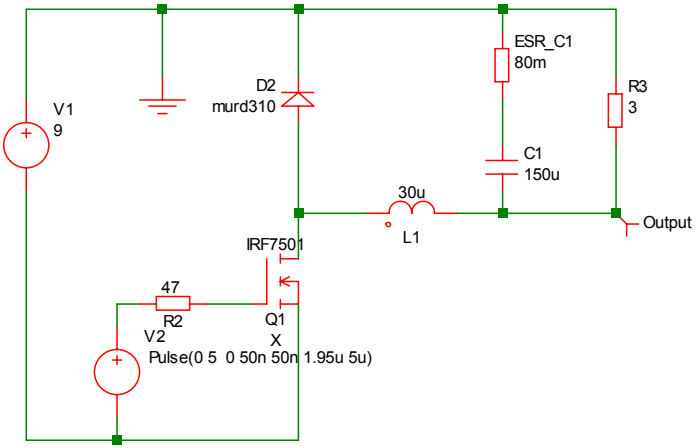


(A simpler dialog box will be displayed with some versions of SIMetrix).

2. Click the check box titled AC and uncheck the Transient check box. The details of the AC sweep have already been set up. To view them click the AC tab at the top of the box.
3. Run the simulation. A new graph sheet will open within the same window as the existing ones.

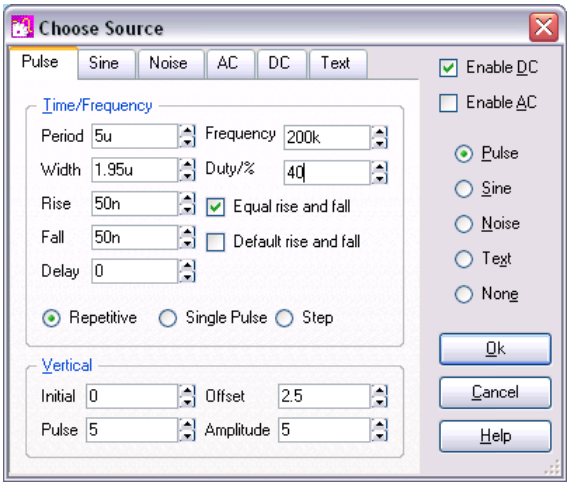
Tutorial 2 - A Simple SMPS Circuit

In this tutorial we will simulate a simple SMPS switching stage to demonstrate some of the more advanced plotting and waveform analysis facilities available with SIMetrix.



You can either load this circuit from *EXAMPLES*\Tutorials\Tutorial2 (see "Examples and Tutorials - Where are They?" on page 31) or alternatively you can enter it from scratch. The latter approach is a useful exercise in using the schematic editor. To do this follow these instructions:

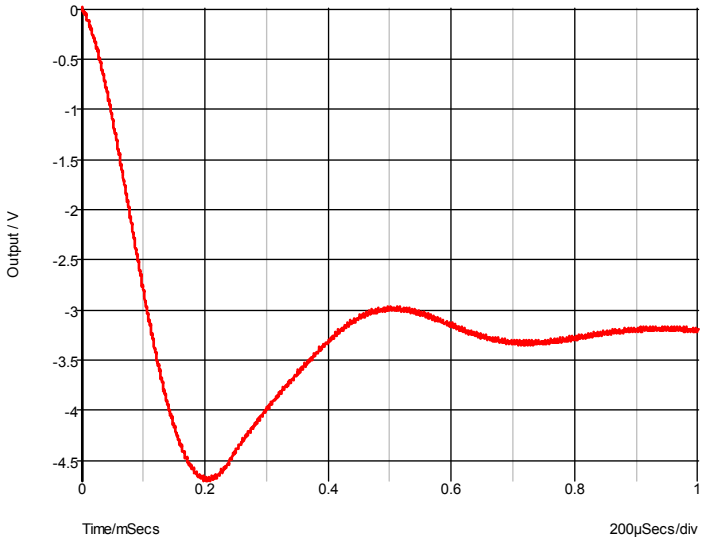
1. Place the components and wires as shown above.
2. The probe labelled 'Output' can be selected from either Place|Probe|Voltage Probe or Probe|Place Fixed Voltage Probe or just by pressing 'B' in the schematic editor.
3. After placing the output probe, select it then press F7 to edit its label. Enter this in the box titled Curve Label. All the other options may be left at their defaults.
4. For the pulse source V2, you can use Place|Sources|Universal Source or the Universal Source tool bar button.
5. Select V2 and press F7. Edit the settings as shown below:



This sets up a 200kHz 5V pulse source with 40% duty cycle and 50nS rise time.

6. Set up the simulation by selecting the schematic menu Simulator|Choose Analysis... . In the dialog box, check Transient. Usually we would set the Stop time but on this occasion, the default 1mS is actually what we want. Now select the Advanced Options button. In the Integration method box, select Gear integration. This improves the simulation results for this type of circuit. You will still get sensible results without checking this option, they will just be a little better with it. (For more information, see "Convergence and Accuracy" chapter in the *Simulator Reference Manual*).

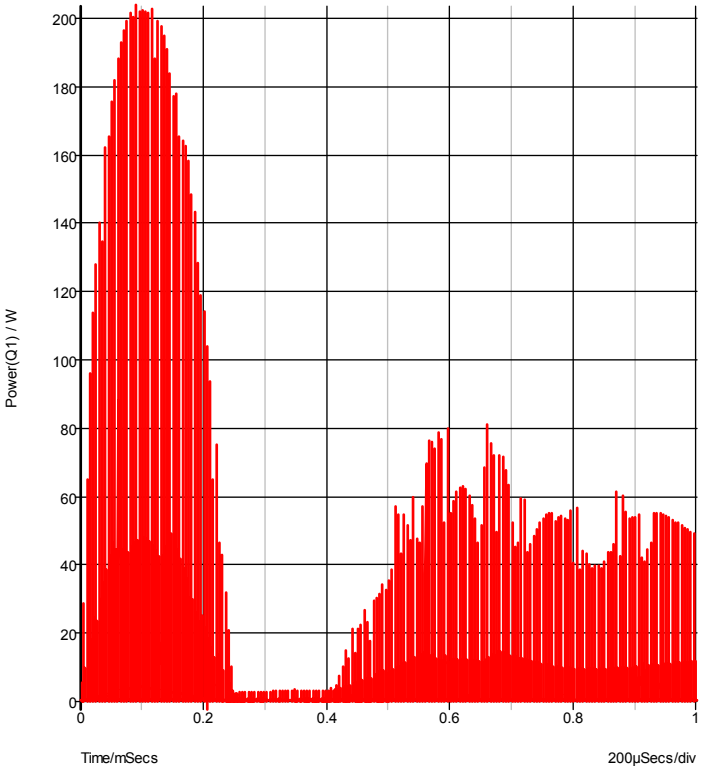
If you have any graph windows open, you should now close them. Once you have loaded or entered the circuit, press F9 or use the schematic Simulator|Run menu to start the simulation. This will take somewhat longer than the previous tutorial but still less than 1 second on a 2.8G Pentium 4. This is the graph you will see



The circuit is the switching stage of a simple step-down (buck) regulator designed to provide a 3.3 V supply from a 9V battery. The circuit has been stripped of everything except bare essentials in order to investigate power dissipation and current flow. Currently, it is a little over simplified as the inductor is ideal. More of this later. We will now make a few measurements. First, the power dissipation in Q1:

1. Create an empty graph sheet by pressing F10
2. Select schematic menu Probe|Power In Device... . Left click on Q1.

This is what you should see:



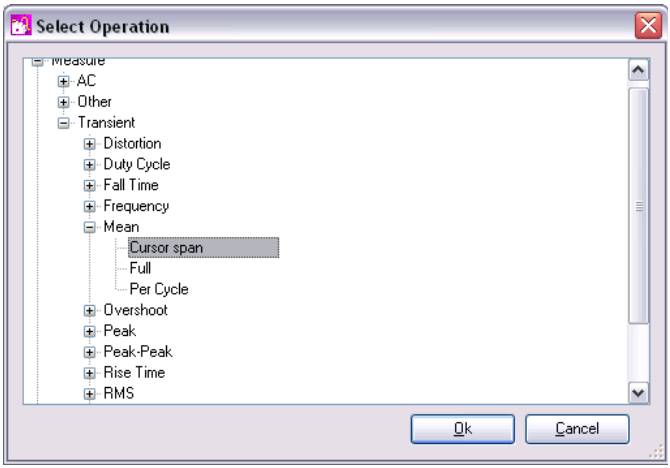
This shows a peak power dissipation of 200W although you are probably more interested in the average power dissipation over a specified time. To display the average power dissipation over the analysis period:

1. Select menu Measure|Mean

This should display a value of 517mW. This is the average power over the whole analysis period of 1mS. You can also make this measurement over any period you select using the cursors as described below:

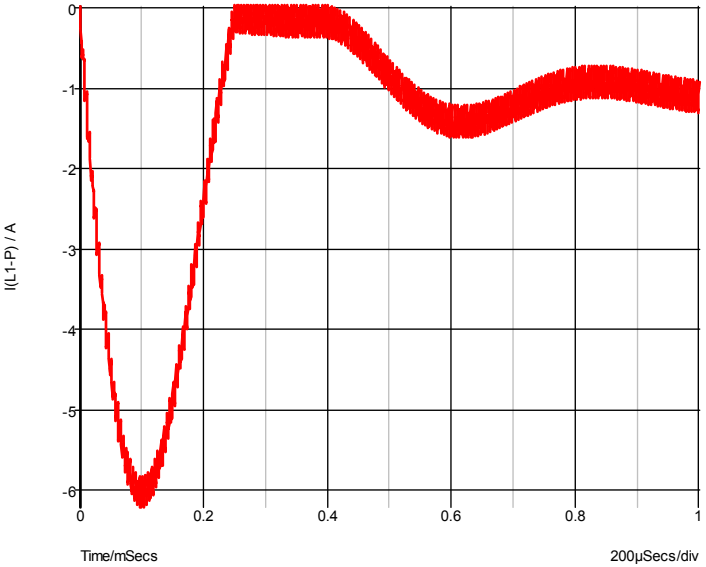
1. Zoom in the graph at a point around 100uS, i.e. where the power dissipation is at a peak.
2. Switch on graph cursors with menu Cursors|Toggle On/Off. There are two cursors represented by cross-hairs. One uses a long dash and is referred to as the reference cursor, the other a shorter dash and is referred to as the main or measurement cursor. When first switched on the reference cursor is positioned to the left of the graph and the main to the right.

3. Position the cursors to span a complete switching cycle. There are various ways of moving the cursors. To start with the simplest is to drag the vertical hairline left to right. As you bring the mouse cursor close to the vertical line you will notice the cursor shape change. See “Graph Cursors” on page 236 for other ways of moving cursors.
4. Press F3 or select analysis menu Measure|More Functions... . From the tree list select Measure|Transient|Mean|Cursor Span:



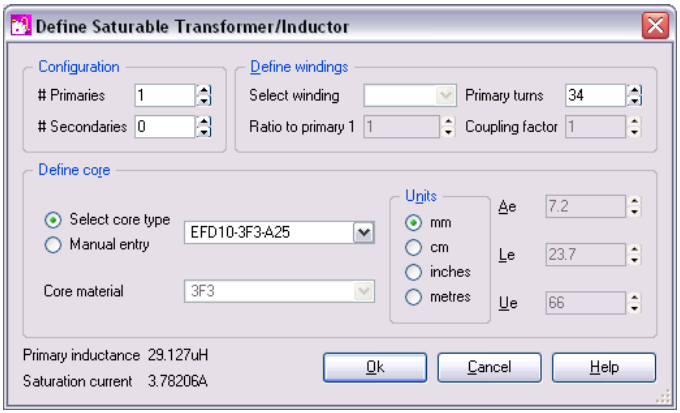
You should see a value of about 2.8W displayed. This is somewhat more than the 517mW average but is still well within the safe operating area of the device. However, as we noted earlier, the inductor is ideal and does not saturate. Lets have a look at the inductor current.

1. Select schematic menu Probe|Current in Device Pin (New Graph Sheet)…
2. Left click on the left pin of the inductor L1. This is what you will see:



This shows that the operating current is less than 1.5A but peaks at over 6A. In practice you would want to use an inductor with a maximum current of around 1.5 to 2A in this application otherwise it would be over-designed and therefore over expensive! We will now replace the ideal component, with something closer to a real inductor.

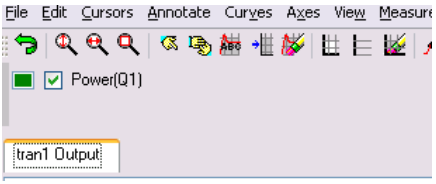
1. Delete L1.
2. Select schematic menu Place|Magnetics|Saturable Transformer/Inductor.... A dialog box will be dispalyed. (See picture below). Select 0 secondaries then enter 34 in the turns edit box. Next check Select Core Type. Select EFD10-3F3-A25. This is part number for a Philips ferrite core. This is what you should have:



3. Close the box then place the inductor.
4. Run a new simulation.
5. Select the graph sheet that displayed the inductor current by clicking on its tab at the top of the graph window. Now select schematic menu Probe|Current in Device Pin... and left click on the left hand inductor pin.

You will notice the peak current is now in excess of 45A. This is of course because the inductor is saturating. You can also measure the peak power over 1 cycle:

1. Select the graph sheet with the power plot then select Probe|Power In Device…
2. Zoom back to see the full graph using the button:
3. Zoom in on the peak power.
4. Position the cursors to span a full cycle. (The cursors are currently tracking the first power curve. This doesn't actually matter here as we are only interested in the x-axis values. If you want to make the cursors track the green curve, you can simply pick up the cursor at its intersection with the mouse and drag it to the other curve)
5. We now have two curves on the graph so we must select which one with which we wish to make the measurement. To do this check the box as shown:



6. As before, press F3 then select Measure|Transient|Mean|Cursor Span. The new peak power cycle will now be in the 11-12W region - much more than before.

Tutorial 3 - Installing Third Party Models

In this tutorial, we will install a device model library. For this exercise, we have supplied a model library file - TUTORIAL3.MOD - with just two devices. These are:

SXN1001 - an NPN bipolar transistor
SXOA1000 - an opamp.

Both are totally fictitious.

You will find this file in the tutorial folder i.e. Examples\Tutorials\Tutorial3.mod. There are two aspects to installing a model. SIMetrix needs to know where within your file system, the model is located. If the model is to be listed in the parts browser system, then SIMetrix also needs to know what symbol to use for it in the schematic and what category it comes under. This is how you do it:

1. Open windows explorer or click on My Computer or open other file manager of your choice.
2. Locate TUTORIAL3.MOD in *EXAMPLES*\Tutorials (see "Examples and Tutorials - Where are They?" on page 31). Pick the file up and drop into the SIMetrix command shell. That is, drop it in the window where SIMetrix messages are displayed. If you can't see the command shell because it is obscured, select any SIMetrix window then press the space bar.

A message box will appear asking you to confirm you wish to install the file. Click Ok.

The message "Making device catalog. This may take some time, please wait..." will be displayed.

At this stage, SIMetrix knows where to find our fictitious devices. You will find that it also knows about the NPN transistor as the following demonstrates:

1. Open an empty schematic.
2. Press control-G or select menu Place|From Model Library
3. Under NPN search for our new transistor, SXN1001.
4. Select the device and place it on the schematic sheet.

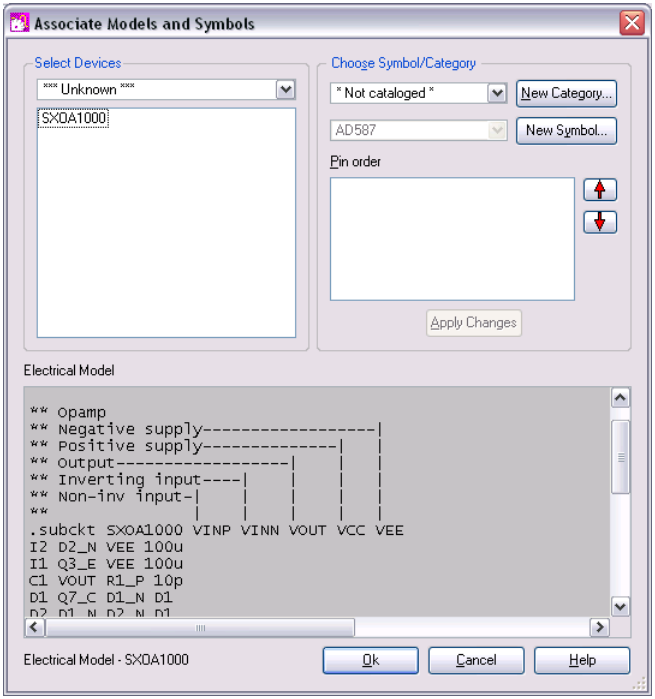
Without you having to tell it, SIMetrix already knew that the SXN1001 is an NPN transistor. This is because it is a *primitive* device defined using a .MODEL control. Such devices are built in to the simulator and what the device is can be determined from the model contained in TUTORIAL3.MOD.

This is not the case with the other device in the model library. This is an opamp and is defined as a *subcircuit*. This is a module made up of other components, in this case BJTs, diodes, resistors and current sources. If you repeat the above procedure for the opamp device - SXOA1000 - by looking under the opamp category, you will find it is not there.

In order to arrange for the device to be listed in the parts browser, you need to associate the model with a symbol:

1. Select command shell menu File|Model Library|Associate Models and Symbols...

2. You should see our opamp - SXOA1000 - listed in the box on the left. Now click on it. Assuming this is the first time that you (or anyone else) has installed a model, this is what you will see



We must now supply a category and a symbol:

3. From the combo box immediately below the Choose Symbol/Category label, select Op-amps

4. From the next box (to the left of the New Symbol... button) select Operational Amplifier - 5 terminal. You might to increase the width of the dialog box to see the full names of all symbols listed.

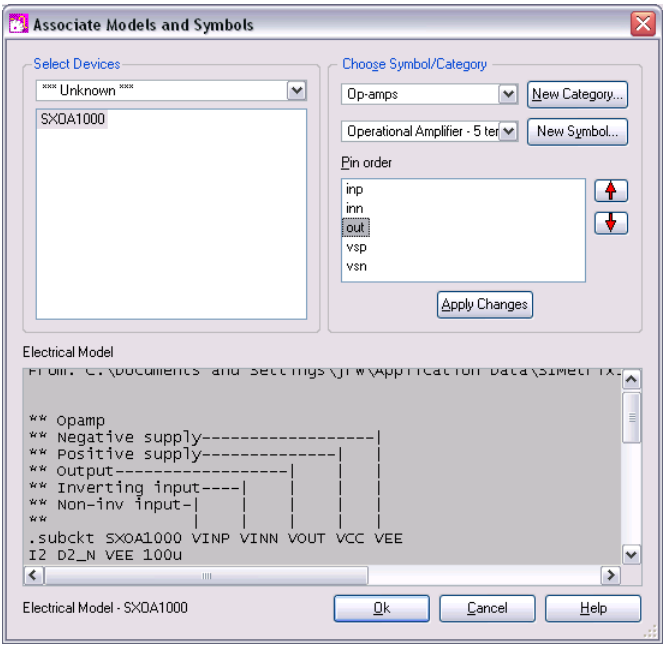
We have not quite finished yet. Our new op-amp has the wrong pin out for the schematic symbol. The pin order for the symbol is shown in the third box down on the right and is as follows:

Pin name	Function
INP	Non-inverting input

Pin name	Function
INN	Inverting input
VSP	Positive supply
VSN	Negative supply
OUT	Output

The text at the bottom of the dialog box shows the actual subcircuit definition. Fortunately, it has been annotated with the function of each of the sub-circuit's terminals. (This is in fact usually the case with third-party models). As you can see, the output terminal is in the wrong place. We can change the pin order using the Pin order up and down buttons:

1. Select out in the pin order box.
2. Click twice on the up button so that it is positioned between inn and vsp. This is what you will now have:



3. Press Apply Changes
4. Press OK

You will now find our op-amp listed under the Op-amps category in the parts browser.

Notes

You will not always need to execute the above procedure to associate models and symbols even for subcircuit devices. SIMetrix is supplied with a data base of over 30000 devices that are already associated. These are devices for which SPICE models are known to be available from some third party source. This database is in the file ALL.CAT which you will find in 'support' directory under Windows and in the 'share' directory under Linux. The information you enter in the associate models dialog is stored in a file called USER.CAT which you will find in the application data directory - see "Application Data Directory" on page 317.

Chapter 3 Getting Started

Overview

This chapter describes the basic operation of SIMetrix and is aimed primarily at novice users.

The basic steps to simulate a circuit are as follows:

1. Enter the circuit using the schematic editor. See page 52 below
2. Add signal sources if relevant to your circuit. See page 55 below.
3. Specify analysis. This includes what type of analysis and over what limits it should run. See page 57 below.
4. Run simulator . See "Running the Simulator" on page 64
5. Graph results. (See "Plotting Simulation Results" on page 65

The following paragraphs briefly describe these steps. More details are given in other sections.

Simulation Modes - SIMetrix or SIMPLIS

If you have SIMetrix/SIMPLIS, you can set the schematic editor to one of two modes to select whether you are using the SIMetrix native (SPICE) simulator or the SIMPLIS simulator. To choose the simulator mode, select the menu File|Select Simulator... then select which simulator you wish to use.

If the schematic is not empty and you change modes, the program will check that all parts entered on the sheet are compatible with the newly selected simulation mode as not all parts will work in both modes. Any that are believed not to be compatible will be highlighted and a warning will be issued. To clear the highlighting, select Edit|Unhighlight. You will most likely need to replace those components but in some cases you may simply need to re-enter the same component.

If you wish to enter a circuit that will work in both modes, you should enter it in SIMPLIS mode and not use any of the components in the menu Place|SIMPLIS Primitives. Following this advise will not guarantee a circuit with dual mode simulation ability but will minimise the chance of placing a device that is compatible with only one of the simulators.

Using the Schematic Editor

Creating a Schematic

The schematic editor has been designed to be intuitive to use and you may not need to read too much about it. Here we describe the less obvious procedures. For full documentation see "Schematic Editor" on page 69. If you have SIMetrix/SIMPLIS, make sure you are in the correct mode before entering a schematic. See above section.

To Place a Component

If it is a simple device which only needs a value such as a resistor or capacitor, select the appropriate symbol from the tool bar or Place menu. For other devices that require a part number, it is easiest to use the parts browser. Select menu Place|From Model Library and select your desired device.

To Change Value or Device Type for a Component

First select it then select schematic popup Edit Part... or press F7. Alternatively, you can just double click the device. (Note that the double click behaviour is new for version 5.1 and may be disabled for backward compatibility. See "Using the Options Dialog" on page 317 for details). A dialog box appropriate for the type of component will be displayed. For devices requiring a model name, a list of available types will appear.

To Rotate, Mirror or Flip a Component

Use the rotate toolbar button or key F5 to rotate a component. You can repeat pressing this button/key until the desired orientation is reached. (It sequences through all 8 possible orientations).

This operation can be performed while a component is being placed or while a block is being moved or copied (see below).

You can also select a component or block then press the rotate button/key to rotate in-situ.

To mirror a component or block through the y-axis, press the mirror toolbar button or F6 key.

To flip a component or block (mirror about x-axis), press Flip button or press shift-F6.

Wiring

If you have a three button mouse you can start a wire by clicking the middle button. Clicking the middle button a second time will complete the wire and start a new one. Click the right button to terminate wiring.

If you have a two button mouse you can start a wire by pressing F3 or double clicking the left button. Single clicking the left button will complete the wire and start a new one. Click the right button to terminate wiring.

Alternatively, press the Wire button on the toolbar . You can start a wire by single clicking the left button, otherwise continue as described above. Press the Wire button again to cancel this mode

Disconnecting Wires

Place the cursor within half a grid square of the component's pin but outside the component body, press and hold left key and pull wire away from component. You can

also select wires alone by holding shift key while performing select operation. Selected wires can then be deleted.

To Move Items Without Rubber-banding

Select items then schematic menu Edit|Detach. Move items to desired location then press left mouse key. You can rotate/flip/mirror the items (see above) while doing so.

To Copy Across Schematics

Select block you wish to copy. Choose menu Edit|Copy. In second schematic choose Edit|Paste.

Multiple Selection

Individual items which do not lie within a single rectangle can be selected by holding down the control key while using the mouse to select the desired items in the usual way.

Selecting Wires Only

Hold down shift key while performing select operation.

Holding Down the ALT Key...

... while selecting will limit component selection to only devices that are wholly enclosed by the selection box.

Zoom Area

Press button on schematic. Drag mouse to zoom in on selected area.

Zoom Full (Fit to Area)

Select popup **Zoom|Full** or press the HOME key to fit the whole schematic in the current window size.

Circuit Rules

The following design rules must be observed for the simulation to run correctly. Note that most circuits obey them anyway and they do not impose serious limitations on the capability of the simulator.

- There must always be at least one ground symbol on every circuit.
- Every node on the circuit must have a dc path to ground. If you do have a floating node, connect a high value resistor (e.g. 1G) between it and ground.
- There must not be any zero resistance loops constructed from voltage sources and or inductors. If you do have such loops. insert a low value resistor. It is best to make the resistance as low as is needed to have a negligible effect on your circuit but no lower.

- There should be at least two connections at every node.

Failure to observe the above usually leads to a *Singular Matrix* error.

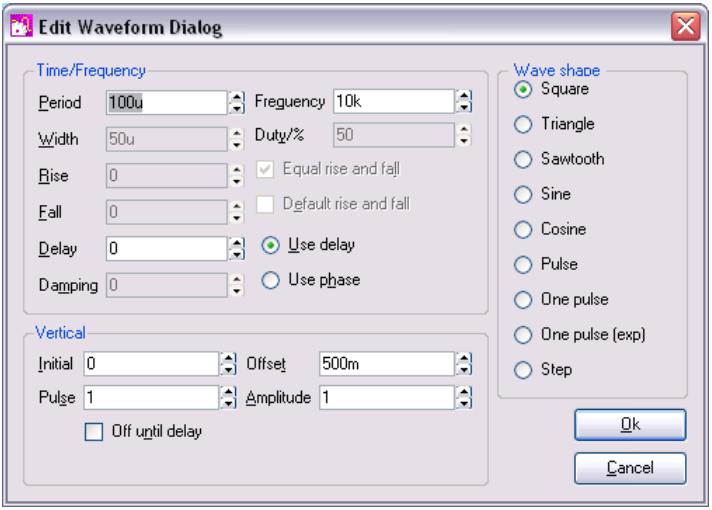
Circuit Stimulus

Most circuits require some form of input signal such as a pulse or sine wave. Such signals - or stimuli - are specified using a voltage or current source which is placed on the schematic in the usual way. A number of different types of source are available. These are described in the following sections.

Waveform Generator

This is used to create a time domain signal for transient analysis. This generator will work in both SIMetrix and SIMPLIS[1] modes of operation. To place one of these devices, select menu Place|Sources|Waveform Generator for a voltage source or Place|Sources|Current Waveform Generator for a current source.

To specify the signal for the source, select then choose the popup menu Edit Part... or press F7. This will bring up the dialog box shown below:



Select the wave shape on the right hand side then enter the parameters as appropriate. The following notes provide details on some of the controls.

- Damping describes an exponential decay factor for sinusoidal wave-shapes. The decay is governed by the expression:

1. SIMPLIS is available with the SIMetrix/SIMPLIS product

$e^{-damping*t}$

- Off until delay if checked specifies that the signal will be at the Initial value until the delay period has elapsed.
- Note that some parameters can be specified in more than one way. For example both frequency and period edit controls are supplied. Changing one will cause the other to be updated appropriately. The same applies to duty and width and the vertical controls in the lower half.
- A Cosine wave-shape combined with a positive delay and with Off until delay checked, will only function correctly in SIMPLIS mode.

PWL Source

This device can be used to describe a piece wise linear source. A PWL source can describe any arbitrary wave shape in terms of time-voltage or time-current pairs. To place a PWL source select menu Place|Sources|PWL Source or Place|Sources|PWL Current Source.

To edit the device, select it and press F7 or Edit Part... popup menu. This will open the Edit PWL Dialog which allows you to enter time and voltage/current values.

As well as entering values individually, you can also paste them from the Windows clipboard by pressing the Paste button or control-V. The values can be copied to the clipboard using a text editor. The values may be separated by spaces, tabs, commas or new lines.

PWL sources may be used in both SIMetrix and SIMPLIS modes. When defined in this way PWL sources are limited to 256 points. In SIMetrix mode, much larger PWL sources may be defined. See the "Analog Device Reference" in the *Simulator Reference Manual* for more information.

Power Supply/Fixed Current Source

Select menu Place|Sources|Power Supply or Place|Sources|DC Current Source to place a fixed voltage or current source. These devices work in both SIMetrix and SIMPLIS modes.

AC Source

The small signal analysis modes, AC sweep and Transfer Function, require AC sources for their input stimulus. In SIMPLIS mode, POP (Periodic operating point) also requires an AC source for its input.

To place an AC source select menu Place|Sources|AC Source (for AC analysis) or Place|Sources|AC Current Source.

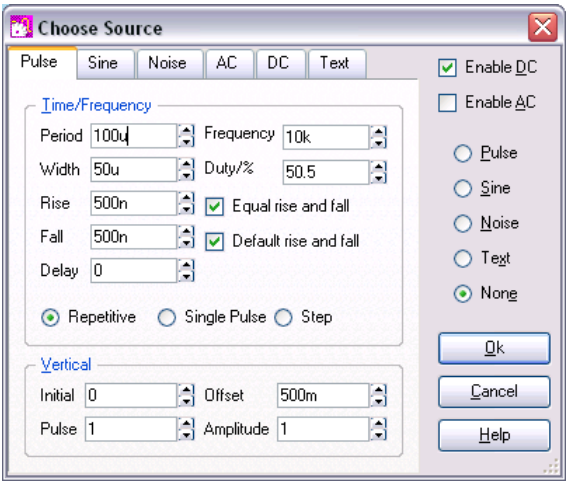
Universal Source

All of the sources described above can be used in both SIMetrix and SIMPLIS modes of operation. In SIMetrix mode there is also a Universal source which provides the

function of transient, AC and DC sources all in one device. In addition, the Universal source may be used to create a random noise source.

To place a universal source, select menu Place|Sources|Universal Source or Place|Sources|Universal Current Source.

To edit a universal source, select the device and press F7 or popup menu Edit Part.... This will display the following dialog box:



Pulse, sine, noise and DC waveforms may be specified using the tab sheets of the same name. You can also specify a Piece wise linear source, exponential source or a single frequency FM source. To enter one of these select the Text tab and enter the appropriate syntax for the source. Please refer to Voltage source in the *Simulator Reference Manual* for more information on these sources. The AC sheet is for AC analysis only.

With the universal source, you can specify transient, AC and DC specifications simultaneously. This is not possible with any of the other sources.

Analysis Modes

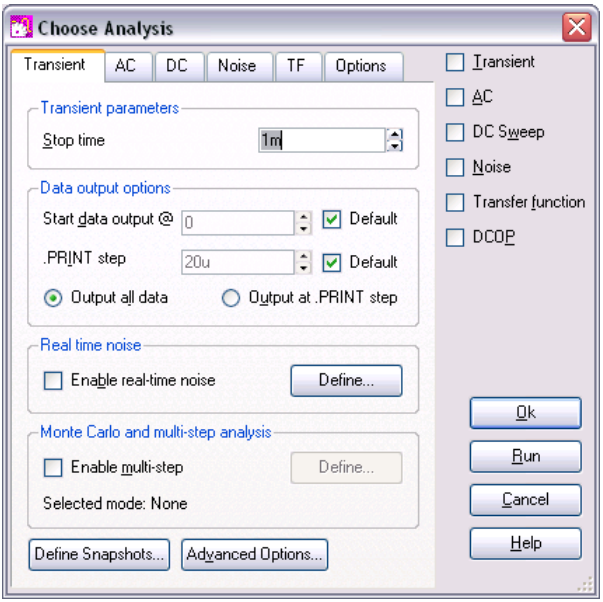
Overview

In this section we explain how to setup the most commonly used analysis modes in both SIMetrix and SIMPLIS (SIMetrix/SIMPLIS product only)

For more comprehensive details on analysis modes, see “Analysis Modes” on page 162 for SIMetrix and “SIMPLIS Analysis Modes” on page 195 for SIMPLIS .

Using the Choose Analysis Dialog

Analysis mode is setup by selecting the menu Simulator|Choose Analysis.... In SIMetrix mode this displays the following dialog box:



(A simpler box will be displayed for some versions of SIMetrix). For SIMPLIS mode see later section.

To set up the analysis, first check the box on the right according to which analysis you wish to perform. You can select more than one, but usually it is easier to do just one at a time.

The following describes the most commonly used modes and how to set one up.

Transient

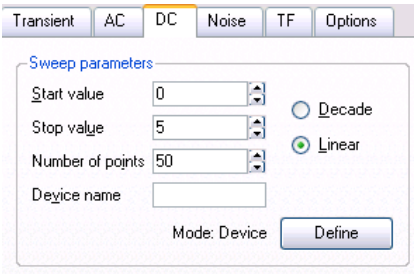
The most useful and general mode. First the bias point is found. Then the circuit is simulated over a fixed time interval in steps of varying size according to circuit activity. The circuit may contain any number of time varying voltage and current sources (stimuli see "Circuit Stimulus" on page 55) to simulate external signals, test generators etc.

Usually you only need to specify the Stop time specified at the top of the dialog box. For information on the remaining options see "Transient Analysis" on page 164.

DC Device Sweep

A DC device sweep will sweep a specified device over a defined range and compute the DC operating point of the circuit at each point. This allows, for example, the DC transfer function of the circuit to be plotted. Note that all reactive elements are ignored in DC sweep.

To set up a DC Sweep, select the DC Sweep check box at the right and the DC tab at the top. You will need to enter some values in the Sweep Parameters section:



The analysis will sweep the device you specify in the Device name box over the range specified by Start value, Stop value and Number of points or Points per decade if you select a decade sweep.

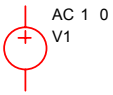
The entry in the Device name box is the component reference of the device to be swept and for DC sweep would usually be a voltage source, a current source or a resistor.

Device sweep is just 1 of 5 modes available with DC sweep. The Define... button allows you to specify one of the others. See "DC Sweep" on page 174 for details.

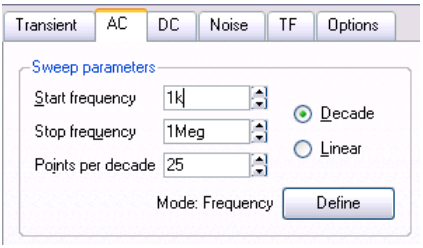
AC Frequency Sweep

An AC Frequency Sweep calculates the small signal response of a circuit to any number of user defined inputs over a specified frequency range. The small signal response is computed by treating the circuit as linear about its DC operating point.

There must be at least one input source for AC analysis for the results to be meaningful. Connect a voltage or current source to the circuit, select it then press F7. In the dialog box select the Enable AC check box. On the circuit, an AC input voltage source will look something like this:



To set up an AC Frequency Sweep, select the AC check box at the right and the AC tab at the top. You will need to enter some values in the Sweep Parameters section:



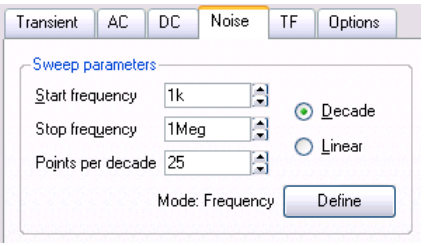
The analysis will sweep the frequency over the range specified by Start frequency, Stop frequency and Number of points or Points per decade if you select a decade sweep.

Frequency sweep is just 1 of 6 modes available with AC sweep. The Define... button allows you to specify one of the others. See "AC Sweep" on page 176 for details.

Noise Frequency Sweep

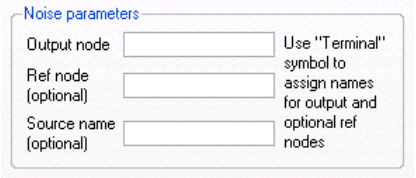
Like AC analysis, Noise analysis is a small signal mode. Over a user defined frequency range, the circuit is treated as linear about it's DC operating point and the contribution of all noisy devices to a designated output is computed. The total noise at that output is also calculated and optionally the noise referred back to an input source may also be computed.

To set up a Noise Frequency Sweep, select the Noise check box at the right and the Noise tab at the top. You will need to enter some values in the Sweep Parameters section:



The analysis will sweep the frequency over the range specified by Start frequency, Stop frequency and Number of points or Points per decade if you select a decade sweep.

You will also need to enter some additional parameters:


Noise parameters
Output node
Ref node (optional)
Source name (optional)
Use "Terminal" symbol to assign names for output and optional ref nodes

An entry in the Output node box is compulsory. It is the name of the circuit node as it appears in the netlist. Usually the schematic's netlist generator chooses the node names but we recommend that when running a noise analysis that you assign a user defined name to your designated output node. You can do this using a terminal symbol (Place|Connectors|Terminal) To find out more see “Finding and Specifying Net Names” on page 78.

An entry in the Ref node box is optional. It is the node to which the output node is referenced. If omitted it is assumed to be ground.

An entry in the Source name box is optional. If specified the noise referred back to it will be calculated. Enter the component reference of the voltage or current source that is used as the input to your circuit.

Frequency sweep is just 1 of 6 modes available with Noise Analysis. The Define... button allows you to specify one of the others. See “Noise Analysis” on page 177 for details.

DC Operating Point

To specify a DC operating point analysis, check the DCOP box on the right of the Choose Analysis Dialog.

Note that the DC operating point is calculated automatically for all the other analysis modes described above although for noise analysis the results are not stored.

After a DC operating point has been completed, you can annotate your schematic with markers to display the voltages at each node. Press control-M on the schematic to place a single marker or select the popup menu Bias Annotation|Auto Place Markers to automatically place markers on all nodes. See “Viewing DC Operating Point Results” on page 253 for full details.

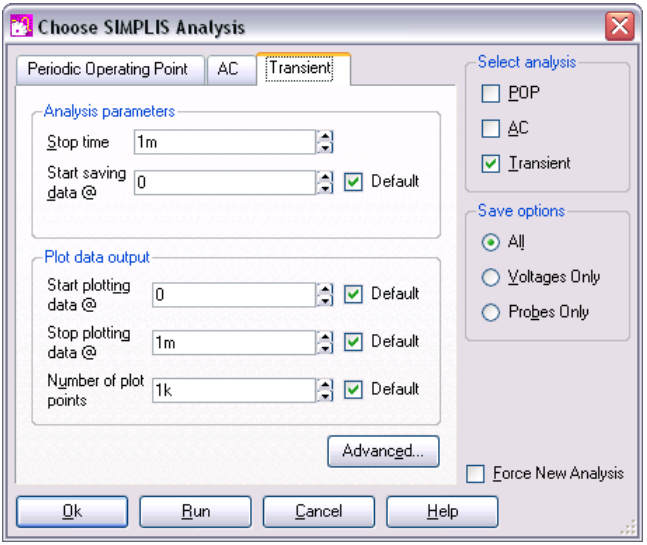
Other Analysis Modes

Real-time noise	An extension of transient analysis which enables noise generators for noisy devices using the same equations used for small signal noise analysis. See “Real Time Noise” on page 181.
Transfer function	Similar to AC but instead of calculating the response to a (usually) single input, it calculates the response from all signal sources to a single output. See “Transfer Function” on page 182.
Sensitivity	Calculates the sensitivity of a specified output to device and model parameters. See “Sensitivity” on page 185.
Pole-zero	Calculates the poles and zeros of the circuit. See “Pole-zero” on page 185.
Multi-step Analyses	Transient, AC, DC, Noise and Transfer Function analyses can be run in an auto-repeat mode while stepping a user-defined parameter. See “Multi-step Analyses” on page 188.
Monte Carlo Analysis	See “Monte Carlo Analysis” on page 305.

Setting Up a SIMPLIS Simulation

SIMPLIS analyses are setup using the same menu as SIMetrix but you must first set the schematic to SIMPLIS mode. See "Simulation Modes - SIMetrix or SIMPLIS" on page 52 for details.

Select menu Simulator|Choose Analysis... . You will see the following dialog box:



SIMPLIS has three analysis modes, namely Transient, Periodic Operating Point (POP) and AC. Transient is similar to SIMetrix transient analysis. POP is a unique analysis mode that finds the steady state of a switching circuit. AC finds the small signal response of a periodic system.

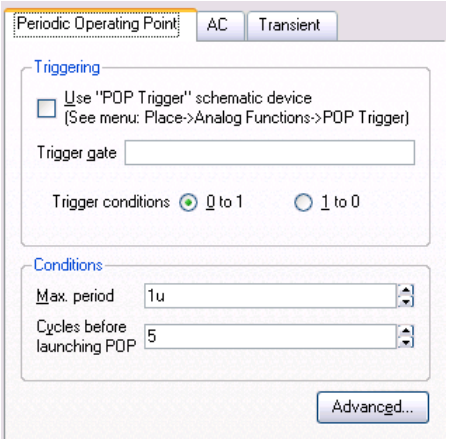
Transient Analysis

To setup a basic transient analysis:

1. Check the Transient box in the Select analysis section.
2. Enter an appropriate stop time under Analysis parameters.
3. Enter an appropriate selection under Save Options. Its usually best to select All. This will instruct SIMPLIS to save all data for subsequent plotting.

In most cases the above is all you need to do. For information on the remaining transient analysis settings, see "Transient Analysis" on page 164.

Periodic Operating Point Analysis (POP)

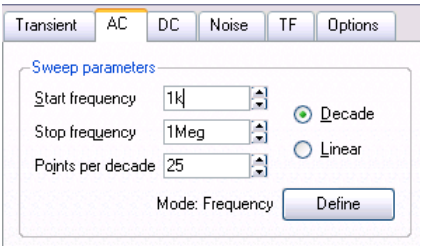


To setup a POP analysis:

1. Select Periodic Operating Point sheet.
2. Check the POP box under Select analysis.
3. Check the Use "POP Trigger" Schematic Device box. You will need to place a POP trigger device on your schematic. See below
4. In the Max. period box, enter a value that is larger than the largest possible value of your circuits switching period.

You must place on your schematic a POP trigger device. Select menu Place|Analog Functions|POP Trigger. After placing the device, connect its input to a switching frequency signal. You do not need to connect the output of this device. Select the trigger device then press F7. Enter suitable values for Ref. Voltage and Hysteresis so that it will always reliably trigger on the switching waveform. If you don't use the output, there is no need to change the other parameters.

AC Analysis



To setup an AC analysis:

1. Select AC sheet.
2. Check the AC box under Select analysis.
3. Enter parameters in Sweep Parameters section. These have the same meaning as the equivalent SIMetrix analysis.

Manual Entry of Simulator Commands

The analysis mode selected using Simulator|Choose Analysis... is stored in text form in the schematic's *simulator command window*. If you wish, it is possible to edit this directly. Users familiar with the simulator's syntax may prefer this approach. Note that the text entered in the simulator command window and the Choose Analysis dialog box settings remain synchronised so you can freely switch between the two methods.

To open the simulator command window, select the schematic then press the F11 key. It has a toggle action, pressing it again will hide it. If you have already selected an analysis mode using the Choose Analysis dialog box, you will see the simulator controls already present.

The window has a popup menu selected with the right key. The top item - Edit file at cursor - will open a text editor with the file name pointed to by the cursor or selected text item if there is one.

The simulator command window can be resized using the splitter bar between it and the schematic drawing area.

If you have SIMetrix/SIMPLIS you should use the .SIMULATOR control to mark SIMetrix and SIMPLIS entries. If .SIMULATOR SIMetrix is encountered, all following lines will only work in SIMetrix mode and will be ignored by SIMPLIS. Conversely, any lines following .SIMULATOR SIMPLIS will only be accepted by SIMPLIS and will be ignored by SIMetrix. All lines before any occurrence of .SIMULATOR or after .SIMULATOR DEFAULT will be accepted by both simulators.

Running the Simulator

SIMetrix

To run simulator, select the Simulator|Run menu item, press F9 or select the run button in the Simulator|Choose Analysis... dialog box. A dialog box will show the status of the simulation.

You can pause the simulation by selecting the Pause button on the simulator status dialog box. To restart select the Resume button (the Pause button changes name when simulation pauses) or the Simulator|Resume menu item. There is no obligation to resume a simulation that has been paused. If you start a new run after having paused the previous one, you will be asked whether you wish to abandon the pending simulation run.

Notes

1. There is no need to specify in advance of the simulation what voltages, currents and/or powers you wish to look at. By default everything except signals internal to some device models are stored in a disk file. You can decide after the run is complete what you wish to look at.
2. It is recommended that any schematics are saved before a run is commenced especially if the run is expected to take a long time.

SIMPLIS

If the schematic is in SIMPLIS mode, the procedure described above will start the SIMPLIS simulator. A window showing the progress of the SIMPLIS simulation will be displayed. Please refer to the *SIMPLIS Reference Manual* for more information about this display.

SIMPLIS can be aborted by pressing the Abort button in the progress window. SIMPLIS, cannot however, be paused and resumed.

Plotting Simulation Results

Overview

SIMetrix provides two methods of creating plots of simulated results.

The first approach is to fix voltage or current probes to the schematic before or during a run. SIMetrix will then generate graphs of the selected voltages and/or currents automatically. The probes have a wide range of options which allow you to specify - for example - how the graphs are organised and when and how often they are updated.

The second approach is to randomly probe the circuit after the run is complete. (You can also do this during a run by pausing first). With this approach, the graph will be created as you point the probe but will not be updated on a new run.

You do not need to make any decisions on how you wish to probe your circuit before starting the run. You can enter a circuit without any fixed probes, run it, then randomly probe afterwards. Alternatively, you can place - say - a single fixed probe on an obvious point of interest, then randomly probe to investigate the detailed behaviour of your circuit.

Fixed schematic probes are limited to single ended voltages and currents and differential voltages. The random probing method allows you to plot anything you like including device power, FFTs, arbitrary expressions of simulation results and X-Y plots such as Nyquist diagrams. It *is* possible to set up fixed probes to plot arbitrary expressions of signals but this requires manually entering the underlying simulator command, the .GRAPH control. There is no direct schematic support for this. For details of the .GRAPH control see the “Command Reference” chapter of the *Simulator Reference Manual*.

Fixed Probes

There are three types of fixed probe:

1. Voltage. Plots the voltage on a net.
2. Current. Plots the current in a *device pin*.
3. Differential voltage. Plots the voltage difference between two points.

They are simply schematic symbols with special properties. When you place a fixed probe on the schematic, the voltage or current at the point where you place the probe will be plotted each time you run the simulation. The probes have a wide range of options which can be set by selecting the probe then pressing F7. These options are covered in detail in section "Fixed Probes" on page 208.

Fixed Voltage Probes

You can place these on a schematic with the single hot key 'B' or with one of the menus

Probe|Place Fixed Voltage Probe...
Place|Probe|Voltage Probe
schematic popup Probe Voltage

Hint

If you place the probe immediately on an existing schematic wire, it will automatically be given a - hopefully - meaningful name related to what it is connected to. If you place the probe at an empty location, its name will be a default (e.g. PROBE1-NODE) which won't be meaningful and you will need to subsequently edit it.

Fixed Current Probes

You can place these on a schematic with the single hot key 'U' or with one of the menus

Probe|Place Fixed Current Probe...
Place|Probe|Current Probe
schematic popup Probe Current

Current probes must be placed directly over a component pin. They will have no function if they are not and a warning message will be displayed.

Fixed Differential Voltage Probes

These can be placed using one of the menus

Probe|Place Fixed Diff. Voltage Probe...
Place|Probe|Differential Voltage Probe

Random Probes

Most of the entries in the schematic's Probe menu are for random probing. You can probe, voltage, current, differential voltage, device power, dB, phase, Nyquist diagrams and much more. You can also plot arbitrary expressions of any circuit signal and plot signals from earlier simulation runs. Just a few of the possibilities to get you started are explained below. For a full reference see "Random Probes" on page 212.

Random Voltage Probing

1. Select the schematic menu item Probe|Voltage...
2. Using the mouse, place the cursor over the point on the circuit you wish to plot.
3. Press the left mouse button. A graph of the voltage at that point will be created. The new curve will be added to any existing graph if the X-axis has the same units. Otherwise, a new graph sheet will be created.

Random Voltage Probing - On New Graph Sheet

1. Select the schematic menu item Probe|Voltage (New Graph Sheet)...
2. Using the mouse, place the cursor over the point on the circuit you wish to plot.
3. Press the left mouse button. A graph of the voltage at that point will be created. A new graph sheet will be created for it unconditionally.

Random Current Probing

1. Select the schematic menu item Probe|Current...
2. Using the mouse, place the cursor at the *device pin* whose current you wish to plot.
3. Press the left mouse button. A graph of the current at that point will be created. The new curve will be added to any existing graph if the X-axis has the same units. Otherwise, a new graph sheet will be created.

Random Current Probing - On New Graph Sheet

1. Select the schematic menu item Probe|Current (New Graph Sheet)...
2. Using the mouse, place the cursor at the *device pin* whose current you wish to plot.
3. Press the left mouse button. A graph of the current at that point will be created. A new graph sheet will be created for it unconditionally.

Probing dB and Phase for AC Analysis

In AC analysis you will probably want to plot signals in dB and you may also want to plot the phase of a signal.

1. Select the schematic menu item Probe AC/Noise|db - Voltage... for dB or Probe AC/Noise|Phase - Voltage... .
2. Using the mouse, place the cursor over the point on the circuit you wish to plot.
3. Press the left mouse button. The new curve will be added to any existing graph if the X-axis has the same units. Otherwise, a new graph sheet will be created.

Probing dB and Phase for AC Analysis - On New Graph Sheet

1. Create an empty graph sheet by pressing F10 or selecting menu Probe|New Graph Sheet
2. Proceed as in above section.

Differential Voltage Probing

The schematic menu Probe|Voltage Differential... allows you to plot the voltage difference between two points. When you select this menu click on the schematic twice. The first is the *signal node* and the second the *reference node*.

Advanced Probing

The menu Probe|More Probe Functions... provides many more probing functions selectable from a tree structured list. More advanced plotting can be achieved with the menu Probe|Add Curve.... This opens a dialog box allowing you to enter any expression and which also provides a range of options on how you wish the graph to be plotted.

Chapter 4 Schematic Editor

Schematic Windows and Sheets

The schematic editor window is shown below. It can display multiple sheets arranged like a notebook with tabs. It is also possible to have multiple windows allowing schematic to be compared.

Creating Schematic Windows and Sheets

To Open a new schematic window - select menu File|New Schematic Window

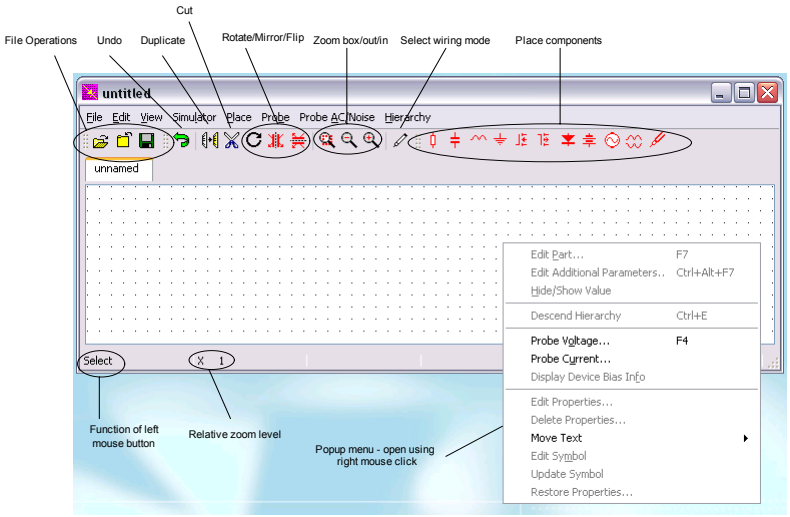
To Open a new schematic sheet, select menu File|New Schematic Sheet. This will create a new sheet in the selected window. If no schematic is open, one will be created.

Selecting Simulator Mode

If you have SIMetrix/SIMPLIS and you wish to enter a schematic for simulation with SIMPLIS, you should select SIMPLIS simulator mode.

To do this select menu File|Select Simulator then select SIMPLIS.

Schematic Editor Window



Editing Operations

To Place a Component

If it is a simple device which only needs a value such as a resistor or capacitor, select the appropriate symbol from the tool bar or Parts menu. For other devices that require a part number, it is easiest to use the parts browser. Select menu Place|From Model Library and select your desired device.

Once the symbol has been selected, using the mouse, move the image of the component to your desired location then press the left mouse button. This will fix the component to the schematic. Depending on preference settings (command shell menu File|Options|General... schematic tab), you may now be presented with another copy of the symbol for placement. Use left key as before to place, press right key to cancel.

Selecting a Single Component

Most operations require items to be selected. When an item (component or wire) is selected, it changes colour to blue.

To select a single component, just left click it.

Selecting an Area

To select all items within a rectangular area of the schematic press the left mouse key in an empty area of the sheet and hold down while dragging mouse to opposite corner of rectangle. A rectangular box should be drawn as you move the mouse. (Note that if the initial cursor position is too close to a wire junction or component, a move operation will be carried out instead of selection.)

To Change Value or Device Type for a Component

First select it then select schematic popup Edit Part... or press F7. Alternatively, you can just double click the device. (Note that the double click behaviour is new for version 5.1 and may be disabled for backward compatibility. See "Using the Options Dialog" on page 317 for details). A dialog box appropriate for the type of component will be displayed. For devices requiring a model name, a list of available types will appear

To Rotate, Mirror or Flip a Component

Use the rotate toolbar button or key F5 to rotate a component. You can repeat pressing this button/key until the desired orientation is reached. (It sequences through all 8 possible orientations).

This operation can be performed while a component is being placed or while a block is being moved or copied (see below).

You can also select a component or block then press the rotate button/key to rotate in situ.

To mirror a component or block through the y-axis, press the mirror toolbar button or F6 key.

To flip a component or block (mirror about x-axis), press Flip button or press shift-F6.

Wiring

See xxx below

Deleting Wires

Select the wire by placing cursor over it clicking left button. Press button or press delete key.

Disconnecting Wires

Place the cursor within half a grid square of the component's pin but outside the component body, press and hold left key and pull wire away from component. You can also select wires alone by holding shift key while performing select operation. Selected wires can then be deleted.

To Move a Single Component

Place the cursor within it and then drag it using the left mouse key. You can rotate/flip/mirror the component (see above) while doing so.

To Move More Than One Item

Select items as described above. Place cursor within any of the selected items then drag the items to the desired location. You can rotate/flip/mirror the items (see above) while doing so.

To Move Items Without Rubber-banding

Select items as described above. Select schematic menu Edit|Detach menu item. Move items to desired location then press left mouse key. You can rotate/flip/mirror the items (see above) while doing so.

To Move Property Text (Labels)

To move a components value, select then press control-F7. To move the reference use control-F8. To move any other property select device then popup Properties|Move... .

See notes below on property text positioning.

To Duplicate Items

Select items as described above. Press the button on the toolbar . Move the items to your desired location then press left key to fix. You can rotate/flip/mirror the items (see above) while doing so.

To Copy Across Schematics

Select block you wish to copy. Choose menu Edit|Copy. In second schematic choose Edit|Paste.

To Delete

Select items as described above. Press the cut button on the toolbar or the delete key.

Multiple Selection

Individual items which do not lie within a single rectangle can be selected by holding down the control key while using the mouse to select the desired items as described above.

Selecting Wires Only

Hold down shift key while performing select operation.

Holding Down the ALT Key...

... while selecting will limit component selection to only devices that are wholly enclosed by the selection box.

Unselecting

Place the cursor in an empty area and press left mouse key.

Unselect Items Within a Rectangle

You can unselect an area of schematic enclosed by the selection box. Use menu Edit|Unselect|Rectangle.

To Increment/Decrement a Component Value

Select component then press shift-up or shift-down respectively. This only works with resistors, capacitors and inductors.

To Change a Component Reference

Select component(s) then press F8 or select schematic menu Edit|Change Reference. Enter new reference.

To Correct a Mistake

Press the Undo button . By default you can backtrack up to ten operations (but this can be changed with File|Options|General...). If you want to undo the undo operation, select the schematic popup or fixed menu Edit|Redo menu item.

To Add Text To a Schematic

Select the popup menu item Edit|Add Free Text.... This opens a dialog box prompting you for the text to be entered. After entering text and closing box you can then position the text where you require using the mouse.

To Change Text Already Entered

Select the text then press F7 and enter the new text.

To Hide A Component Value

Select popup menu item Hide/Show Value

Zoom Area

Press button on schematic. Drag mouse to zoom in on selected area.

Zoom Full (Fit to Area)

Select popup Zoom|Full or press HOME key to fit whole schematic in current window size.

Zoom Out

Press button or F12 or popup Zoom|Out to zoom out one level.

Zoom In

Press button or shift-F12 or popup Zoom|In to zoom in one level.

Panning

Use the scroll bars to pan schematic. You may also use the left, right, up and down cursor keys to pan the schematic one grid square in the relevant direction and the Page up, Page down, control left cursor, control right cursor to pan the schematic 10 grid squares. Also the schematic will auto pan if either of the left or right mouse keys is held down when the cursor enters the a region of the schematic less than one grid square from the window edge. It is only possible to pan the schematic when scroll bars are visible.

Notes on Property Text Position

The SIMetrix schematic editor has been designed using a basic principle that it is better to move the component to make its property text visible rather than move the property. That way the component's value and other properties will always have a consistent location relative to the symbol body and there will be no confusion as to which component it belongs.

If you have a situation where some device label (=property text) clashes with another, your first thought will probably be to move the label. We ask you instead to think about

moving the component that owns the label; it's nearly always a better way. In situations where the label is very long, it might be better to hide it altogether.

If you find that moving the label is the only way then you should be aware of how the postions of property text are defined.

In SIMetrix, property positions can be defined in one of two ways namely *Auto* and *Absolute*. Most of the standard symbols have their properties defined as Auto. This means that SIMetrix chooses the location of the property on a specified edge of the symbol and ensures that it doesn't clash with other properties on the same edge. Auto properties are always horizontal and therefore easily readable. The position of Absolute properties is fixed relative to the symbol body regardless of the orientation of the symbol and location of other properties. When the symbol is rotated through 90 degrees, absolute text will also rotate. Absolute properties are intended for situations where the precise location is important, such as in a title block.

When a visible property on a symbol is moved by the method described above, it *and all other visible properties on that symbol* are converted to Absolute locations. This is the only way that the positions of all properties can be preserved. This means that once you move a single property on a component, it and all other properties will rotate with the symbol. For this reason, it is better not to move property text until the orientation of the symbol has been finalised.

Wiring

Overview

SIMetrix offers both manual and smart wiring methods. In smart mode, you select the start and end points and SIMetrix will find a suitable route. In manual mode, you place each wire segment individually in exactly the locations you require. You don't need to change global settings to select the mode you desire; the procedures for each mode are different and so you can freely switch between them from one wiring operation to the next.

However, in most applications you won't need to use the manual wiring method. The smart wiring method can still be used to enter wire segments one by one, simply by selecting start and end points that have an obvious straight line route. The fundamental difference between smart and manual is that smart mode will *always* route around obstacles such as existing wire terminations or whole symbols. In manual mode the wire will always go exactly where you take it even it crosses existing connections or passes through existing symbols.

Smart Wiring Procedure

1. Initiate smart wiring by bringing the mouse cursor close to either an unselected symbol pin or an unselected wire end. As you do this you will notice that the cursor changes shape to depict a pen symbol.
2. Click the left button (press and release), to mark the starting point of the wire connection.
3. Move, the cursor to the destination point. This may be anywhere on the schematic, not just at a wire end or symbol pin.

If there is a viable route from the start point to the destination point, SIMetrix will locate it and draw the wire route.

Smart Wiring Notes

The smart wiring algorithm use an heuristic algorithm that finds as many routes as possible then chooses the best one based on a number of criteria. The criteria used in the selection include the number of corners, the number of wires crossed, the number of property labels crossed and its overall length. It attempts to find the most aesthetically pleasing route, but as this is somewhat subjective, it may not necessarily find the route you may have chosen manually. However, in our tests, we have found that it usually finds the best route for situations where there are no more than 2 or 3 corners required. In developing the algorithm we paid particular attention to common scenarios found in analog design such as routing the output of an opamp back to its inverting input and you should find that these common scenarios work well.

Smart Wiring Options

There is two option to control the smart wiring algorithm. Firstly, you can disable the smart wiring algorithm altogether, in which case the smart wiring procedure will place wires in a similar fashion to the manual wiring methods.

Secondly, there is an option that controls whether or not the smart wiring algorithm is allowed to route wires through existing wires that are connected to the start and end points. By default this option is on, i.e. the smart algorithm *is* allowed to route through connected wires. If the option is off, the algorithm will not allow any wires in the route to connect to *any* existing wire regardless of what it is connected to. In general, we recommend that the option is left switched.

To change the smart wiring options, select menu File | Options | General... . The two wiring options are in the section titled Wiring.

Manual Wiring Procedure

If you have a three button mouse you can start a wire by clicking the middle button. Clicking the middle button a second time will complete the wire and start a new one. Click the right button to terminate wiring.

If you have a two button mouse you can start a wire by pressing F3 or double clicking the left button. Single clicking the left button will complete the wire and start a new one. Click the right button to terminate wiring.

Alternatively, press the Wire button on the toolbar . You can start a wire by single clicking the left button, otherwise continue as described above. Press the Wire button again to cancel this mode

Bus Connections

SIMetrix provides the Bus Ripper symbol to allow the connection of busses.

To Add a Bus Connector

1. Select the menu Place|Connectors|Bus Ripper... or popup Connectors|Bus Ripper.... This will display dialog:

   Enter a bus name if you require it.

2. Start index and end index define the wires within the bus that you wish to connect to. Suppose you were connecting to a data bus called DATA and it was 16 bits wide. If you wish to make a connection to the 4 bits from DATA8 to DATA11, you would enter 8 and 11 for the start and end index respectively. The bus ripper doesn't care about the size of the bus to which it is connecting.
3. Choose an appropriate style. This only affects the appearance of the symbol not its functionality.
4. Press OK then place the symbol on your schematic.

To Draw Busses

There is no special method of drawing busses. Simply wire up bus rippers as you would any other component. As soon as you connect to the bus pin of a bus ripper, the colour and thickness of the wire will automatically change to signify that it is a bus.

To Increase/Reduce the Connections to a Bus

If you wish to add connections to or delete connections from a bus ripper, select the ripper device and press F7 or popup menu Edit Part.... The same dialog as above will be displayed. Adjust the start and end indexes appropriately then close the box.

Connecting Busses in a Hierarchy

See "Connecting Busses in a Hierarchy" on page 81

Copying to the Clipboard

To copy schematics to the clipboard, select the entire schematic then choose menu Edit|Copy. If you wish the schematic to be copied in black white select Edit|Copy Monochromatic. It is recommended that you zoom the schematic to fill the window prior to copying to the clipboard.

After copying to the clipboard, the schematic can be pasted into another application such as a word processor.

Annotating a Schematic

You can add a caption or free text to a schematic. The only difference between them is the font style and justification. Captions use a heavy font and are centre justified. Free text use a smaller font and are left justified. To place a caption or free text use the popup or fixed menus:

Edit|Add Caption... or
Edit|Add Free Text...

respectively. Note, you can use the enter key to add a new line. The actual fonts used can be changed with File|Options|Font.... Note the fonts are global and not stored with the schematic.

Checking the Schematic

The schematic menu Simulator|Check performs a number of checks. First, a netlist of the circuit is created. During this process the following potential errors will be reported.

- Unconnected pins.
- Dangling wires.
- Implicit connections (e.g. two terminal symbols with the same name)
- Name translations. This is for busses with different names connected together. One name has to win.

Next the netlist is read in by the simulator but the simulation is not started. This will identify any devices for which models have not been found.

Schematic Preferences

Component Toolbar

The default toolbar show a selection of symbols useful for either CMOS IC design (Micron versions) or discrete circuit design (all other versions). There are however many more buttons available and these can be added as desired. To do this select the schematic menu View|Configure Toolbar... . This will display a dialog box allowing full customisation of the component buttons on the schematic toolbar. Note that the toolbar configuration in SIMetrix mode is independent of the configuration in SIMPLIS mode.

Further customisation of all toobars is possible using script commands. You can also define your own toolbars and buttons. Full details may be found in the *Script Reference Manual*

Component Placement Options

You can specify whether or not you prefer multiple or single placement of components. By default, placement of components from the schematic tool bar is repetitive while

placement of components from the menus is done one at a time. This can be changed. Select the command shell menu File|Options|General.... In the schematic sheet, the options available are presented in the Placement box.

Adding and Removing Worksheets

A number of standard sizes of worksheet are included. See menu Place|Worksheets. The worksheet menus automatically *protect* the worksheet after it has been placed. This prevents it from being selected. To delete a worksheet, use the Place|Worksheet|Delete Worksheet menu. You should avoid placing a worksheet from the Place|From Symbol Library menu as it will not be protected if you do this.

Finding and Specifying Net Names

When a simulation is run, a netlist of the schematic is created and this is delivered to the simulator. The netlist generator automatically assigns names to every net (or node) of the circuit. There are some situations where you need to find the name of a net. For example, in noise analysis (see page 177) you must specify an output node. In these situations you can either find the name of the net that the netlist generator assigned or alternatively you can specify a name of your choice.

To Find an Assigned Net Name

Place the mouse cursor on the schematic and type control-S. You will see the netname displayed in the command shell.

To Specify a User Defined Name

User defined net names can be specified using either the Terminal symbol or the Small Terminal symbol. Select menu Place|Connectors|Terminal or Place|Connectors|Small Terminal. To specify the net name select the terminal then press F7 and enter your choice of name.

Hierarchical Schematic Entry

Schematics can be organised into multiple levels in a hierarchy. Typically the top level would contain a number of blocks, each of which represents an underlying child schematic. Each of the child schematics can in turn contain more blocks.

You can create a hierarchical schematic in one of two ways:

Top-down method	Blocks are created first to make a functional diagram. The underlying schematic for each block is created afterwards.
Bottom-up method	Schematics are designed first then blocks are created to use with them.

From version 4.1, the schematic and its symbol can be stored within the same file. The combined element is known as a component and is usually given the file extension .SXCMP. In earlier versions, the symbol (or block) had to be stored in the symbol library while the schematic was stored as a separate file. This method is still supported but we recommend using the component method for all new designs.

All the methods for creating hierarchical schematics described in this section use components.

Top-Down Method

Creating Component Symbol

Select schematic menu Hierarchy|Create New Symbol... . This will open the graphical symbol editor. See page 86 for details. Note that the symbol you create must be given a Ref property typically with the initial value 'U?' and a Model property which must have the value 'X'.

Placing Symbol

If the schematic containing the block has never been saved ('untitled' in caption bar) you must save it now. This is so that the schematic has a title. This step is only necessary if the schematic has *never* been saved before.

Select either Hierarchy|Place Component (Full Path)... or Hierarchy|Place Component (Relative Path)... . The first references the component file using a full file system path name while the second uses a path relative to the parent schematic. See"Placing - Full vs Relative Path" on page 80 for more details. Select the .SXCMP file you used to save the symbol in the above paragraph. Note that you will see the warning message "Component module ports in underlying schematic do not match symbol pins" displayed in the command shell. This warning may be ignored at this point.

Creating Schematic for Block

1. Select the symbol whose schematic you wish to define then select schematic menu Hierarchy|Descend Into. Note the symbol must have been saved as a component as described above.
2. A new schematic sheet will be opened with a number of module port symbols already placed. These will be named according to the pin names of the block. You must use these to make connections to the outside world.

Bottom-up method

Creating Schematic

1. Open or draw schematic. It must have at least one Module Port symbol on it. To place a module port, use schematic menu Hierarchy|Place Module Port.
2. Save the schematic as a component. Select menu Save As... then select Components from Save as type: list.

Creating Symbol for Schematic

1. Select Hierarchy|Open/Create Symbol for Schematic...
2. A graphical symbol editor window will be opened with a default symbol generated from the number, orientation and names of the module ports on the schematic.

3. The symbol created can be saved straight away or you can edit it to suit your requirements. To save it, in the symbol editor window, select the menu File|Save... . You will not usually need to change any of the settings in the dialog. Just press Ok to close.

Navigating Hierarchical designs

There are a number of means of navigating hierarchical designs. You can go up or down one level or you can jump straight to the top level (or root).

Descending into a Block

1. Select the block then either press Control-E or select Hierarchy|Descend Into.
2. If schematic attached to the block is already open, it will be brought into view. If it isn't it will be opened. Note that the schematic will now be associated with the block that you entered. This is important if you have more than one block attached to the same schematic and you intend to plot curves from it after a simulation. This is explained more fully in the section on simulating hierarchical designs.

Ascending to Parent Schematic

1. Select Hierarchy|Ascend
2. If schematic is open, it will be brought into view. if it isn't, it will be opened.

Placing - Full vs Relative Path

Components can be placed using their full path or a relative path.

When placed with a full path, the component file is referenced using its full file system path name (e.g. C:\Projects\Proj123\amplifier.sxcmp). This allows the schematic file that uses the component to be freely moved as long as the component file stays in the same place. However if the component file is moved the schematic will no longer be able to locate it.

When placed with a relative path, the component file is referenced with a file system path name relative to the schematic that uses it. Most likely the component file will be in the same directory (or folder) as the schematic and will therefore be referenced by its file name alone. (E.g. amplifier.sxcmp). This allows the schematic file and component file to be moved together to any location but they may not be moved individually.

Which is used depends on the application. If files are always kept in the same directory location, it doesn't matter which you use.

To place a component using its full path

Select schematic menu Hierarchy|Place Component (Full Path)... . Select a component file then place in the normal way.

To place a component using its relative path

Select schematic menu Hierarchy|Place Component (Relative Path)... . Select a component file then place in the normal way.

Using symbolic constants

SIMetrix has a facility to define path names using symbolic constants. This system allows absolute locations for files to be defined using a single value and thus making it easy to change that location. See “Symbolic Path Names” on page 313 for further details.

Connecting Busses in a Hierarchy

Overview

Bus connections can be passed through a hierarchy in much the same way as normal single wire connections. Bus connections are defined by the underlying schematic. The symbol representing the schematic does not require any special treatment.

Creating Bus Connections Using the Bottom Up Method

1. Enter the schematic in the usual way.
2. To define a bus connection, place the part Hierarchy|Place Module Bus Port instead of the usual Module Port. Select the device and press F7 to define the port name and bus size (i.e. the number of wires in the bus).
3. Save schematic as a 'Component'
4. Select menu Hierarchy|Open/Create Symbol for Schematic...
5. Edit symbol if required then save

Changing the Bus Offset in the Parent Schematic

The bus connection in the parent schematic has a size that is determined by the module port in the child schematic. However, the offset - that is the first wire it connects to in the bus in the parent - can be changed on a per instance basis. To do this, proceed as follows:

1. Select the label next to the bus pin. This will be of the form [A..B] where A is the start wire (default is 0) and B is the final wire. Note that if you edited an exsiting symbol to add a bus connection, you may not see this label. If so select the component then menu Hierarchy|Update Bus Connections.
2. Press F7 then enter the new offset and OK. You will see the label change accordingly. For example, suppose the bus has 8 wires as defined in the child schematic. To begin with the label will be [0..7] and will therefore connect to bus wire 0 to 7. If you change the offset to, for example, 4, the label will change to [4..11] meaning that the connection will now be made to wires 4 to 11.

Changing a Non-bus Connection to a Bus Connection

1. In the child schematic change the Module Port to a Module Bus Port and edit as appropriate.

2. In the parent schematic, select the block then menu Hierarchy|Update Bus Connections. This will update the schematic to show the bus connection on the hierarchical block.

Changing the Size of a Bus Connection

1. In the child schematic, select the appropriate Module Bus Port
2. Press F7 and enter the new size as required.
3. In the parent schematic, select the block then menu Hierarchy|Update Bus Connections

Global Nets

You can access any net at the top level of a hierarchy using a terminal symbol and prefixing the name with '#'.

For example, suppose you have a net at the top level called VCC. You can access this net at any level of the hierarchy without having to pass the connection by connecting a terminal symbol (Place|Connectors|Terminal) and then assigning it the name #VCC.

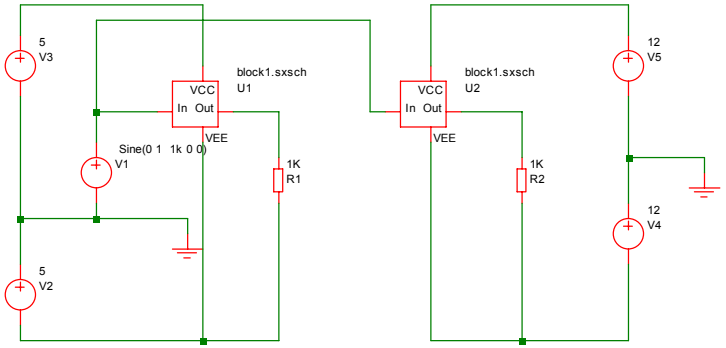
Global Pins

Supposing you have two instances of a hierarchical block which you wish to connect to different supply rails. To do this you would need to connect the supplies - say VCC - to pins at the top level with explicit (i.e. non-global) connections at the lower levels. So every child schematic at lower levels would also need VCC pins.

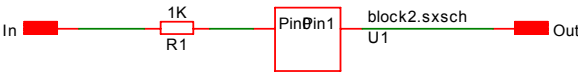
However, it is sometime convenient to hide these connections. When there is only one supply for an entire design, this can be done using global nets. However, in the scenario we described above, there are two versions of VCC so we would not be able to use a global net in this case.

A solution to this is to use a feature of SIMetrix called Global Pins. Global pins are defined during symbol definition. Once a pin is defined as global, a net of the same name will be available in all child schematics at all levels without the need for it to be explicitly passed.

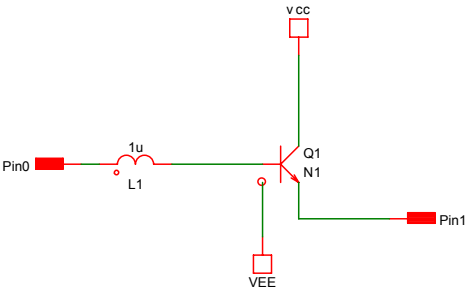
Example



Top level schematic



Block 1



Block 2

In the above example, VCC and VEE connections have been made in block2 without them having to be passed via the parent block1.

The above trivial example is supplied as an example. See Examples\Hierarchy\Global Pins.

Creating Global Pins

To define a global pin. select the symbol editor menu Property/Pin|Global Pins... . Double click on the pin you wish to assign as global and select Yes.

Passing Parameters Through a Hierarchy

To pass parameters through a hierarchy, assign a PARAMS property then give it a value to assign each parameter you wish to pass (e.g. PARAM1=10 PARAM2=57). See supplied example in folder Examples\Hierarchy\Passing Parameters.

Missing Hierarchical Blocks

When a hierarchical schematic is opened, SIMetrix needs to locate the component files that contain the symbols used for each hierarchical block. If, however, the file for a particular component is missing or is in the wrong location, then SIMetrix will not be able to display that component's symbol. Unlike library symbols, component symbols are *not* stored locally in the schematic file.

In order to make it possible to resolve the problem, SIMetrix instead puts a place holder symbol in place of the missing symbol. The place holder symbol is a diagonal cross.

Repairing Missing Components

If a component is missing you can either edit the schematic to identify the new location of the component, or you can move files around so that the components are once again in the expected locations.

To edit the schematic, select the place holder symbol then menu Hierarchy|Replace Component... .

To relocate files, use the system's file handling tools to move the component files, then select menu Hierarchy|Update Symbols.

Printing

Printing a Single Schematic Sheet

1. Select menu File|Print...
2. If there is a graph window currently open (See "Graphs, Probes and Data Analysis" on page 206) you can choose to plot the schematic alongside the graph on the same sheet. Select your choice in the Layout section.
3. In the Schematic box select an appropriate scale. Fit area will fit the schematic to a particular area relative to the size of paper. If multiple sheets are chosen, a small overlap will be included. Fixed grid means that the schematic's grid will be mapped to a fixed physical size on the paper. The sizes are in inches (1 inch= 25.4mm). So 0.3 means that 1 grid square on the displayed schematic will be 0.3 inches or 7.5mm on the printed sheet.

Printing a Hierarchical Schematic

1. Select menu File|Print Hierarchy...
2. You will be presented with a complete list of schematics used in the current hierarchy. Select the schematics you wish print and Ok.

3. Select options as appropriate then Ok.

File Operations

Saving

For normal save operations use the File|Save or File|Save As... menus.

To save all the sheets currently open use File|Save All.

Exporting Windows Meta File

Available only in the Windows versions. This saves the schematic graphic as a windows meta file (.EMF) for export to other applications. The .EMF format is scalable and can be used to create high-resolution disagrams.

Exporting to Earlier Versions of SIMetrix

Schematics created with SIMetrix version 5.1 or earlier can be read by all SIMetrix versions from and including version 4.1. But note that changes in symbol design do introduce some difficulties that may need special treatment. In particular capacitor and inductor symbols used in version 4.2 and later do not work correctly with version 4.1 without modification.

To export to versions 2.5 to 4.0, select the menu File|Save As... then in the Save as type box select Schematic Release 2.5-4.0 Format.

ASCII format

SIMetrix schematics are usually saved in a binary format. This is fast, compact and can be read by earlier versions.

From version 5.0 a new ASCII format was introduced. The format used is fully documented allowing the development of translators to other formats. Also there are some editing operations that are easier performed on an ASCII file than with the graphical editor. For example, changing a symbol name is very difficult with the schematic editor as you have to delete and replace all instances. But this is a simple task with a text editor operating on the ASCII file.

Saving in ASCII Format

To save a schematic in the ASCII format use the menu File|Save Special... then select ASCII format.

Opening ASCII Schematics

No special procedure is needed. Just open the schematic in the usual way. SIMetrix will detect that it is in the ASCII format automatically.

File Format

Documentation for the install CD may be found at
cd-drive-letter:\Docs\File-Formats\schematic-ascii-format.pdf (Windows) or
/cd-mount-point/Docs/File-Formats/schematic-ascii-format.pdf (Linux)

Important

The schematic will be saved in binary format as long as the following are satisfied:

1. The ASCII format check box is *not* checked if using the Save Special... menu.
2. The file being saved does not already exist *OR* the file does exist and is *not* already a SIMetrix ASCII schematic.

So, if you have an ASCII schematic and wish to convert it to binary, the only method is to open it normally then save to a new file.

Creating Schematic Symbols - Overview

A large variety of schematic symbols are supplied with SIMetrix which should cover many uses. However, there will be occasions when you wish either to define your own new symbol - perhaps to implement a hierarchical block or subcircuit - or to modify one of the standard symbols. This section describes how this can be done.

There are actually three different methods to create symbols:

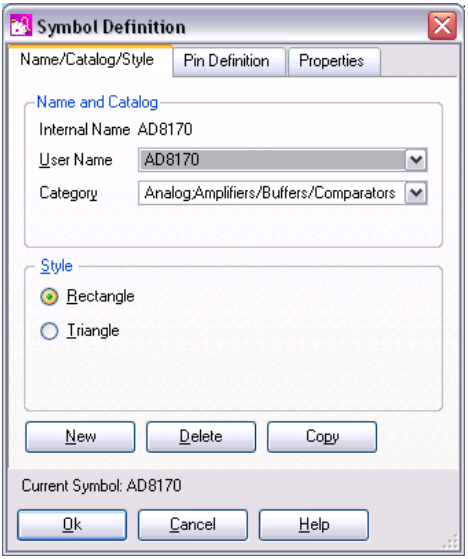
1. Use the graphical symbol editor (see page 91)
2. Use the symbol generator (see page 86)
3. Create manually with a script

For most applications, using the graphical symbol editor is the most appropriate method. The symbol generator was originally developed for a very early version of SIMetrix as a temporary measure before a full graphical editor became available. It isn't as flexible as the graphical editor, but with practice, it is possible to create symbols very rapidly with this tool. For that reason the symbol generator continues to be available.

The manual approach using a script is described in the *Script Reference Manual*.

Symbol Generator

Select menu item Symbol Editor|Symbol Generator.... This will open symbol generator dialog as shown below.



To Create a New Symbol

1. Select the New... button.
2. Enter a description for symbol as you wish it to appear in the dialog opened with the schematic popup All Symbols.... The symbol also requires a unique name which may not contain spaces. This name is used internally by SIMetrix.
3. Enter a catalog. You can use an existing one or create a new one.
4. Select OK
5. Proceed with entering symbol specification - see below

To Create a New Symbol From an Existing One

1. Select symbol to use as base from description box. Note that only symbols originally created with the symbol generator and not subsequently edited with the graphical editor will be listed.
2. Select Copy... Button
3. Proceed as for creating new described above

Symbol Shape

Select Rectangle or Triangle. A triangle shape converges to a point on the right. Triangle symbols may only have one pin defined on the right.

Pins

Select Pin Definition tab.

1. Enter pin name. This can be anything but may not have spaces. Also, avoid pin names with arithmetic characters such '+' and '-'. This isn't an error but will introduce restrictions if plotting currents into a pin of the symbol on a schematic.
2. Select where you want the pin to be put on the symbol with the Left, Right, Top and Bottom radio buttons
3. If you want the name of the pin to be shown on the symbol, ensure the Name Visible? check box is checked.
4. Press Add. The pin description will appear in the list box.
5. Repeat for all pins.

Netlist Order

Each time you enter a new pin the Netlist Order box will increment. Each pin must have a unique netlist order value and the values must be contiguous. If you are creating a symbol to be used as a hierarchical block, the netlist order is unimportant - SIMetrix uses the pin name to match block pins to schematic module ports. If you are creating a symbol to use with an existing subcircuit - from say, a model library- the netlist order must match the order in which the pins are defined for the subcircuit definition.

Symbol Pin Order

The up down arrow keys allow you to modify the symbol pin order. This is the relative position on the symbol that the pins will appear. Pins higher up the list will appear higher on the symbol if defined as left or right or to the left if defined as top or bottom.

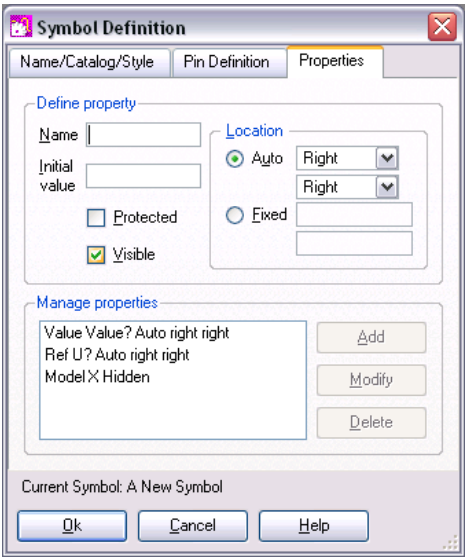
Modifying Pins

1. Select pin in list box
2. Change the characteristic you wish to modify. Note that SIMetrix will not allow you to change the netlist order to a value that is already used.
3. Press Modify

Properties

Properties defined for a symbol are actually the initial properties present when the symbol is first placed on a schematic. These can be changed afterwards.

1. To edit properties proceed as follows.
2. Press Properties Tab
   The following will be displayed



3. All schematic symbols must have a component reference (*ref* property), and a value (*value* property). Additionally simulator symbols should also have a *model* property. For subcircuits, this should have the value ‘X’. Hierarchical blocks do not need a *value* property.
4. Enter required properties. See below for more information. For each property, select the location for the text of the property. You may also choose to have the property not visible. This is usual for the *model* property
5. Press Add

Properties You Need to Add

Full documentation on properties is given in “Properties” on page 100. The following describes the properties you need when making a symbol to use as a simulator primitive, subcircuit or hierarchical block.

Property name	Function
Ref property	This is the component reference e.g. U1, R3 etc. This would conventionally be a letter or letters followed by a question mark ('?'). When you place the component on the schematic, the question mark will be replaced automatically by a number that makes the reference unique. If you don't specify a Model property (see below), the first letter of the reference is important as it defines the type of device. This is explained in more detail below.
Value property	This is the device's value or model name including any additional parameters. For a resistor this might be 12k for an op-amp, LM324, or for a bipolar transistor, Q2N2222. The *value* property must be present on a symbol at the definition stage but its initial value is not important as it would usually be changed after the symbol is placed on a schematic.
Model property	This property usually has a value that is a single letter that specifies the type of device. For sub-circuits and hierarchical blocks this letter must be 'X'. For other types of device refer to the table in "Summary of Simulator Devices" on page 119. If this property is not present, the first letter of the *ref* property will be used to identify the device. For information only: The value of this property and a '$' symbol are prefixed to the *ref* property to obtain the first word of the device line in the netlist hence complying with SPICE syntax. (This won't be done if the first letter of the Ref property is already the same as the value of the *model* property as this would be unnecessary.)
Simulator property	This is only required for the SIMetrix/SIMPLIS product. It declares which simulator the symbol is compatible with. This is only for the purpose of advising the user if a component may not work with a particular simulator. It does not affect the functionality of that component for any simulator. This property can have one of three values: SIMetrix Symbol compatible with SIMetrix simulator only. SIMPLIS Symbol compatible with the SIMPLIS simulator only Dual Symbol compatible with both SIMetrix and SIMPLIS

Placing Symbol on Schematic

After symbol definition is complete, press OK. The symbol will now be in the master library and you will see it listed in the Place|From Symbol Library dialog box.

Graphically Editing Generated Symbols

You can subsequently edit a generated symbol with the graphical editor but once you have done so you will not be able to modify it in the symbol generator. In practice this is not usually a cause for concern. The graphical editor can - say - add a pin or change the pin order as quickly as the symbol generator. Only if you wish to vastly change the pin configuration of a symbol will it be advantageous to use the symbol generator.

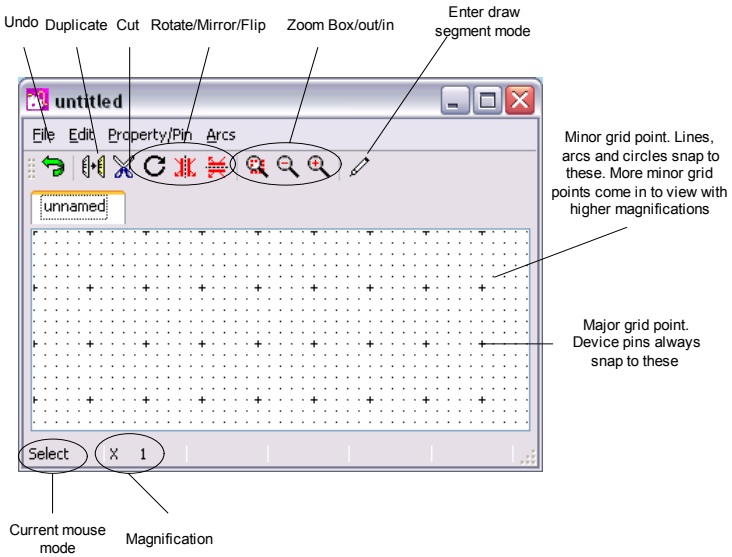
Graphical Symbol Editor

Notes

The graphical symbol editor shares much in its operation and layout with the schematic editor. For this reason, it is recommended that, before learning how to use the symbol editor, you become competent in the operation of the schematic editor. In some parts of the following sections the explanations assume that you are already familiar with the schematic editor.

Symbol Editor Window

The following diagram shows the main elements of the symbol editor



The Elements of a Symbol

Schematic symbols are composed of a combination of the following elements. All symbols that represent an electrical device would comprise *all* of these elements. Symbols used purely for annotation would not need pins and may not need one or other of the remaining elements either. The schematic caption, for example, is a symbol that consists purely of properties.

- *Segments*. These make up the visible body of the symbol. They include straight line segments and *arc segments*.
- *Pins*. These define electrical connections to the device.
- *Properties*. Properties have a name and a value and are used to define the behaviour of the device represented by the symbol. They can also be used for annotation, for example, a label or a caption.

Creating a New Symbol

Select the command shell menu File|Symbol Editor|New Symbol. This will open a symbol editor window as shown above. Now create the elements of the symbol as described above. Details are provided in the following sections.

Editing an Existing Symbol

Select the command shell menu File|Symbol Editor|Symbol Manager... and select the symbol you wish to edit. See "Symbol Library Manager" on page 111 for details.

If you wish to edit a symbol that is placed on an open schematic, select the symbol on the schematic then choose popup menu Edit Symbol....

Drawing Straight Line Segments

Drawing straight line segments in the symbol editor is very similar to drawing wires in the schematic editor. You can do one of the following:

1. Select Draw Segment Mode by pressing the button. You can now draw segments using the left and right mouse buttons. Press the button again to revert to normal mode.
2. If you have a three button mouse, the middle button will start a new segment. The left button will complete a segment and terminate the operation, while the right button will terminate without completing the current segment.
3. Enter Draw Segment Mode temporarily by pressing F3.
4. Double click the left button to start a new segment.

Drawing Arcs, Circles and Ellipses

The basic method of drawing each of the curved elements is the same for each case. Before drawing starts, you must define the start-finish angle and, for ellipses, the ratio of height to width. The drawing operation itself defines the start and finish points. For full circles and ellipses the start and finish points are on opposite sides.

Dedicated menus are supplied for starting a full circle, half circle and quarter circle. For everything else use Arcs|Ellipse/Arc... .

When you have initiated the operation, the cursor will change to a shape showing a pencil with a small circle. You can now draw the curved segment by *dragging* the mouse with the left key. When you release the mouse button the operation will be complete and the mouse mode will revert to normal select mode.

It is easier to demonstrate than explain. You may wish to experiment with arc/circle/ellipse drawing to gain a feel of how the system operates.

You will note that full circles are displayed with a small filled square on opposite sides. These are the select points. You can pick either one and drag it to resize the circle.

Placing and Defining Pins

Placing a Single Pin

To place a single pin, select Property/Pin|Place Pin... . Place this on the sheet by left clicking the mouse at your desired location. Note that pins always snap to major grid points. (See diagram in section "Symbol Editor Window" on page 91).

The first pin you place on the sheet will be called '*pin'. The * signifies that the pin name will not be visible when the symbol is placed on a schematic.

Editing Pin Attributes

To edit the attributes of the pin, (e.g. to change its name or visibility) select either the pin or its label with the left mouse key then press F7 or select popup menu Edit Property/Pin/Arc... . This will display the following dialog:

Pin name

Must be unique within the symbol and may not contain spaces.

If the symbol is to be used as a hierarchical block, the pin name must match the names of the module ports on the schematic which it represents.

If the symbol is to be used for an existing sub-circuit from - say - a model library, the pin names are not important and you can choose any suitable name. The pin names do not need to match the node names in the sub-circuit definition.

Justification

If the pin name is visible this specifies its justification.

Property Attributes

Font style	Select font style to use for a visible pin name. There is a choice of 8 styles. Schematic fonts are explained on page 331.
Hidden	Check this box if you do not wish the pin name to be visible on the schematic

Placing Multiple Pins

To place more than one pin select menu Property/Pin|Place Pin (repeated).... You will be prompted to supply a *Base* pin name which will be used to compose the actual pin name. SIMetrix will append a number to this name to make the pin name unique. The first number used will be '0' unless you append the Base name with a number in which case your appended number will be used as the starting point. For example, if you supplied a Base name of DATA, the first pin placed will be called DATA0, the second DATA1 etc. assuming there aren't already pins of that name on the sheet. If you supplied a base name of DATA2, the first pin you place will be called DATA2, the second DATA3 etc.

Editing Multiple Pins

You can only edit the names of pins one at a time, but you can edit the attributes of a group of pins in a single operation. First select all of the pins you wish to edit. Selecting is done in the same manner as for the schematic except note that you can select the pins themselves or the pin names; either will do. Now press F7 or select popup menu Edit Property/Pin/Arc.... You can change any of the pins attributes except its name and the change will be applied to all selected pins.

Moving Pins or Pin Names

Moving any item in the symbol editor is done the same way as in the schematic. Note, however that pin names are attached to the pins. If you move a pin, its name moves with it. You can move the name on its own by making sure that only the name is selected and not the pin.

Defining Pin Order

The symbol's pin order is important if you are defining a symbol for use with a sub-circuit or primitive simulator device. If it is a sub-circuit, the symbol's pin order must match the order in which the corresponding nodes are defined in the .SUBCKT control. If the symbol is a primitive device, then it must follow the order defined in

section “Summary of Simulator Devices” on page 119. Pin order is unimportant for hierarchical blocks.

To define the symbol's pin order select menu Property/Pin|Edit Pin Order.... Use the up and down buttons to reorder the pins as appropriate.

Adding XSpice Pin Attributes

Some XSPICE devices support *vector* connections and/or *variable type* connections. These are designated in the netlist with the characters '[', ']' and '%' and are explained in the “Digital Simulation” chapter of the *Simulator Reference Manual*. You can add these to a symbol by prefixing the appropriate pin name with the same characters as required in the netlist. E.g. to start a vector connection at a pin named IN1 enter the pin name [IN1. To close a vector connection at pin IN3 use pin name IN3].

Similarly to change a connection whose default type is ‘v’ (i.e. a single-ended voltage) to a differential current (type%id), prefix the first pin name with%id and a space. E.g. pin name ‘VIN’ would become ‘%id VIN’.

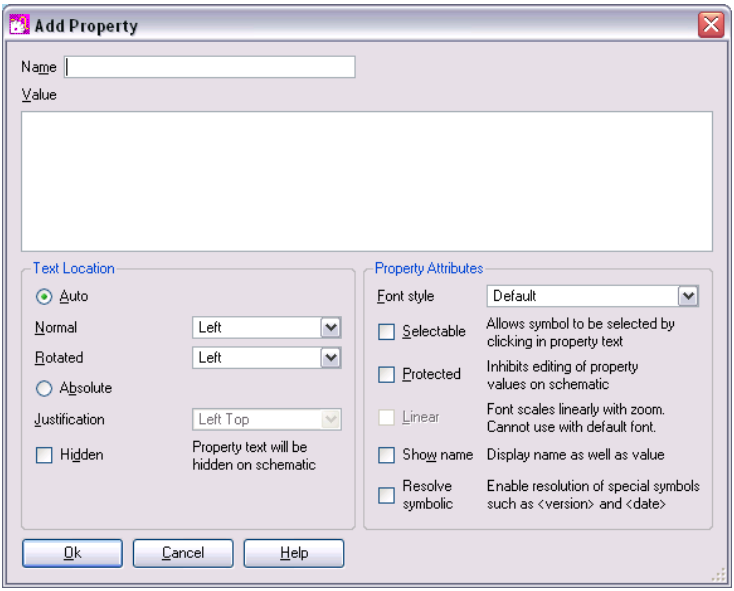
Examples of the use of vector connections in symbols can be found with any of the digital gate symbols.

Defining Properties

Properties define the behaviour of the symbol. For full documentation on the use of properties, see section “Properties” on page 100. In this section, the methods of adding and editing properties in the symbol editor are described.

Adding a Single Property

To add a property to a symbol, select Property/Pin|Add Property.... You will see the following dialog box:



This box allows you to define the name, value and attributes of the property. Note that if the property is not protected, the value and attributes can be changed after the symbol has been placed on a schematic using the schematic popup Edit Properties....

Name

Name of property. This would usually be one of the special properties documented in "Properties" on page 100. You can, however, add any property name you wish to display as text or to provide a special function that you define in a custom script. The only restriction is that the name must not contain spaces.

Resolve symbolic values	If the value is a symbolic value enclosed with '<' and '>' it will be resolved when displayed. Currently there are only three symbolic names: <date>, <time> and <version>. <date>, <time> resolve to date and time in local format and <version> resolves to an integer value which is incremented each time a schematic is saved.

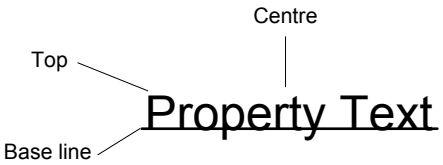
Value

The property's value. (Don't confuse this with the *Value* property). You can insert a new line by pressing the ENTER key. But be careful that if you press the ENTER key accidentally intending to close the dialog that you must delete the erroneously entered new line.

Text location

Define the position of the property's value text on the schematic.

Auto/Absolute	When auto is selected, the property's value text is positioned automatically outside the symbol's border according to the options specified in Normal and Rotated. When absolute is selected, the property is placed at a fixed position relative to the symbol body. You can define the location interactively with the mouse. When auto is selected, the text is always horizontal, when absolute is selected, the text is vertical when the symbol is at a 90 degree rotation.
Normal	When auto is selected, this specifies which side of the symbol the text is located when the symbol is in normal orientation.
Rotated	When auto is selected, this specifies which side of the symbol the text is located when the symbol is rotated 90 degrees.
Justification	Defines the reference point on the text when absolute is specified. See diagram below for meaning of options. The reference point is always at a fixed location with respect to the symbol body. The position of the remainder of the text may vary with zoom level or font size.



Property Attributes

Font style	Select one of eight font styles. The actual font definition is defined by the Font dialog box. See page 331 for details.
Selectable	If checked, the instance of the symbol owning the property can be selected by clicking in the property text. It is recommended that this option is off unless the symbol has no body e.g. a pure text item.
Hidden	The property's value text will not be displayed in the schematic.
Protected	If checked, it will not be possible to edit or delete the property on a schematic instance of the symbol.
Linear	When this is *not* checked, the size of the font is adjusted for best readability and does not necessarily scale exactly with the zoom magnification. When the box is checked, the font size follows the magnification in a linear fashion.
Show Name	If selected the name of the property as well as its value will be displayed

Adding Standard Properties

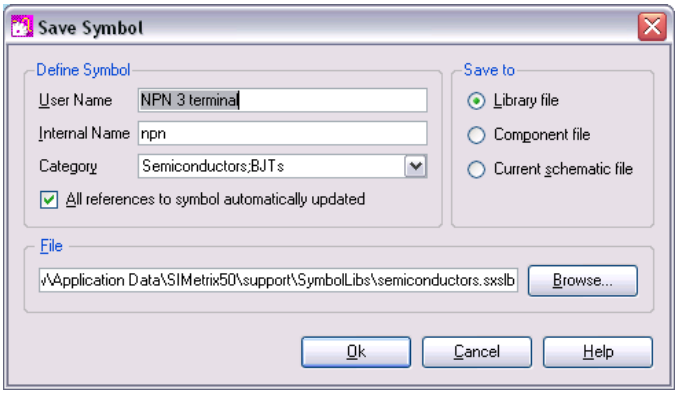
Select menu Property/Pin|Add Standard Properties.... This prompts you for values for the *ref*, *value* and *model* properties. These properties are usually specified for all symbols, with the exception of hierarchical blocks which do not require a Value property. If you are using the SIMetrix/SIMPLIS product, you will also be prompted to supply a value for the SIMULATOR property. See "Properties You Need to Add" on page 89.

Editing a Property

To edit a property, select it then press F7 or select popup menu Edit Property/Pin/Arc.... This will open a dialog box very similar to the one described above but without the option to enter a property name. Make the appropriate changes then press OK.

Saving Symbols

To save the current symbol, select menu File|Save... . The following dialog will be displayed:



Define Symbol - User Name

Enter the name as you wish it to be displayed in the dialog box opened with the schematic menu Parts|All Symbols... .

Define Symbol - Internal Name

For a new symbol, an internal name will automatically be entered when you type the User Name. In most cases you can leave it at that. However, the internal name must be unique across the whole model library so there may be situations where you will need to change it.

Define Symbol - Category

Enter a category to determine how the symbol will be listed in the the dialog box opened with the schematic menu Place|From Symbol Library.... Sub-categories are separated using a semi-colon. Note that you can easily move symbols to different categories using the symbol library manager . So if you are unsure at this stage what category to use, you can place it in a temporary category and move it later.

Define Symbol - All references to symbol automatically updated

If this is checked, any changes you make to a symbol will automatically be applied to any instance of it in existing schematics whether they are open or not.

If it is not checked, instances of the symbol will not be updated until the Update Symbols menu is selected in the schematic. Copies of all symbols used by a schematic are stored locally within the schematic and that local version will only be updated if this box is checked.

See “How Symbols are Stored” on page 118 for further details.

Save to - Library File

Saves the symbol to the library file specified in the File box. This would usually have a .SXSLB extension.

Save to - Component File

Saves the symbol as a component to the file specified in the File box. This would usually have the extension .SXCMP. Component files are used for hierarchical schematics and contain a schematic and a symbol representing it in the same file. When you save a symbol to a component file, only the symbol portion of it will be overwritten. If it contains an embedded schematic, that schematic will remain unchanged. See Hierarchical Schematic Entry .

Save to - Current Schematic Only

The symbol will be saved to the currently selected schematic only and will not be available to other schematics.

File

Library or component file name - see above. Press Browse to select a new file.

Creating a Symbol from a Script

In early versions of SIMetrix, this was the only method of creating schematic symbols. With the introduction of the graphical symbol editor, this method is no longer needed except for specialised applications such as automatic symbol creation. This technique is employed for some of the schematic's functional blocks.

For full documentation on how to create a symbol from a script, refer to the *Script Reference Manual*. This is available as a PDF file on the install CD. A hardcopy version is also available for an additional charge.

Properties

Overview

Properties are one of the schematic editor's most important concepts. They are actually used for a number of purposes but the most importantly they are used to determine how a schematic device behaves during simulation. A property tells the simulator what type of device it is (resistor, BJT, sub-circuit etc.), another property specifies a device's value or model name and, for a hierarchical block, a property specifies the file location of the underlying schematic.

For most applications, you only need to understand the meaning of *ref*, *value* and *model* properties. These are explained below but also in "Properties" on page 88. It is also useful, but not essential, to understand the *schematic_path* property used in hierarchical blocks.

What is a Property?

A *Property* is an item of text that is attached to a schematic component to specify some circuit parameter such as a component reference (e.g. R23), value (e.g. 2.2K) or model name (e.g. BC547).

All properties have a name, a value and a number of attributes. A property's value may be displayed on the schematic. The attributes determine how the value is displayed with the exception of the *protected* attribute which determines whether a property is allowed to be modified.

A property can have any name (as long as does not have spaces in it) and any value. However, certain property names have a special meaning and impart a particular functionality on the component that owns it. These special properties are described in the following table.

Property name	Function
ref	Component reference. (E.g. R23) All circuit devices must have this property and its value must be unique.
value	Component value or model name. (E.g. BC547). All circuit devices must have this property. (This may be confusing. What is described here is a property of name *value* not the property's value.)
model	Single letter to signify type of device. For list of signifying letters for each device supported by simulator see "Summary of Simulator Devices" on page 119. If absent the first letter of the component reference will be used instead (as for SPICE) For example, a device with a *model* property of value 'Q' will always be a BJT regardless of its component reference. *model* properties of 'X', 'H' and 'F' have a special significance as follows: X — Subcircuit instance. *pinnames* specifier will be added to inform simulator of the devices pin names. The simulator will then choose names for device current vectors which will allow cross-probing of currents from the schematic. F — Current controlled current source. The standard SPICE CCCS is a two terminal device which uses a separate voltage source for the controlling current. SIMetrix provides the facility to use a single four terminal device with pins 3 and 4 for the controlling current and pins 1 and 2 for the output. Any symbol with four terminals and a *model* property of 'F' will be treated as a such a device. An additional voltage source will be created by the netlist generator and connected to pins 3 and 4 to be used as the controlling current. H — Current controlled voltage source. As 'F' above but has a voltage output For a list of valid device types and their signifying letters see "Summary of Simulator Devices" on page 119. (In some respects, the special behaviour of *model* property values 'X', 'F' and 'H' is legacy from the past. The recommended method of customising netlist output is to use the *template* property, but this was not supported in very early versions of SIMetrix.)

Property name	Function
netname	If this property is present on a symbol, all nets connected to any of its pins will be named according to the *value* property. The *netname* property is used by the Terminal component in the Symbols menu. The Terminal component forces the net to which it is attached to have a user specified name. (The value of the *netname* property will be used in the absence of a *value* property).
scterm	Identifies the component as a *Module Port*. These identify connections in hierarchical blocks.
tol, lot, match	These are used for Monte Carlo analysis to specify tolerances. See page .
schematic_path	Path of schematic in hierarchical designs
mapping	Rearranges pin order. This is a sequence of numbers each representing a symbol pin order. The order of the numbers in the mapping is the order in which the schematic symbol pins placed on the netlist. For example the LMC6762B comparator in the library is assigned a mapping of 1,2,5,3,4. The output on the comparator symbol is pin 5 but the model requires this to be the third node in the netlist entry.
params	Additional parameters for device appended to value. If model property is X the keyword *params:* prefixes the *params* property value.
template	Specifies a customised netlist entry for the device. See "Template Property" on page 102 below for full details.
valuescript	Specifies a script to be called when F7 or equivalent menu is selected.
incscript	Script to be called when the shift-up key is pressed. This is to increment a component's value. Currently used for potentiometers and some passive devices.
decscript	As incscript but for shift-down to decrement a device.
handle	This property is automatically allocated to *every* instance and always has a unique value. Because it is automatically added, it is the only property that every schematic component is guaranteed to possess. This property is protected and therefore cannot be edited
simulator	Determines simulator compatibility. See "Properties You Need to Add" on page 89

Template Property

This is the subject of its own section. See below.

Editing Properties in a Schematic

Unprotected properties of a symbol placed on a schematic may be edited using the popup menu Edit Properties.... This first opens a dialog listing all properties owned by the device. After selecting the property to edit a dialog box similar to the box described in “Defining Properties” on page 95. If the property you select is protected, the dialog box will still open but you will not be able to change any of the settings.

Restoring Properties

This is a method of restoring an instance's properties to the values and attributes of the original symbol. This is especially useful in situations where a symbol has been edited to - say - add a new property and you wish that new property to be included on existing instances of that symbol.

To restore instances properties follow the instructions below.

1. Select the instances whose properties you wish to restore.
2. Select popup menu Restore Properties...
3. There are two options:

   New Properties Only will only add new properties to the selected instances. That is any property that is present on the symbol definition but not on the schematic instance of it will be added. All other properties will remain intact.

   All Properties will restore all properties to that of the symbol definition. This includes deleting any instance properties that are not in the symbol definition. In effect this will restore the symbol as if it had just been placed using the Place|From Symbol Library menu. Note that REF properties will be automatically annotated to make them unique. *This option must be used with care*. Don't use it unless you are very clear about what it will do.

This function will restore properties according to the local symbol definition stored in the schematic. This won't necessarily be the same as the global definition in the symbol library. For more information see “How Symbols are Stored” on page 118

Template Property

Overview

The template property provides a method of customising the netlist entry for a schematic component. Normally a single line is created in the netlist for each schematic component (except 'F' and 'H' devices which are defined by two lines). The line is created according to the values of various properties most importantly the *ref*, *model*, and *value* properties. If, however, a template property is specified this system is bypassed and the netlist entry is defined by the value of this property.

The template property value can contain a number of special keywords and characters that will be substituted during the netlist creation. Values that can be substituted include node names, pin names and the value of any property.

There are three template keywords, new for version 4, that define multiple lines to implement series or/and parallel combinations, ladder networks or arrays of devices.

Template Property Format

The netlist entry for a device with a template property will be the literal text of the template property's value with certain special characters and words substituted. Text enclosed by '<' and '>' are keywords and have a special meaning. Text enclosed with '%' is substituted with the value of the property whose name is enclosed by the '%' character. Finally text enclosed by curly braces, '{' and '}' will be treated as an expression and will be evaluated. Each of these is described in more detail in the following sections.

Property Substitution

Any text enclosed with '%' is substituted with the value of the property whose name is enclosed by the '%' character. So %REF% would be substituted with the value of the *ref* property.

Expressions

Text enclosed by curly braces, '{' and '}' will be treated as an expression and will be evaluated. Note that property substitutions are performed before expressions are evaluated, so the result of an expression can depend on any combination of property values.

If the attempt to evaluate the expression fails the result will be empty. No error message will be reported.

Keywords

Any text enclosed by '<' and '>' represents a keyword. The keyword along with the '<' and '>' will be substituted according to the keyword as defined in the following table. There are two types of keyword: simple and compound. Simple keywords are just a single word whereas compound keywords consist of sequence of names and values separated by colons (':'). Compound keywords are used to generate multiple netlist lines for applications such as creating series and parallel combinations.

How Template Properties are Evaluated

Template properties are processed in two passes. In the first pass the property names enclosed by '%' are substituted, while keywords and expressions pass through untouched. In the second pass, keywords and expressions are processed and the '%' character is treated literally.

This makes it possible to use property values in expressions and the control values for the multi line keywords. For example:

```
%MODEL%$%REF% <nodelist> %VALUE% L=%L% W=%W% AD={%W%*0.5u}
```

if L=1u, W=0.5u, MODEL=M, REF=Q23 and VALUE = N1, this would resolve to the following *after the first pass*:

```
M$Q23 <nodelist> N1 L=1u W=0.5u AD={0.5u*0.5u}
```

The second pass would then be able to evaluate the expression and resolve <nodelist> (see below). The value of AD will be calculated according to whatever W is set to. This is an alternative method of setting MOSFET area and perimeter values. (The method used with the standard symbols is different in order to remain compatible with earlier versions).

Note that if the property value contains any of the special characters ('<', '>', '{', '}', '%'), these will be treated literally. So if for example a property value was {tailres}, no attempt would be made to evaluate {tailres} in the second pass.

Keyword Summary

The keywords available are summarised in the following table and explained in detail below.

Keyword	Description
nodelist	Substituted with full list of nodes for device.
pinlist	Substituted with full list of pin names for symbol
node[*n*]	Substituted for individual node
mappednode	As 'node' but order defined by *mapping* property if present
pinnames	Equivalent to 'pinnames: <pinlist>' except that no substitution takes place if the /nopinnames switch is specified for the Netlist command.
mappedpinnames	As pinnames but order is altered according to *mapping* property if present
nodename	This is not replaced by any text but signifies that the item following is a node name. The netlist generator must be able to identify any text that is a node so that it can correctly substitute the name when required.
repeat	Start of compound keyword to create a general purpose repeating sequence
series	Start of compound keyword to create a series combination
parallel	Start of compound keyword to create a parallel combination.
step	Used by series and parallel to return sequence number.
if	Conditional on the result of an expression
ifd	Conditional on whether a property is defined

Keyword	Description
join, join_pin, join_num	Returns information about a connected device. Used for current probes.
sep	Returns separator character. (Usually '$')
ref	SPICE compatible component reference
inode	Generates an internal node.
t	Substitutes a property value treating it as a template

NODELIST

<NODELIST>

Replaced by the nodes connected to the device's pins.

PINLIST

<PINLIST>

Replaced by the symbol's pin names.

NODE

<NODE[*n*]>

Replaced by the individual node identified by *n* starting at 1. So node[1] is node name connected to the first pin on the symbol.

PINNAMES

<PINNAMES>

Equivalent to 'PINNAMES: <PINLIST>' except that no substitution takes place if the /nopinnames switch is specified for the Netlist command.

NODENAME

<NODENAME>

This is not replaced by any text but signifies that the item following is a node name. The netlist generator must be able to identify any text that is a node so that it can correctly substitute the name when required. For example, the following is the template definition of the N-channel MOSFET with bulk connected to VSS:

```
%model%$%ref% <nodelist> <nodename>vss %value%
```

If VSS were actually connected to ground, the netlist generator would replace all nodes called VSS with 0 (meaning ground). If the <nodename> keyword were not present in the above the netlist generator would not be able to determine that VSS is a node and the substitution would not take place.

SEP

<SEP>

Returns separator character used to separate the device letter and component reference. This defaults to '$' but can be changed at the Netlist command line. See Netlist command syntax in the *Script Reference Manual.*

REF

<REF>

Returns the component reference of the device using the same rules that are used when the template property is not present. The rules are:

if MODEL property is blank
OR
MODEL is a single character
AND
first letter of REF property equals MODEL property

<ref> ≡ %REF%

otherwise

<ref> ≡ %MODEL%<sep>%REF%

Where <sep> is the separator character. This is usually '$' but can be changed at the netlist command line. See Netlist command syntax in the *Script Reference Manual*.

If <REF> is used for a series or parallel repeat sequence, it will be appended with:

<SEP><STEP>

where <STEP> is the sequence number for the series/parallel function. See below.

REPEAT

<REPEAT:*var_name*:*num*:<*line*>>

Repeats *line num* times. *var_name* is incremented on each step. *var_name* may be used in an expression to define device or node names.

The following example creates a subcircuit that define an RC ladder circuit with a variable number of sections defined by the property NUM. The resistance of each section is defined by the property RES and the capacitance by the property CAP. Note that, as explained above, templates are resolved in two passes. In the first pass the property names enclosed by '%' are substituted with their values while expressions and keywords are left untouched. In the second pass the keywords and expressions are processed.

```
.subckt ladder 1 {%NUM%+1} gnd

<repeat:idx:%NUM%:<X{idx} {idx} {idx+1} gnd section;>>
```

```
.subckt section in out gnd
R1 in out %RES%
C1 out gnd %CAP%
.ends

.ends
```

var_name in the above is set to *idx*. If NUM were set to ten, the line:

```
X{idx} {idx} {idx+1} gnd section;
```

would be repeated 10 times with *idx* incrementing by one each time. Note the semi-colon at the end of the line. This signifies that a new line must be created and is essential. The end result of the above with NUM=10, RES=1k and CAP=1n is

```
.subckt ladder 1 11 gnd

X1 1 2 gnd section
X2 2 3 gnd section
X3 3 4 gnd section
X4 4 5 gnd section
X5 5 6 gnd section
X6 6 7 gnd section
X7 7 8 gnd section
X8 8 9 gnd section
X9 9 10 gnd section
X10 10 11 gnd section


.subckt section in out gnd
R1 in out 1k
C1 out gnd 1n
.ends

.ends
```

Although it is legal to nest REPEAT keywords, we recommend avoiding doing so as it can lead to unexpected results. You can always use subcircuit definitions to each multi-dimensional repeats and these are usually easier to understand.

The above example has multiple lines. These can be entered using the Edit Properties dialog box. The best way to define multiple line templates is to first enter them in a text editor and then copy and paste to the Edit Properties dialog.

SERIES

<SERIES:*num*:<*line*>>

Creates a series combination of the device described in *line*. For example:

```
<series:%series%:<<ref> <nodelist> %VALUE%>>
```

Creates a series combination of components. The number in series is determined by the property SERIES. Note that the REF keyword returns the component reference appropriately modified by the MODEL property *and* appended with the sequence number. If SERIES=5, REF=R1, VALUE=1k and MODEL=R and the device is connected to external nodes R1_P and R1_N, this is the end result.

```
R1$1 R1_P 1 1k
R1$2 1 2 1k
R1$3 2 3 1k
R1$4 3 4 1k
R1$5 4 R1_N 1k
```

If the *num* element is empty - e.g. in above example if SERIES property were empty or missing - then no output will be made at all.

The example above can be used for any two terminal component. There must however be a SERIES property present on the symbol.

PARALLEL

<PARALLEL:*num*:<*line*>>

Creates a parallel combination of the device described in *line*. For example:

```
<parallel:%parallel%:<<ref> <nodelist> %VALUE%>>
```

creates a parallel combination of components. The number in parallel is determined by the property PARALLEL. Note that the REF keyword returns the component reference appropriately modified by the MODEL property *and* appended with the sequence number. If PARALLEL=5, REF=R1, VALUE=1k, MODEL=R and the device is connected to external nodes R1_P and R1_N, this is the end result.

```
R1$1 R1_P R1_N 1k
R1$2 R1_P R1_N 1k
R1$3 R1_P R1_N 1k
R1$4 R1_P R1_N 1k
R1$5 R1_P R1_N 1k
```

If the *num* element is empty - e.g. in above example if PARALLEL property were empty or missing - then no output will be made at all.

The example above can be used for any two terminal component. There must however be a PARALLEL property present on the symbol.

STEP

<STEP>

Used with SERIES and PARALLEL keywords. Returns sequence number.

IF

<IF:*test*:*action1*[:*action2*]>

If *test* resolves to a non-zero value *action1* will be substituted otherwise *action2* will be substituted. Typically *test* would be an expression enclosed in curly braces. ('{' and '}').

For example, the following implements in a somewhat complex manner a series connection of resistors. (This should actually all be on one line)

```
<REPEAT:line:%SERIES%:<%REF%$R{line} <if:{line==
1}:<<NODE[1]>>:$%REF%${line}> <if:{line==
%SERIES%}:<<NODE[2]>>:$%REF%${line+1}> %VALUE%;>>
```

Note that usually each action should be enclosed with '<' and '>'. They can be omitted if the action does not contain any keywords. If in doubt, put them in.

IFD

<IFD:*propname*:*action1*[:*action2*]>

If *propname* is present and not blank, *action1* will be substituted otherwise *action2* will be substituted.

Example

```
<ifd:value:<%value%>:1>
```

In the above, if the property value is present it will be substituted otherwise the value '1' will be substituted.

JOIN

<JOIN:*prop_name*[:*index*]>

This can only be used with instances of symbols with one and only one pin. Returns the value of *prop_name* on an instance attached directly to the single pin of the device. For example in the following:

<JOIN:REF> on the probe (R1-P) would return R1 as this is the value of the REF property of the resistor. In situations where more than one instance is connected to the pin, *index* may be used to specify which one. *index* may have a value between 0 and 1 less than the number of devices connected. Use <join_num> to determine how many devices are connected.

Note that the pin of the device must be directly connected i.e. with pins superimposed and not by wires.

<JOIN> is intended to be used for current probes.

JOIN_NUM

<JOIN_NUM>

Only valid for single pin instances. Returns number of joined devices. See <JOIN> above for details.

JOIN_PIN

<JOIN_PIN[:*index*]>

Only valid for single pin instances. Returns connected pin name for another device connected to this device's only pin. This can be used in conjunction with <JOIN> to return the current vector for a component. E.g.

```
<JOIN:REF>#<JOIN_PIN>
```

for the probe device in:

would return R1#p.

In situations where more than one instance is connected to the pin, *index* may be used to specify which one. *index* may have a value between 0 and 1 less than the number of devices connected. Use <join_num> to determine how many devices are connected.

T

<T:*prop_name*>

Does the same as %*prop_name*% except that the properties value is evaluated as if it were a template itself. With %*prop_name*% the literal value of the property is always used. Note that recursive properties will simply be substituted with nothing. E.g. <T:TEMPLATE> will return empty if used in a template property called TEMPLATE.

Further Information

To put a new line in the netlist entry you can use a ';'. Literal new lines are also accepted.

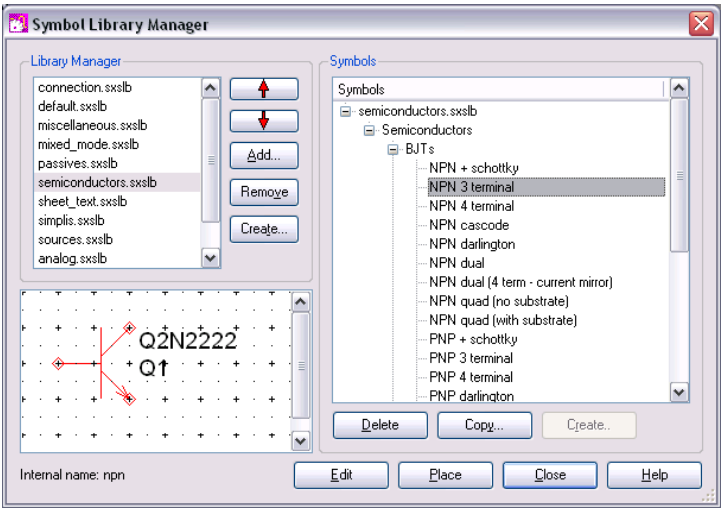
To put a literal < >; {} or % character in the text, use two of them. So '<<' will become '<'.

Template Scripts

It is also possible to write a script to compile the line generated by the netlist generator. Such scripts are called ‘Template Scripts’. With this approach, you enjoy the full power of the scripting language and very complex devices can be created in this manner. For full details of this approach, please refer to the *Script Reference Manual.*

Symbol Library Manager

The symbol manager is a comprehensive system for managing symbols and the libraries that store them. To open the symbol library manager, select command shell menu File|Symbol Editor|Symbol Manager.... The dialog shown below will be displayed.



Note that the box can be resized in the usual way.

The symbols available to the schematic editor are stored in library files which conventionally have the extension .SXSLB . Only symbols in installed libraries are available for placing a new part. Note, however, that once a symbol is placed on a schematic a copy is stored locally, so you can still view a schematic that uses symbols that are not installed.

The symbols in each file are grouped into categories using a tree structure as shown above in the Symbols box.

The manager allows you to install or uninstall library files, to move symbols between files or categories, to delete symbols, to copy symbols and to create new categories. You can also create new empty symbols ready for editing with the symbol editor.

Operations

Installing Libraries

Select the Add... button and select a library file to install. Note that if you have the PSpice translator option you can install PSpice symbol libraries (.SLB files) directly. See "PSpice Schematics Translation" on page 114 for more details.

Pressing the Add... button will open a file select dialog box but note that it has two additional buttons at the top left called User and System. Pressing these buttons will take you straight to the user symbols directory and the system symbols directory respectively.

Uninstalling Libraries

Select the library file you wish to uninstall from the Library Files box then press the Remove button. Note that this does not delete the file.

Changing Search Order

When searching for a particular symbol, the library files are searched in the order in which they are listed in the Library Files box. To change the order, use the Up and Down buttons.

Moving Symbols

To move an individual symbol to a new category, simply pick it up with the mouse and drop it onto the new category. You can move a symbol to a new library by dropping the symbol onto a library file in the Library Files box.

You can move more than one symbol at a time by picking up a complete category.

Copying Symbols

To copy a symbol within a library, select the symbol in the Symbols box then press the Copy... button or use the right click menu Copy Symbol... . Enter a new user name for the symbol. It isn't usually necessary to change the internal name.

To copy symbols to a new library, use the same drag and drop procedure as for moving but hold the control key down while doing so. You can do this for a single symbol or for an entire category. Note that when copying to a new library, the symbol retains its user name and internal name. There will therefore be duplicates installed unless they are renamed.

Deleting Symbols

To delete a symbol, select it then press Delete or the right click popup menu of the same name. You can also delete an entire category in the same way.

Renaming Symbols

Select a symbol then press F2 or the right click popup menu Rename. You can also rename a category in the same way.

Note that this only renames the user name of the symbol. There is no method of changing the internal name other than making a copy with a new name, then deleting the original.

Creating a New Category

To create a new category, select the parent category where you wish it to be placed, then press Create... or the popup menu of the same name. In the dialog that opens, select the Category button and enter the new name.

Creating a New Symbol

Select the category where you wish the symbol to be placed, then press Create... or the popup menu of the same name. Enter the desired user name. An internal name will be automatically entered as you type in the user name. This can usually be left alone.

The symbol created will be empty. Use the symbol editor to define it. You can call this directly by pressing the Edit button. Note that this will close the library manager dialog box.

Placing Symbol

If a schematic sheet is open, you can place a symbol on it directly from the library manager by pressing the Place button. Note that this will close the dialog box.

PSpice Schematics Translation

An optional extra feature of SIMetrix is the ability to read schematic files created by the PSpice 'Schematics' program. Note that it cannot read Orcad Capture files.

Configuring the Translator

Before using this facility, it must be configured. This is simply a matter of specifying the location of the PSPICE.INI file which PSpice uses to store symbol library locations. Proceed as follows:

1. Select menu File|Options|General...
2. Select File Locations tab
3. Double click the item 'PSpice inifile'
4. Locate the file PSPICE.INI. This is usually at the root folder for PSpice e.g. C:\Program Files\Orcad\PSpice\PSPICE.INI. Press Open when you have found the file.

The above assumes you are using version 9 of PSpice. Earlier versions stored their settings in a similar manner but the file name was different and in a different location. For example MSIM.INI located in the windows directory. Note we have only tested version 9.2 and the evaluation version 8.0. Some earlier versions used different inifile section names and in these cases the file will need to be manually edited. For more information see the on-line help topic Schematic Editor >> PSpice Schematics Translation.

If you don't have PSpice

If you do not have PSpice on your system then you will need to create a PSPICE.INI file that contains the location of the PSpice symbol libraries. Note that PSpice schematics do not contain local copies of their symbols (unlike SIMetrix) so the symbol libraries are essential to perform any schematic translation. For information see the on-line help topic Schematic Editor >> PSpice Schematics Translation.

Reading PSpice Schematics

Once the translator has been configured, simply open the PSpice schematic in the same way as you would one created by SIMetrix.

Installing PSpice Libraries for Use with SIMetrix

You can install PSpice symbol libraries in the same way as SIMetrix symbol libraries. This will make the symbols available for use with SIMetrix. Note that the schematic translator only uses symbols in the PSpice libraries specified using the procedure described above.

What the Translator will do

1. The translator will convert symbols, parts and wires and display them in a manner that is as close as reasonably possible to the original schematic.
2. It will convert any TEMPLATE properties to the SIMetrix format while preserving the original PSpice template under a different name.
3. It will copy where possible any simulator commands to the F11 window.
4. Hierarchical symbols will be appropriately converted but the underlying schematics need to be converted separately and saved in SIMetrix format.
5. Translated symbols will be copied to PSPICE.SXSLB in the SymbolLibraries directory. By default this library is not installed. If you do install it (see Symbol Library Manager) these symbols can then be used in SIMetrix schematics.

Limitations

The translator has the following limitations:

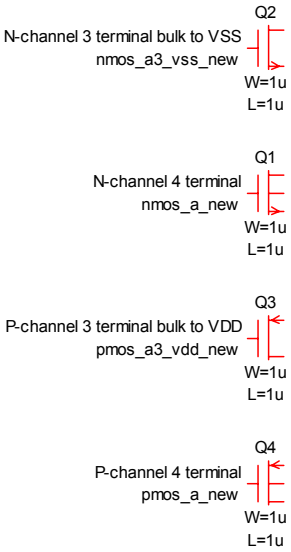
1. It cannot convert busses.
2. Boxes, text boxes, free text and embedded graphics are not supported.
3. Pin attributes are not supported.
4. Hierarchical blocks are not supported but hierarchical symbols are. To use hierarchical blocks, use PSpice to convert them to symbols.
5. The template properties are converted to the SIMetrix format but with one limitation. References to properties that are themselves templates are not supported. These are used in some of the standard ABM blocks supplied with PSpice. These will need to be manually converted by editing the template property.
6. You will not normally be able to cross probe current into a device converted from PSpice. The current into the device will be available but the schematic cross-probing mechanism won't work without manually editing the symbols and template property.
7. PSpice Schematics allows the placement of symbol pins, parts and wires off-grid. The translator *will* convert these correctly and SIMetrix *will* display them correctly but they can cause problems if attempting to edit them subsequently. (SIMetrix itself does not permit the user to place off-grid items). If off grid parts are identified, they will be highlighted and a warning will be displayed. Off-grid

symbols will also resulting in a warning. If possible we recommend that these are corrected within the PSpice environment before reading the file into SIMetrix.

Using Schematic Editor for CMOS IC Design

MOSFET Symbols

4 MOSFET symbols are supplied for use in CMOS IC design. These are:



In the *Micron* versions of SIMetrix, these will by default be available from the component toolbar. These symbols have the model name N1 for the N-channel types and P1 for the P-channel types. These names can of course be changed after being placed on the schematic, but this would be time consuming to have to do each time. To avoid having to do this, you can do one of the following:

- Modify your SPICE model files so the devices are always called N1 and P1
- Modify the standard symbol so the model name corresponds to your SPICE models.
- Create a new set of symbols for each process you use.

The best course of action is probably to create a new symbol for each process. Once you have created the new symbols, you can modify the toolbar buttons so that they call up your new symbols instead of the standard ones. You must do this using the DefButton command which redefines toolbar buttons. To make permanent changes the DefButton command should be put in the startup script. Here is the procedure:

1. Select command shell menu "File | Scripts | Edit Startup...". If you are using Linux, you might first need to define a suitable text editor for this menu to work. (The default is gedit)
2. Enter a DefButton command for each toolbar button you wish to redefine. For the MOS symbols the commands will be one or more combinations of the following:

   DefButton NMOS4 "inst /ne your_nmos4_symbol"
   DefButton PMOS4 "inst /ne your_pmos4_symbol"
   DefButton NMOS3IC "inst /ne your_nmos3_symbol"
   DefButton PMOS3IC "inst /ne your_pmos3_symbol"

   Replace your_nmos4_symbol, your_pmos4_symbol etc with the internal names of your new symbols.

Automatic Area and Perimeter Calculation

In the *Micron* versions of SIMetrix, you can edit device length, width and scale factor using the popup menu Edit MOS Length/Width or by pressing alt-F7. These menus alter the symbol properties W, L and M for width, length and multiplier.

The symbols described above have been designed in a manner such that additional parameters such as AS, AD, PS, PD, NRS and NRD may be automatically calculated from width and length. To use this facility append the VALUE property with the parameter definitions defined as expressions. E.g.:

```
N1 AD={2*%W%+0.8u}
```

The above device will have an AD parameter calculated from “2*width+0.8u”. Note that the formula is enclosed in curly braces (‘{‘, ‘}’) and width and length expressed as %W% and %L% respectively. You can use similar expressions for any other parameter.

As an alternative, you can define AS, AD etc. as a parameter expression in a sub-circuit. See “Subcircuits” on page 145 for more details.

Editing the MOS Symbols

You may wish to create your own MOS symbols for each process you use. We suggest that you always make a copy of the standard symbols and save them with a new name in your own symbol library.

Once you have your copied version, you can edit it to suit your IC process. In most applications, you will probably only need to edit the VALUE property. See next paragraph.

Editing VALUE property

The VALUE property defines the model name and all the device’s parameters except length, width and the multiplier M. The standard VALUE property defines just the model name and this defaults to N1 for NMOS devices and P1 for PMOS devices. You should edit these to match the model name used in your process.

In addition (as described in "Automatic Area and Perimeter Calculation" above) you can append the VALUE property with other parameters such as AD, AS etc and define these as expressions relating width (using %W%) or/and length (using %L%.)

To Edit the Default Values of L and W

Edit the L and W properties as appropriate.

To Edit the Hidden Node for 3 Terminal Devices

The hidden bulk node for three terminal devices is defined by the BULKNODE property. This defaults to VSS for NMOS devices and VDD for PMOS devices.

Further Information

How Symbols are Stored

When a symbol is placed on a schematic, a copy of that symbol definition is stored locally. This makes it possible to open the schematic even if some of the symbols it uses are not available in the symbol library. However, if you edit a symbol definition for a schematic that is saved, when you open that schematic, it has a choice between its local copy of the symbol or the copy in the library. Which it chooses depends on an option chosen when the symbol is saved. When saving the symbol with the graphical editor, you will see the check box All references to symbols automatically updated. If this is checked then the schematic editor will always use the library symbol if present. If not, it will use its local copy.

If a schematic is using a local copy and you wish to update it to the current library version, select the symbol or symbols then select the popup menu Update Symbol. Note that *all* instances of the symbol will be updated. It is not possible to have two versions of a symbol on the same schematic.

Important Note

Note, that only the symbol geometry, pin definitions and protected properties of a schematic instance will be changed when its symbol definition is edited.

Unprotected properties will remain as they are. For example, the standard NPN bipolar transistor symbol has an initial *value* property of Q2N2222 so when you place one of these on the schematic from the Place menu or tool bar, this is the value first displayed. This can of course be subsequently changed. The initial value of Q2N2222 is defined in the NPN symbol. However, if you edit the symbol definition and change the initial value to something else - say - BC547, the value of the *value* property for any instances of that symbol that are *already placed* will *not* change.

You can use the popup menu Restore Properties... to restore properties to their symbol defined values. For more information, see "Restoring Properties" on page 103

If you wish a property value to always follow the definition in the symbol, then you must protect it. See "Defining Properties" on page 95 for details.

Summary of Simulator Devices

The following information is needed to define schematic symbols for the various devices supported by the simulator.

In order to be able to cross-probe pin currents, the pin names for the schematic symbol must match up with those used by the simulator. So for a BJT (bipolar junction transistor) the simulator refers to the four pins as ‘b’, ‘c’, ‘e’ and ‘s’ for base, collector, emitter and substrate. The same letters must also be used for the pin names for any schematic BJT symbol. The simulator device pin names are listed below.

The *model* property is the schematic symbol property which describes what type of device the symbol refers to. SPICE uses the first letter of the component reference to identify the type of device. The SIMetrix netlist generator prefixes the model property (and a '$' symbol) to the component reference to comply with this. This makes it possible to use any component reference on the schematic.

Device	Model property	Pin no.	Pin names	Pin function
XSPICE device	A			
Arbitrary Sources	B	1 2	p n	
Bipolar junction transistors	Q	1 2 3 4	c b e s	Collector Base Emitter Substrate
Capacitor	C	1 2	p n	
Current Controlled Current Source (2 terminal)	F	1 2	p n	
Current Controlled Current Source (4 terminal)	F	1 2 3 4	p n any any	+ output - output + control -control
Current Controlled Voltage Source (2 terminal)	H	1 2	p n	
Current Controlled Voltage Source (4 terminal)	H	1 2 3 4	p n any any	+ output - output + control - control
Current Source	I	1 2	p n	+ -
Diode	D	1 2	p n	Anode Cathode

Device	Model property	Pin no.	Pin names	Pin function
GaAs FETs	Z	1	d	Drain
		2	g	Gate
		3	s	Source
Inductor	L	1	p	
		2	n	
Junction FET	J	1	d	Drain
		2	g	Gate
		3	s	Source
MOSFET	M	1	d	Drain
		2	g	Gate
		3	s	Source
		4	b	Bulk
Resistors	R	1	p	
Transmission Line	T (lossless) O (lossy)	1	p1	Port 1 Term 1
		2	n1	Port 1 Term 2
		3	p2	Port 2 Term 1
		4	n2	Port 2 Term 2
Voltage Controlled Current Source	G	1	p	+ output
		2	n	- output
		3	cp	+ contol
		4	cn	-control
Voltage Controlled Switch	S	1	p	Switch term 1
		2	n	Switch term 2
		3	cp	+ control
		4	cn	- control
Voltage Controlled Voltage Source	E	1	p	+ output
		2	n	- output
		3	cp	+ control
		4	cn	-control
Voltage Source	V	1	p	+ output
		2	n	- output
Subcircuits	X	Pins can be given any name. Numbering must be in the order that pins appear in the .subckt control which defines the subcircuit. SIMetrix uses a special extension of the netlist format to tell the simulator what the pin names are.		

Chapter 5 Components

Overview

In this chapter we describe the components available at the schematic level. Broadly speaking components fall into two categories namely *numbered* and *generic*. Numbered components are devices that have a manufacturer's part number and are described by a model either supplied with SIMetrix or by the manufacturer itself. Generic components are devices that are defined by one or more parameters that are entered by the user after the component has been placed on the schematic.

A transistor like a 2N2222 or BC547 is an example of a numbered component and a resistor is probably the simplest example of a generic component.

There are some components that have characteristics of both types. CMOS IC designers would use MOSFETs defined by a model but will then customise it with length and width parameters. Saturable inductors have an underlying model to describe the core's characteristics but a number of user defined parameters to define the geometry and air gap.

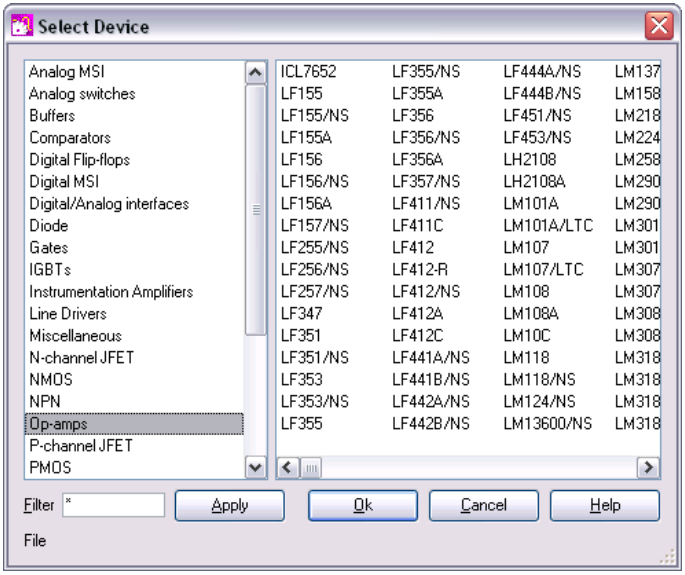
Numbered components need a model which is usually stored in the model library. Refer to "Device Library and Parts Management" on page 153 for details.

This chapter is concerned only with devices at the schematic level. Many of these devices are implemented directly by the simulator. For example the simulator has a bipolar transistor model built in and such devices can be defined with a set of simulator parameters. However, not all devices are implemented directly by the simulator. It does not, for example have a operational amplifier device built in. These components are constructed from a number of other components into a subcircuit.

The devices built in to the simulator are described in the "Simulator Devices" chapter of the *Simulator Reference Manual*.

Numbered Components

Numbered components may be accessed via the Parts Browser. Select menu Place|From Model Library to open it. This is what you will see:



Select the appropriate category on the left then the part number on the right. If you are not sure what category the component is in, select the '* All Devices *' category which you will find at the bottom of the category list.

You may find a category called '*** Unknown ***'. Parts that were found in the library but which could not be identified will be found here. If you select one of these you will be prompted to enter some information about the component using the Associate Models and Symbols dialog. See "Associating Models with Symbols" on page 156 for instructions on how to use this.

To reduce the number of devices displayed to a manageable level, you can specify a filter. You can use the wild-cards '*' and '?' here. '*' will match 1 or more of any character while '?' will match any single character. So, '*' on its own will match any string and so all devices will be displayed. But 'IRF*' will display any device that starts with the three letters 'IRF'. 'IRF???' will display any device beginning with IRF and followed by three and only three characters.

Numbered Components in SIMPLIS

This section applies only to the SIMetrix/SIMPLIS product.

SIMPLIS works in a quite different way to SIMetrix (SPICE) and as a result its models for semiconductor devices are completely different. For that reason the selection of devices available from Place|From Model Library when in SIMPLIS mode will not be the same as in SIMetrix mode.

However, SIMetrix is able to convert some SPICE models for use with SIMPLIS. This conversion operation is performed behind the scenes and you don't necessarily need to know what is happening. However, it is very useful to understand the process that is being performed in order to understand the devices behaviour under SIMPLIS. This conversion process is described in the next section.

SPICE to SIMPLIS Conversion

SIMetrix is able to convert the following SPICE models types to SIMPLIS models:

Type	Supported SPICE Implementation	Conversion Method
Diode	Primitive model	Parameter translation
Zener Diode	Primitive model or subcircuit	Simulated parameter extraction
BJT	Primitive model	Parameter translation
MOSFET	Primitive model or subcircuit	Simulated parameter extraction

Supported SPICE Implementation refers to the way the SPICE model must be implemented for the conversion operation to be supported. SPICE models can be either primitive models using the .MODEL control or can be sub-circuits using .SUBCKT. .ENDS.

Conversion Method describes the method used to perform the conversion. Parameter translation is a simple process whereby the .MODEL parameters are read from the model and used to compile a SIMPLIS model using a knowledge of the SPICE device equations. Simulated parameter extraction is a more sophisticated and general purpose method that can be applied to any primitive model or subcircuit. In this method the SPICE device is measured using the SIMetrix simulator in a number of test circuits. The results of these tests are then analysed and used to derive the final SIMPLIS model.

SPICE to SIMPLIS conversion takes place when you place the device on the schematic. If Simulated parameter extraction is being used, the message “Extracting SIMPLIS model for ???. Please wait.” will be displayed. For MOSFETs this process usually takes less than about 0.5 seconds on a 1.5G P4 machine but can be much longer. Note that Simulated parameter extraction is not guaranteed to succeed and can fail if the SPICE model is faulty or badly designed.

Additional Parameters

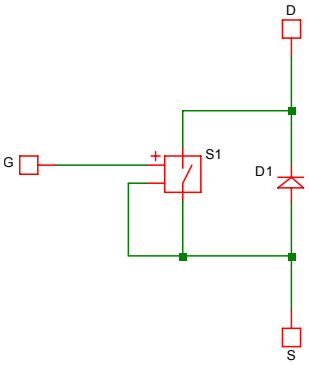
Semiconductor devices converted for SIMPLIS operation have some additional parameters that may be edited after the device is placed. This is done using the popup menu Edit Additional Parameters.... In general each device has two types of additional parameter. These are LEVEL parameters which define the complexity of the model used and LIMIT parameters which define operating limits for the device. The latter are used to work out suitable coordinates for the piece wise linear approximation needed

for SIMPLIS devices. Model complexity defined by LEVEL parameters trade off accuracy for speed.

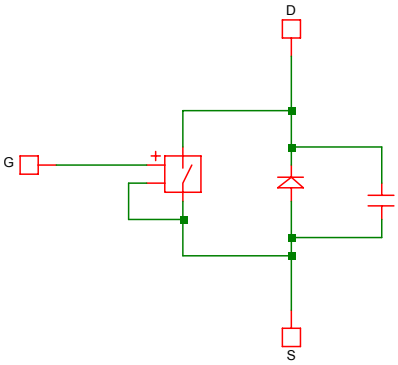
The following table explains the meaning of the parameters for each device:

Device	Parameters
Diodes	Maximum current This should be set to the maximum current rating of the device. The conversion process needed to create the SIMPLIS model is often able to look up this value in a database. If not you will be prompted to enter a suitable value
BJTs	Model level This may be set to 1 or 2. 1 runs faster while 2 provides more accurate results. See diagrams below for model structures used.
	Max. Collector Current Set to specified maximum collector current for device
MOSFETs	Peak Operating current This should be set to the peak operating current expected during circuit operation. The parameter extraction process will work out a suitable value which is often satisfactory
	Model level Values are '0001', '0011', '1032'. '0001' is the simplest and fastest while '1032' provides the greatest detail and is the slowest
Zener Diodes	Maximum Power Set this to the maximum rated power for the device. The conversion process needed to create the SIMPLIS model is often able to look up this value in a database. If not you will be prompted to enter a suitable value

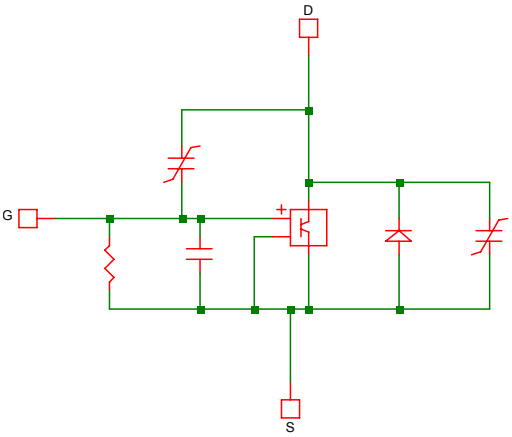
SIMPLIS Models



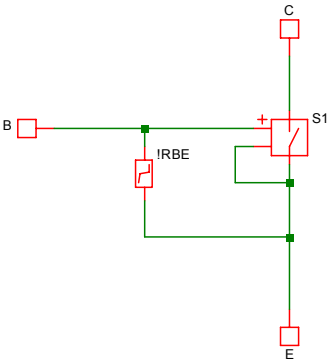
LEVEL 0001 MOSFET



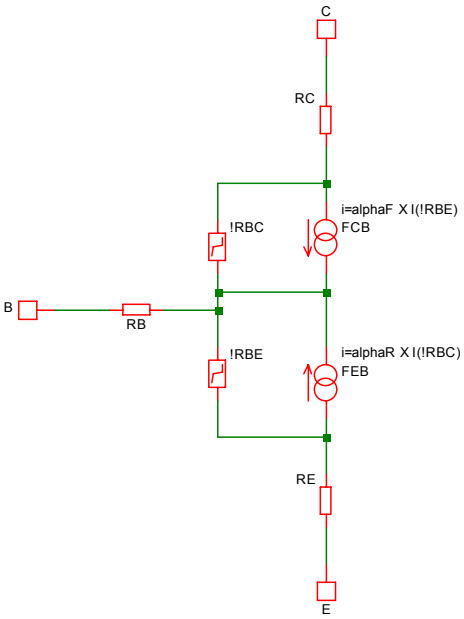
LEVEL 0011 MOSFET



LEVEL 1032 MOSFET



LEVEL 1 BJT Model



LEVEL 2 BJT Model

Generic Components

As explained in the overview generic components are devices that are defined by one or more parameters entered by the user after the component is placed. The following generic components are available:

Device	SIMPLIS support?	Page
Saturable Inductors and Transformer	No	129
Ideal Transformer	Yes	131
Inductor	Yes	133
Capacitor	Yes	133
Resistor	Yes	133
Potentiometer	Yes	134
Transmission Line (Lossless)	No	135
Transmission Line (Lossy)	No	135

Device	SIMPLIS support?	Page
Voltage source	Yes	135
Current source	Yes	135
Voltage controlled voltage source	Yes	136
Voltage controlled current source	Yes	136
Current controlled voltage source	Yes	136
Current controlled current source	Yes	136
Voltage controlled switch	No	136
Voltage controlled switch with Hysteresis	Yes	137

Device	Page
Non-linear transfer function	139
Laplace transfer function	141
Non-linear resistor	142
Non-linear capacitor	142
Non-linear inductor	142
Analog-Digital converter	137
Digital-Analog converter	137
Digital counter	138
Digital shift register	138
NAND/NOR/OR/AND gates	138
Digital bus register	138

SIMPLIS Primitive Components

The following components are only available with the SIMetrix/SIMPLIS product and when in SIMPLIS. They can all be found under the menu Place|SIMPLIS Primitives. For full details, see the *SIMPLIS Reference Manual*.

Device
Comparator
Set-reset flip-flop
Set-reset flip-flop clocked
J-K flip-flop
D-type flip-flop
Toggle flip-flop
Latch
Simple switch - voltage controlled
Simple switch - current controlled
Transistor switch - voltage controlled
Transistor switch - current controlled
VPWL Resistor
IPWL Resistor
PWL Capacitor
PWL Inductor

Saturable Inductors and Transformers

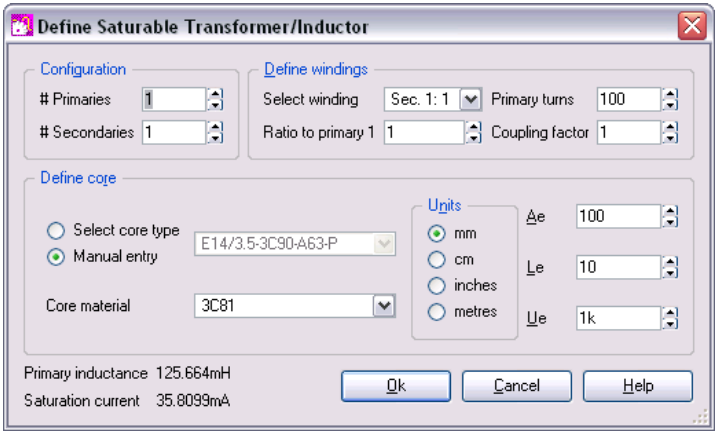
SIMetrix is supplied with a number of models for inductors and transformers that correctly model saturation and, for most models, hysteresis. As these components are nearly always custom designed there is no catalog of manufacturers parts as there is with semiconductor devices. Consequently a little more information is needed to specify one of these devices. This section describes the facilities available and a description of the models available.

Core Materials

The available models cover a range of ferrite and MPP core materials for inductors and transformers with any number of windings. The complete simulation model based on a library core model is generated by the user interface according to the winding specification entered.

Placing and Specifying Components

1. Select the menu Place|Magnetics|Saturable Transformer/Inductor... You will see the following dialog box:



2. Specify the number of windings required for primary and secondary in the Configuration section. If you just want a single inductor, set primary turns to 1 and secondaries to 0.
3. Specify turns ratios in the Define Windings section. You can select the winding to define using the Select Winding drop down box then enter the required ratio to primary 1 in the edit box below it.
4. Specify the number of turns for the primary and coupling factor. The coupling factor is the same for all windings. You can define different coupling factors for each winding by adding ideal inductors in series with one or more windings. In some instances it may be necessary to add coupled inductors in series. This is explained in more detail in "Coupling Factor" on page 132
5. Specify the core characteristics in the Define Core section. A number of standard core sets are pre-programmed and can be selected from the Select Core Type list at the top. If the part you wish to use is not in the list or if you wish to use a variant with a - say - different air gap, you can manually enter the characteristics by clicking on the Manual Entry check box.

The values you need to enter are

Ae	Effective Area
Le	Effective Length
Ue	Relative Permeability
Core Material	

Model Details

The models for saturable components can be found in the file cores.lb. Most of the models are based on the Jiles-Atherton magnetic model which includes hysteresis effects. The MPP models use a simpler model which does not include hysteresis. These models only define a single inductor. To derive a transformer model, the user interface

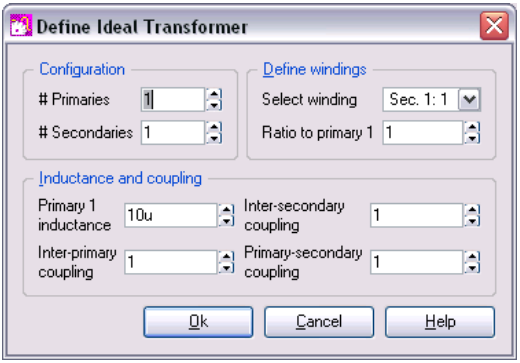
generates a subcircuit model that constructs a non-magnetic transformer using controlled sources. The inductive element is added to the core which then gives the model its inductive characteristics.

The model does not currently handle other core characteristics such as eddy current losses nor does it handle winding artefacts such as resistive losses, skin effect, inter-winding capacitance or proximity effect.

Ideal Transformers

Ideal transformers may be used in both SIMetrix and SIMPLIS modes. Note that SIMPLIS operation is more efficient if the coupling factors are set to unity.

To define an ideal transformer, select the menu Place|Passives|Ideal Transformer.... This will open the following dialog box:



Configuration

Specify the number of primaries and secondaries. You can specify up to ten of each.

Define turns ratio

Select Winding	Lists all windings except primary 1.
Ratio to Primary 1	Enter the turns ratio with respect ratio primary 1.

Inductance and coupling

Primary 1 Inductance	Self-explanatory
Inter-primary coupling	Coupling factor between primaries.
Inter secondary coupling	Coupling factor between secondaries
Primary-secondary coupling	Coupling factor from each primary to each secondary

This method of implementing an ideal transformer is not totally general purpose as you cannot arbitrarily define inter winding coupling factors. If you need a configuration not supported by the above method, you can define any ideal transformer using ideal inductors and the Mutual Inductance device. The SIMetrix version is explained in the next section. For the SIMPLIS equivalent, see the SIMPLIS reference manual.

Coupling Factor

The standard user interface for both saturable and ideal transformers provide only limited flexibility to specify inter-winding coupling factor. In the majority of applications, coupling factor is not an important issue and so the standard model will suffice.

In some applications, however, the relative coupling factors of different windings can be important. An example is in a flyback switcher where the output voltage is sensed by an auxiliary winding. In this instance, best performance is achieved if the sense winding is strongly coupled to the secondary. Such a transformer is likely to have a different coupling factor for the various windings.

You can use external leakage inductances to model coupling factor and this will provide some additional flexibility. One approach is to set the user interface coupling factor to unity and model all non-ideal coupling using external inductors. In some cases it may be necessary to couple the leakage inductors. Consider for example an E-core with 4 windings, one on each outer leg and two on the inner leg. Each winding taken on its own would have approximately the same coupling to the core and so each would have the same leakage inductance. But the two windings on the centre leg would be more closely coupled to each other than to the other windings. To model this, the leakage inductances for the centre windings could be coupled to each other using the mutual inductor method described in the next section.

Mutual Inductors

You can specify coupling between any number of ideal inductors, using the mutual inductor device. There is no menu or schematic symbol for this. It is defined by a line of text that must be added to the netlist. (See "Manual Entry of Simulator Commands" on page 64). The format for the mutual inductance line is:

Kxxxx *inductor_1 inductor_2 coupling_factor*

Where:

inductor_1	Component reference of the first inductor to be coupled
inductor_2	Component reference of the second inductor to be coupled
coupling_factor	Value between 0 and 1 which defines strength of coupling.

Note

If more than 2 inductors are to be coupled, there must be a K device to define every possible pair.

Examples

```
** Couple L1 and L2 together
K12 L1 L2 0.98
```

```
** Couple L1, L2 and L3
K12 L1 L2 0.98
K23 L2 L3 0.98
K13 L1 L3 0.98
```

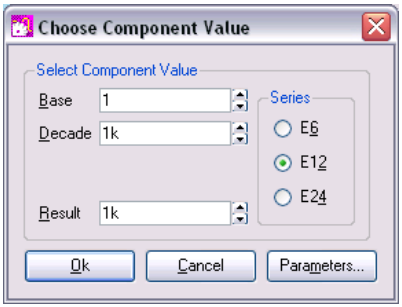
Resistors, Capacitors and Inductors

Resistors

Resistors may be used in both SIMetrix and SIMPLIS modes. Note that in SIMetrix mode a number of additional parameters may be specified. These will not work with SIMPLIS and must not be specified if dual mode operation is required.

Select from Place|Passives menu.

To edit value use F7 or select popup menu Edit Part... menu as usual. This will display the following dialog for resistors.



You can enter the value directly in the Result box or use the Base and Decade up/down controls.

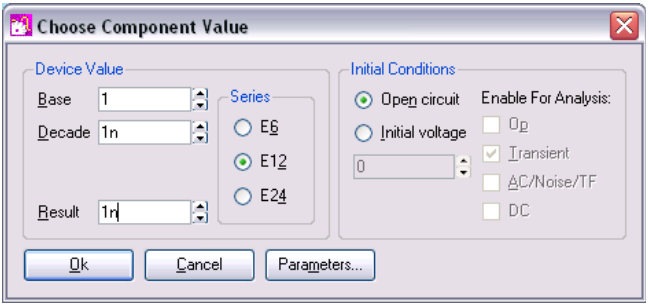
Additional Parameters

Press Parameters... button to edit additional parameter associated with the device such as temperature coefficients (TC1, TC2). Refer to device in the *Simulator Reference Manual* for details of all device parameters.

Capacitors and Inductors

Capacitors and inductors may be used in both SIMetrix and SIMPLIS modes. Note that in SIMetrix mode a number of additional parameters may be specified. These will not work with SIMPLIS and must not be specified if dual mode operation is required.

The following dialog will be displayed when you edit a capacitor or inductor:



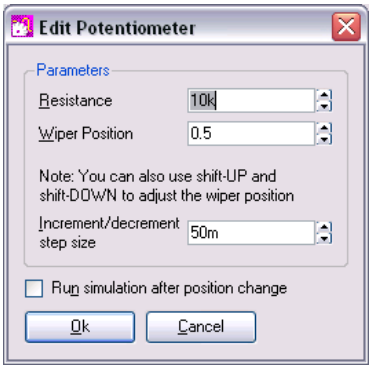
The device value is edited in the same manner as for resistors. You can also supply an initial condition which defines how the device behaves while a DC operating point is calculated. For capacitors you can either specify that the device is open circuit or alternatively you can specify a fixed voltage. For inductors, the device can be treated as a short circuit or you can define a constant current.

Important note to experienced SPICE users

The initial condition values above do not require the 'UIC (or Skip DC bias point) option to be set. This implementation of initial condition is a new feature not found in standard SPICE. If an initial condition for a capacitor is defined, it will behave like a voltage source during the DC operating point calculation. Similarly an inductor will behave like a current source if it has an initial condition defined.

Potentiometer

The potentiometer may be used in both SIMetrix and SIMPLIS modes. To place, select the menu Place|Passives|Potentiometer. This device can be edited in the usual manner with F7/Edit Part... popup. This will display:



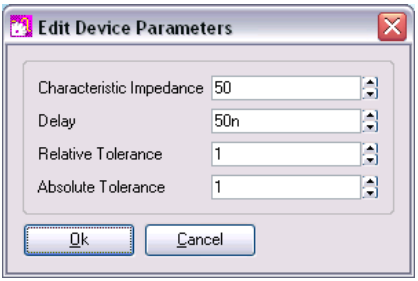
Enter Resistance and Wiper position as required.

Check Run simulation after position change if you wish a new simulation to be run immediately after the wiper position changes.

The potentiometer's wiper position may also be altered using the shift-up and shift-down keys while the device is selected. Edit Inc/dec step size to alter the step size used for this feature.

Lossless Transmission Line

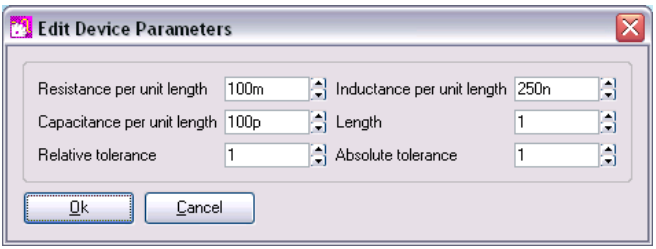
Select from menu Place|Passives|Trans. Line (Lossless) or press hot key ‘T’. Editing in the usual way will display:



Enter the Characteristic Impedance (Z0) and Delay as indicated.

Lossy Transmission Line

Select from menu Place|Passives|Trans. Line (Lossy RLC). Editing in the usual way will display:



Lossy lines must be defined in terms of their per unit length impedance characteristics. Currently only series losses are supported.

Enter parameters as indicated. The absolute tolerance and relative tolerance parameters control the accuracy/speed trade-off for the model. Reduce these values for greater accuracy.

Fixed Voltage and Current Sources

See “Circuit Stimulus” on page 55.

Controlled Sources

There are four types which can be found under menu Place|Sources:

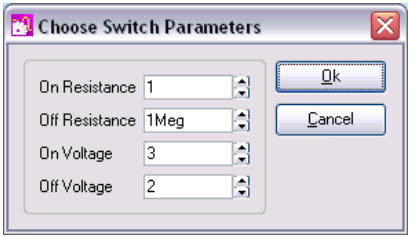
Voltage controlled voltage source or VCVS
Voltage controlled current source or VCCS
Current controlled voltage source or CCVS
Current controlled current source or CCCS

These have a variety of uses. A VCVS can implement an ideal opamp; current controlled devices can monitor current; voltage controlled devices can convert a differential signal to single ended.

They require just one value to define them which is their gain. Edit value in the usual way and you will be presented with a dialog similar to that used for resistors, capacitors and inductors but without the Parameters... button.

Voltage Controlled Switch

This is essentially a voltage controlled resistor with two terminals for the resistance and two control terminals. Place one on the schematic with Place|Analog Functions|Switch. Editing using F7 or equivalent menu displays:



If On Voltage > Off Voltage
    If control voltage > On Voltage
        Resistance = On Resistance
    else if control voltage < Off Voltage
        Resistance = Off Resistance

If Off Voltage > On Voltage
    If control voltage > Off Voltage
        Resistance = Off Resistance
    else if control voltage < On Voltage
        Resistance = On Resistance

If the control voltage lies between the On Voltage and Off Voltage the resistance will be somewhere between the on and off resistances using a law that assures a smooth transition between the on and off states.

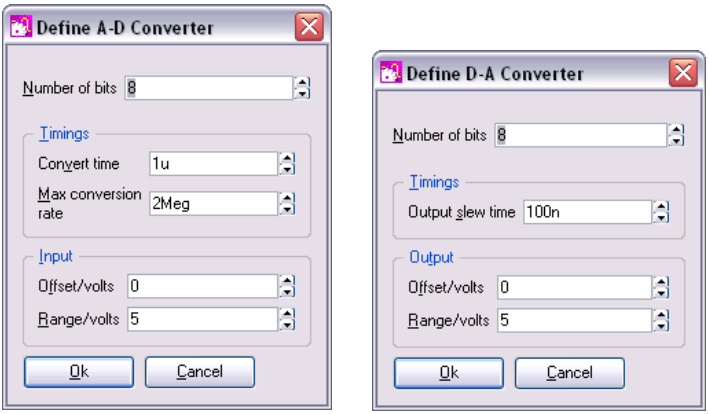
Switch with Hysteresis

An alternative switch device is available which abruptly switches between states rather than following a continuous V-I characteristic. This device can be used with both SIMetrix and SIMPLIS although the behaviour is slightly different in each. The switching thresholds are governed by an hysteresis law and, when used with the SIMetrix simulator, the state change is controlled to occur over a fixed time period (currently 10nS).

This device can be placed on a schematic with the menu Place|Analog Functions|Switch with Hysteresis.

Generic ADCs and DACs

Generic data conversion devices are available from the menus Place|Digital Generic|ADC... and Place|Digital Generic|DAC...



These devices are implemented using the simulator's ADC and DAC models. For details of these refer to the chapter “Digital/Mixed Signal Device Reference” in the *Simulator Reference Manual*.

The controls in these boxes are explained below.

Number of bits

Resolution of converter. Values from 1 to32

Convert time (ADC)

Time from start convert active (rising edge) to data becoming available

Max conversion rate (ADC)

Max frequency of start convert. Period (1/f) must be less than or equal to convert time.

Output slew time

Whenever the input code changes, the output is set on a trajectory to reach the target value in the time specified by this value.

Offset voltage

Self-explanatory

Range

Full scale range in volts

Generic Digital Devices

A number of generic digital devices are provided on the Place|Digital Generic menu. Each will automatically create a symbol using a basic spec. provided by your entries to a dialog box. Functions provided are, counter, shift register, AND, OR, NAND and NOR gates, and bus register.

Functional Blocks - Overview

The simulator supports a number of devices that are arbitrary in nature and which are used to define a device in terms of its function or behaviour. Functional blocks have a number of uses. Here are two examples:

1. System level simulation. You are investigating the viability or characteristics of a complete system before actually considering its implementation detail. Your system may consist of a number of interconnected blocks each with an easily defined function.
2. Device model implementation. Functional models can be used to actually create device models. Suppose you wish to use an op-amp for which no model is available. The only characteristic that affects the performance of your circuit is its gain bandwidth product. So instead of creating a detailed model you simply use a differential voltage amplifier with the appropriate GBW.

SIMetrix provides functional modelling at both the schematic and simulator levels. The schematic provides a convenient user interface to the functional devices provided by the simulator.

The simulator provides three devices that can be defined in a completely arbitrary manner. These are defined in the following table. See the *Simulator Reference Manual* for full details on these devices.

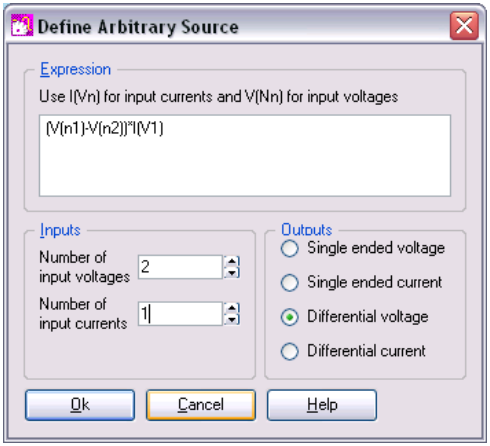
Device	Description
Arbitrary non-linear source or ‘B’ device	Analog non-linear device. Can express single voltage or current in terms of any number of circuit voltages and currents including its own output.
S-domain Transfer Function Block	Linear block with single input and output each of which may be single ended or differential, voltage or current. Specified in terms of its S-domain or Laplace transfer function.
Arbitrary Logic Block	Digital device. Implements any digital device, combinational, synchronous or asynchronous using a descriptive language.

Schematic support for functional blocks is provided by a number of devices under the menus Place|Analog Behavioural, Place|Digital Generic. Devices currently provided are shown in the following table.

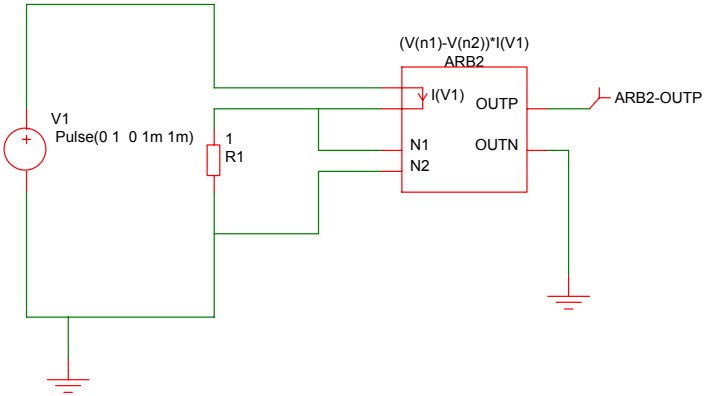
Device	Description
Non-linear Transfer Function	Based on the arbitrary non-linear source. This will create a schematic symbol with your specified inputs and outputs. You enter the equation to relate them.
Laplace Transfer Function	Based on the S-domain transfer function block. This will create a schematic symbol with specified input and output. You enter an s-domain transfer function.

Non-linear Transfer Function

Select menu Place|Analog Behavioural|Non-linear Transfer Function. This displays:



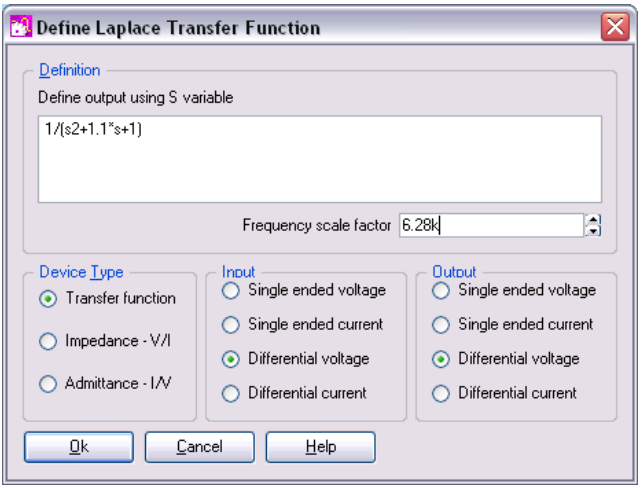
Specify the number of input voltages and currents you require. All voltage inputs are single-ended and all input currents are differential. In the expression box, you must specify an equation relating the output to the inputs. In the equation, currents are referred to by the label 'I(V*n*)' where *n* identifies the actual current input. 1 is the first (top most on the symbol), 2 is the second and so on. Voltages are referred to by the label 'V(N*n*)'. Again *n* identifies the actual voltage input in the same manner as for current. In the example above, the expression shown - (V(n1)-V(n2))*I(V1) - multiplies a voltage and current together. This could be used to monitor the power in a two terminal device as shown in the following schematic.:



In the above, ARB2 is the device created from the Non-linear Transfer Function menu. ARB2-OUTP will carry a voltage equal to the power dissipation in R1.

Laplace Transfer Function

Selecting the menu Place|Analog Behavioural|Laplace Transfer Function brings up the following dialog



The operation of the various controls is described below.

Definition

Enter an expression using the 'S' variable to define the frequency domain transfer function. The above shows the example of a second order response. See "Laplace Expression" below for details of the expression syntax.

Frequency scale factor

Multiplier for frequency

Device type

Transfer function	Expression defines output/input
Impedance V/I	Two terminal device, expression defines voltage/current
Admittance I/V	Two terminal device, expression defines current/voltage

Input

Input configuration for transfer function

Output

Output configuration for transfer function

Laplace Expression

When you close the box, a symbol will be created according to the selections you make for device type, input and output.

As seen in the above examples, the transfer function of the device is defined by the model parameter LAPLACE. This is a text string and must be enclosed in double quotation marks. This may be any arithmetic expression containing the following elements:

Operators

+ - * / ^

^ means raise to power. Only integral powers may be specified.

Constants

Any decimal number following normal rules. SPICE style engineering suffixes are accepted.

S Variable

This can be raised to a power with '^' or by simply placing a constant directly after it (with no spaces). E.g. s^2 is the same as s2.

Filter response functions

These are described in the following table:

Function Syntax	Filter Response
BesselLP(*order*, *cut-off*)	Bessel low-pass
BesselHP(*order*, *cut-off)*	Bessel high-pass
ButterworthLP(*order*, *cut-off*)	Butterworth low-pass
ButterworthHP(*order*, *cut-off*)	Butterworth high-pass
ChebyshevLP(*order*, *cut-off*, *passband_ripple*)	Chebyshev low-pass
ChebyshevHP(*order*, *cut-off, passband_ripple*)	Chebyshev high-pass

Where:

order	Integer specifying order of filter. There is no maximum limit but in practice orders larger than about 50 tend to give accuracy problems.
cut-off	-3dB Frequency in Hertz
passband_ripple	Chebyshev only. Passband ripple spec. in dB

Arbitrary Non-linear Passive Devices

Each of these will place a component which looks exactly like its linear counterpart. The difference is that when you try and edit its value with F7 or menu Edit Part... you will be prompted to enter an expression. In the case of the resistor and capacitor, this

relates its value to the applied voltage and for inductor the expression relates its inductance to its current. For resistors and capacitors, the terminal voltage is referred in the equation as ‘V(N1)’ and for inductors the device's current is referred to as ‘I(V1)’.

Creating Models

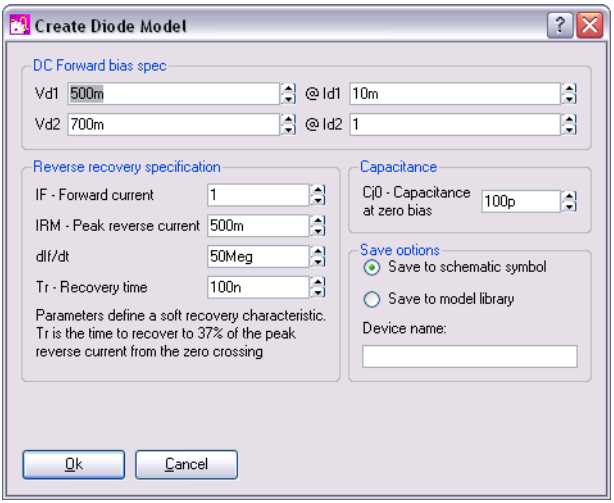
Overview

SIMetrix version 5.1 introduced a new soft recovery diode model for use in power electronics circuits. As this model is not a SPICE standard, there are no models available from device manufacturers or other sources. So, we therefore also developed a soft recovery diode “parameter extractor” that allows the creation of soft recovery diode models from data sheet values.

The parameter extraction tool works directly within the schematic environment and may be used in a similar manner to other parameterised devices such as the parameterised opamp. However, there is also an option to save a particular model to the device library and so making it available as a standard part.

Creating Soft Recovery Diode Models

1. Select menu Place|Create Model|Soft Recovery Diode... . You will see this dialog box:


Create Diode Model
DC Forward bias spec
Vd1 500m
@ Id1 10m
Vd2 700m
@ Id2 1
Reverse recovery specification
IF - Forward current 1
IRM - Peak reverse current 500m
dIf/dt 50Meg
Tr - Recovery time 100n
Parameters define a soft recovery characteristic. Tr is the time to recover to 37% of the peak reverse current from the zero crossing
Capacitance
Cj0 - Capacitance at zero bias 100p
Save options
Save to schematic symbol
Save to model library
Device name:
Ok
Cancel

2. Enter the required specification in the DC Forward bias spec, Reverse recovery specification and Capacitance sections. See below for technical details of these specifications.
3. Select Save to schematic symbol if you wish to store the specification and model parameters on the schematic symbol. This will allow to you to modify the

specification later. If you select Save to model library, then the definition will be written to a library file and installed in the parts library. This will make the new model available as a standard part, but you will not be able to subsequently modify it other than by reentering the specification manually. If you choose this option, you must specify a device name in the box below.

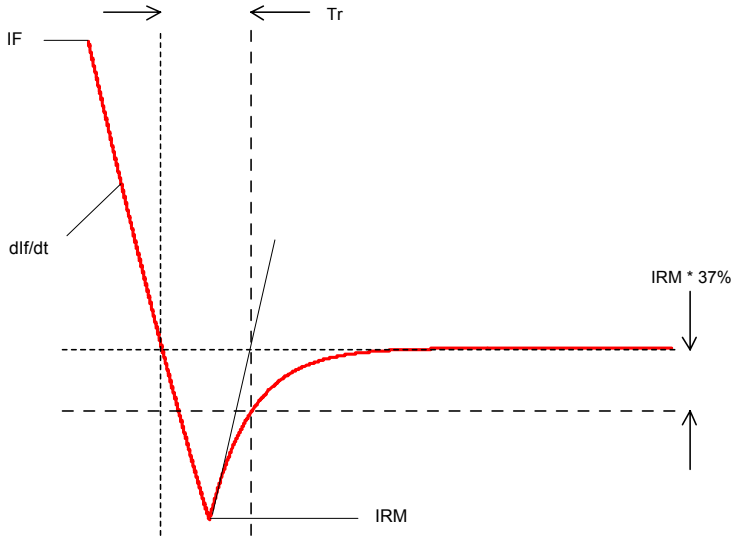
4. Press Ok to place diode on the schematic. If you selected Save to model library, the model file for the device will also be created at this point. The file will be saved in your user models directory. On windows this is located at "My Documents\SIMetrix\Models" and on Linux it is at $HOME/simetrix/Models.

Soft Recovery Diode Specification

The parameter extractor allows the specification of three important characteristics of the diode. These are the DC forward bias voltage, reverse recovery and capacitance. Currently, reverse leakage and breakdown characteristics are not modelled.

To specify the forward bias characteristics, simply enter the coordinates of two points on the graph showing forward drop versus diode current which is found in most data sheets. You should choose values at the extremes. The low current value will essentially determine the value of the IS parameter while the high current value defines the series resistance of the device.

The reverse recovery characteristics are explained in the following diagram.



The values quoted in data sheets vary between manufacturers. The value given for Tr is sometimes taken from the reverse peak rather than the zero crossing. If this is the case you can calculate the time from the zero crossing to the reverse peak using the values for IRM and dIf/dt and so arrive at the value of Tr as shown above.

Some data sheets do not give the value of IRM. In these cases the best that can be done is to enter an intelligent guess.

Capacitance is the measured value at zero bias. Unfortunately this is not always quoted in data sheets in which case you can either enter zero (which may speed simulation times) or enter an estimated value. Of course an alternative would be to measure the capacitance of an actual device.

Notes of Soft Recovery Diode Model

The soft recovery diode does not use the standard SPICE model but a new model based on work at the University of Washington. Full details of the model can be found in the *Simulator Reference Manual*.

Subcircuits

Overview

Subcircuits are a method of defining a circuit block which can be referenced any number of times by a single netlist line or schematic device. Subcircuits are the method used to define many device models such as op-amps. It is also the underlying mechanism of the hierarchical schematic entry system.

You don't need to know anything about subcircuits unless you wish to define you own device models, perhaps to build up a library of tested blocks for general distribution. If you just wish to enter your circuit in a modular manner, hierarchical schematic entry is probably the more appropriate method. See “Hierarchical Schematic Entry” on page 78 for details.

This section explains how to create a subcircuit from a schematic and how to reference one in netlist or schematic. For the .SUBCKT control syntax see the “Command Reference” chapter of the *Simulator Reference Manual*.

Creating a Sub-circuit from a Schematic

Subcircuits must be defined in text form as a netlist. However the schematic editor can be used to generate the netlist. To create a sub-circuit from a schematic, you need to identify which nodes are to be connected externally. This is done using the same Module Port symbol used for hierarchical schematic entry (see “Hierarchical Schematic Entry” on page 78)

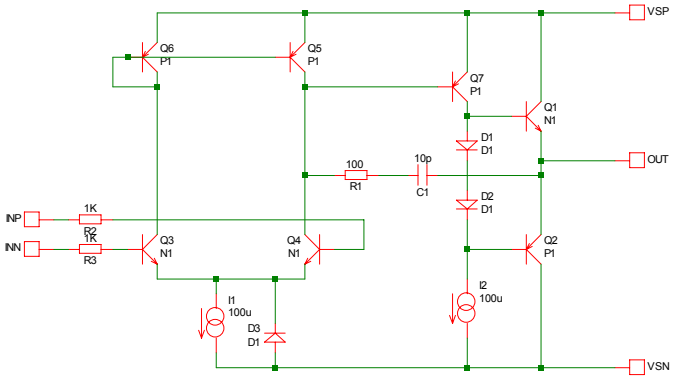
The procedure for defining a subcircuit is as follows:

1. Draw circuit using schematic editor including module port symbols to identify external connections.
2. Create netlist for circuit.

To describe the procedure, we will use an example.

Stage 1 - Draw Schematic

This is circuit of a simple op-amp. In fact it is the circuit of our fictitious SXOA1000 op-amp used in Tutorial 3 (See page 48)



The five terminal symbols, e.g.

are the connections to the outside world. This is a module port symbol which can be found in the schematic menu Hierarchy|Place Module Port. *Important* - do not use the normal Terminal symbol.

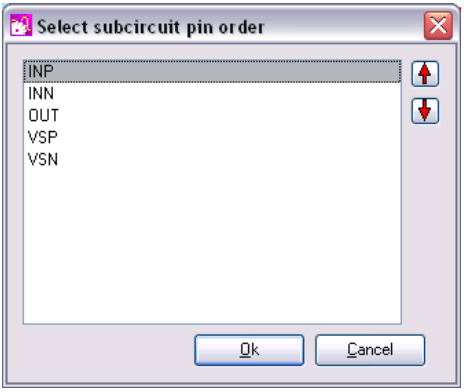
It is recommended that any model definitions are included in the subcircuit definition. This makes the subcircuit self-contained. If you have referenced models in the device library, you can import them into the schematic automatically using the schematic menu Simulator|Import Models... They will be placed in the simulator command window which can be opened by pressing F11. Alternatively you can enter them in the command window manually.

Stage 2 - Netlist Circuit

To create a subcircuit netlist, select schematic menu Simulator|Create Netlist as Subcircuit... .

You will be first be prompted for a subcircuit name. This name will also be used for the file name with extension .MOD.

After entering the name, you will be asked to specify the subcircuit pin order:



When you close this box, the subcircuit will be created and its text will be displayed.

Calling a Sub-circuit in a Schematic

To call a sub-circuit in a schematic, you must choose or create a symbol for it. The symbol *must* have the same number of pins and, ideally, it would also have the same pin order. In other words, the order of the nodes in the .SUBCKT line would be the same as the pin order of the symbol. The matching of .SUBCKT node order and symbol pin order is not absolutely essential, but it makes things much easier. If they are not the same there is method of overcoming the problem using the *mapping* property. This is explained in the section "Properties" on page 100.

Creating symbols for the schematic is covered in "Creating Schematic Symbols - Overview" on page 86. The symbol must have the following properties (see page 100)

Property name	Property value	Purpose
Model	X	Ensures netlist line starts with X. Identifies component as a subcircuit. Should be *hidden* and *protected*
Value	subcircuit_name	Name used to reference subcircuit definition. Can be changed by user after placing on schematic.
Ref	component_reference	E.g. U?. Automatically allocated when placing symbol on schematic.

Most symbols possess these properties anyway, the important fact is that the *model* property must be set to X. When defining a symbol from scratch, these properties can be defined in one go in the graphical symbol editor with Property/Pin|Add Standard Properties... .

To use the sub-circuit definition, SIMetrix must be able to find it. There are various places where it can be put and means of telling SIMetrix of the location. These are the choices.

1. Place the definition directly in the simulator command - or F11 - window (see "Manual Entry of Simulator Commands" on page 64). If placed at that location, it will be read in unconditionally and SIMetrix will not need to search for it.
2. Put in a separate file and pull in to the schematic with .INC control (see *Simulator Reference Manual*) placed in simulator command (F11) window. As 1., this will be read in unconditionally.
3. Put in a library file and reference in schematic with .LIB control (see *Simulator Reference Manual*) placed in simulator command (F11) window. Similar to 2. but more efficient if library has many models not used in the schematic. Only the devices required will be read in.
4. Put in a library file and install it using the procedure described in "Drag and Drop Model Installation" on page 154. This will make the device globally available to all schematics. You can also install it into the parts browser system. These topics are covered in "Device Library and Parts Management" on page 153 and are also the subject of Tutorial 3.

To place the device on the schematic, find the symbol in schematic popup All Symbols... and place in the normal way. After it is placed, select the device and press *shift*-F7 and enter the subcircuit's name.

If you installed the device into the parts browser system, as mentioned in choice 4 above, you will be able to place the device by pressing control-G and selecting the device from the appropriate category. The parts browser system also provides a simple to use means of overcoming the problem mentioned above that occurs if the symbol's pin order does not match the subcircuit's node order. This is explained "Associating Models with Symbols" on page 156.

Passing Parameters

You can pass parameters to a subcircuit. This subject is covered in detail in the *Simulator Reference Manual*. To specify the parameters for a sub-circuit device in a schematic, you must enter the values manually using *shift*-F7 and placing a ':' between the sub-circuit name and the parameter list. E.g. suppose you wished to specify the parameters: 'FREQ=12k Q=15'. To enter these, select the sub-circuit, press shift-F7 and append the sub-circuit name with:

```
: FREQ=12k Q=15
```

Note for information about passing parameters to a hierarchical block, please refer to "Passing Parameters Through a Hierarchy" on page 84

Special Components

Initial Conditions

Initial conditions force a node to a fixed voltage or current during the calculation of the DC bias point. There are two types of initial condition namely *soft* and *hard*. Soft initial conditions apply a voltage through a fixed resistance. Hard initial conditions, apply a voltage directly without any resistance.

To Place a Soft Initial Condition

1. Select menu Place|Connectors|Initial Condition
2. Place device at the desired location then select and press F7. Enter a suitable voltage

To Place a Hard Initial Condition

1. Select menu Place|From Symbol Library
2. Select device Connections→Ics and Nodesets→Initial Condition (Hard)
3. Place device at the desired location then select and press F7. Enter a suitable voltage

Notes

Soft initial conditions are implemented using the .IC control and will also correctly apply an initial condition when Skip DC bias point is specified for a transient analysis. The driving resistance for a soft initial condition is 1Ω by default but can be altered using the ICRES simulator option. To do this, add .OPTIONS ICRES=*nnn* to the F11 window (see "Manual Entry of Simulator Commands" on page 64).

Hard Initial conditions are implemented using a voltage source with the DCOP parameter specified. This feature is proprietary to SIMetrix and is not compatible with other SPICE simulators. Refer to the *Simulator Reference Manual* for more information on voltage sources and the DCOP parameter.

Nodesets

Nodesets are used to help convergence and also to coerce a particular state for circuits that have more than one possible DC solution. More information about nodesets is given in the *Simulator Reference Manual.*

To Place a Nodeset

1. Select menu Place|Connectors|Nodeset
2. Place device at the desired location then select and press F7. Enter a suitable voltage

Keeps

Keeps form part of a system to limit the amount of data that is output during a simulation. For some designs the data output can be too great to fit in the available disk space and in these situation, the data output needs to be restricted. For non-hierachical designs, the default is for all voltages and currents at the top level (i.e. not in a sub-circuit) to be output. For hierarchical designs, data for all signals for the whole circuit are output. To restrict the output you can use the .KEEP control in the F11 window (see "Manual Entry of Simulator Commands" on page 64) to restrict what data is output. E.g.

```
.KEEP /noi /top
```

will result in only top level voltages and digital signals being output.

```
.KEEP /noi /noi /top
```

will prevent all data except digital signals and the reference vector (time, frequency etc) from being output.

With some or all data output inhibited using .KEEP as described above, you can add keep symbols to the schematic to select specific voltages or currents to be saved. For information on the comprehensive features of .KEEP, please refer to the *Simulator Reference Manual*.

To Add a Voltage Keep to a Schematic

1. Select menu Place|From Symbol Library
2. Select device Connections→Keeps→Voltage Keep
3. Place device on desired schematic net.

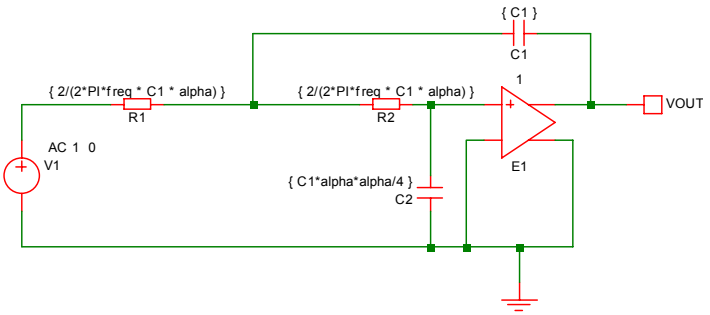
To Add a Current Keep to a Schematic

1. Select menu Place|From Symbol Library
2. Select device Connections→Keeps→Current Keep
3. Place device *directly* on a device pin

Parameters and Expressions

You can specify both device and model parameters using an arithmetic expression containing user defined variables. The variables may be defined using the .PARAM simulator control, which must be placed in the netlist, or globally in a script using the Let command. A variable may also be swept using the parameter sweep mode for the swept analyses and stepped for multi-step analyses. Complete documentation on this subject can be found in the "Simulator Devices" chapter of the *Simulator Reference Manual*. Below are brief details of how to use expressions with a schematic based design. We explain this with an example.

Example



The above circuit is that of a two pole low-pass filter. C1 is fixed and R1=R2. The design equations are:

```
R1=R2=2/(2*pi*f0*C1*alpha)
C2=C1*alpha*alpha/4
```

where freq is the cut off frequency and alpha is the damping factor.

Expressions for device values must be entered enclosed in curly braces ('{' and '}'). To enter expressions for components *you must use shift-F7* not F7 as for normal value editing - and remember the curly braces. shift-F7 provide literal editing of a devices value and bypasses the intelligent system employed by F7 and the Edit Part... menu.

Before running the above circuit you must assign values to the variables. This can be done by one of three methods:

1. With the .PARAM control placed in the netlist.
2. With Let command from the command line or from a script. (If using a script you must prefix the parameter names with ‘global:’)
3. By sweeping the value using the parameter mode of a swept analysis (page 170) or multi-step analysis (page 188).

Expressions for device values must be entered enclosed in curly braces ('{' and '}').

Suppose we wish a 1kHz roll off for the above filter.

Using the .PARAM control, add these lines to the netlist (using the F11 window - see “Manual Entry of Simulator Commands” on page 64)

```
.PARAM f0 1k
.PARAM alpha 1
.PARAM C1 10n
```

Using the Let command, you would type:

```
Let f0=1k
Let alpha=1
Let C1=10n
```

If you then wanted to alter the damping factor to 0.8 you only need to type in its new value:

```
Let alpha=0.8
```

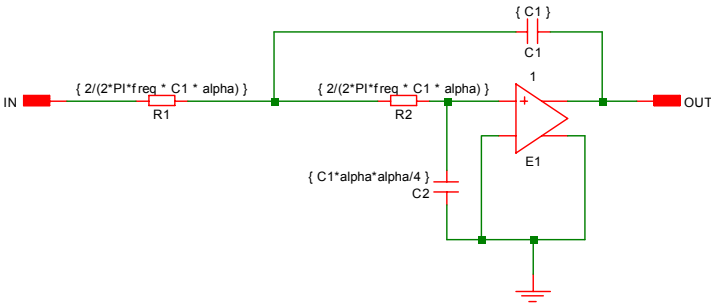
then re-run the simulator.

To execute the Let commands from within a script, prefix the parameter names with 'global:'. E.g. 'Let global:f0=1k'

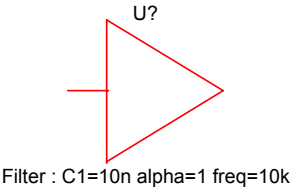
In many cases the .PARAM approach is more convenient as the values can be stored with the schematic.

Example passing parameters to subcircuits

If the filter example above was implemented as a subcircuit, different values of the parameters `freq`, `alpha` and `C1` could be passed to each instance of the subcircuit. This allows several filters with differing roll-off frequencies and damping factors to be quickly drawn.



You can set the values of the parameters for each instance of the above subcircuit by appending the expressions to the value property of the symbol in the main circuit separated by a ':'. E.g.:-



Chapter 6 Device Library and Parts Management

Overview

The electrical characteristics for semiconductor devices such as transistors and for more complex devices such as operational amplifiers are not built in to the simulator program but are defined in separate library files. These are text files containing .MODEL and .SUBCKT controls. Some libraries have been supplied with SIMetrix but you can obtain others from device manufacturers (usually at no cost) and other model vendors. You can also create them yourself using a text editor.

Many vendor libraries may be downloaded from the Internet. Our World Wide Web site carries a page with links to vendor sites. URL is

http://www.catena.uk.com/site/support/models.html

This section explains how to use, install and manage parts libraries.

Important: The library and parts management systems described in this chapter work with discrete devices defined using subcircuits and .MODEL statements. It currently does not support process corner selection and process binning used by many models supplied by integrated circuit process foundries. See “Using Schematic Editor for CMOS IC Design” on page 116 for details on how to handle such libraries.

Using Parts Browser

The parts browser provides a convenient method of selecting a component. Parts are arranged in categories to allow for rapid searching.

To open parts browser select schematic menu Place|From Model Library. All devices for which models have been installed will be displayed and listed under an appropriate category.

If you can't find a device under the expected category, select the ‘* All Devices *’ category. Every single device currently installed will be displayed here. (Note for large libraries you may have to wait a second or two to see the list of devices when selecting this category).

Some devices may not be listed under a known category and will be found under category ‘*** Unknown ***’. These are parts for which a model was found in the library but for which no other information is known. If you select and attempt to place an unknown device, you will be presented with the Associate Model dialog box explained on page “Associating Models with Symbols” on page 156. This allows you to categorise the component and - more importantly - associate a schematic symbol for it.

Note for SPICE Users

Note that you do not need to think about whether a device is implemented as a subcircuit or a primitive - SIMetrix will sort this out automatically. E.g. some RF BJTs are implemented as subcircuits ('X' devices) but most BJTs are primitives defined with

a .MODEL control ('Q' devices). This is handled automatically by the parts browser which will assign the appropriate property to the part when it is placed.

Parts Management - Installing Models

Overview

The process of installing third party SPICE models has always been a fundamentally tricky one.

The difficulty has been associating the SPICE model - which is the electrical definition of the device - with the schematic symbol - which is the pictorial representation of it. The SPICE model - depending on how it is defined - does not always contain enough information for the program to work out for itself what type of device it is e.g. Op-amp, MOSFET, regulator etc. The onus therefore falls on you, the user, to provide this information.

SIMetrix is supplied with a database of known part numbers which provides the information it needs for many devices. When a SPICE model is installed it will look it up in the database and if found, will be able to perform the association automatically.

If SIMetrix cannot determine what the device is then, in order to use the device on a schematic, you will need to provide the association information. This is done using the Associate Models and Symbols dialog box.

Procedure

There are two stages to installing SPICE models.

1. Install the model itself so that the program knows where to look for it. This is simply a matter of dropping files or folders on the command shell. See "Drag and Drop Model Installation" on page 154 below.
2. Associate the model(s) with a schematic symbol. See page 156 for details.

You don't always need to perform step 2 as in many cases the program is able to do this automatically. See overview above.

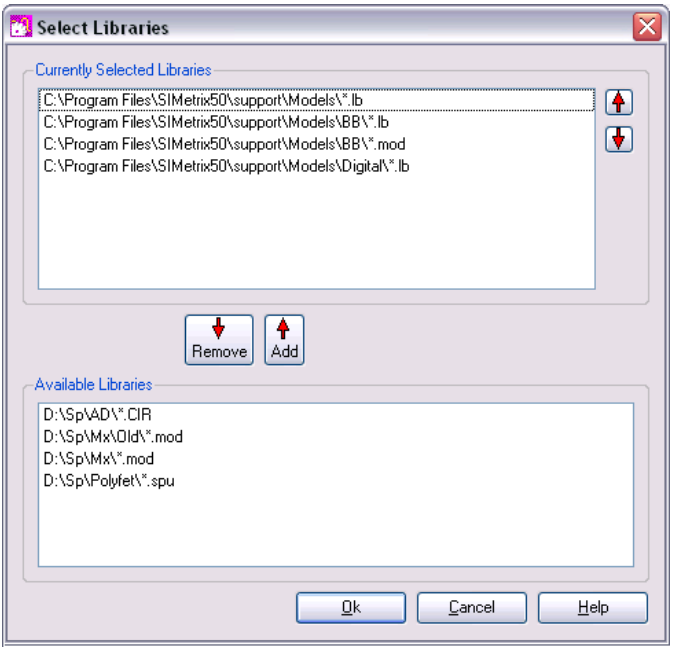
You can easily find out whether you need to associate a model by attempting to place it on to a schematic using the parts browser. (Select menu Place|From Model Library). If the part needs to be associated, you will find it in the '*** Unknown ***' category. If you now try to place it the "Associating Models with Symbols" dialog will be displayed. See page 156.

Drag and Drop Model Installation

You can install model files or folder containing files by picking them up in windows explorer and dropping them into the command shell. In most situations that is all you need to know. The following, however, explains the procedure in detail.

1. Open windows explorer and find the file, files or folder containing the device models.

2. Select the items you wish to install. You can install multiple files at once - hold the control key down to select multiple items. You can also install an entire folder or multiple folders. You only thing you can't do is install files and folders at the same time.
3. Make sure that the SIMetrix command shell is visible. If it is obscured, you can bring it to the surface by pressing the spacebar with a schematic or graph selected.
4. Pick up the items in windows explorer and drop them into the message window of the command shell.
5. If you installed individual files, you will see a message box asking you to confirm that you wish to continue. Just click OK. The model files are now installed.
6. If you drop folders a search will be made in those folders for SPICE models. The Add/Remove Models dialog will then be displayed as shown below:



Select the items you wish to install in the lower box and transfer them to the upper box by pressing the **Add** button. You can also change the order of the items in the upper box. This affects the search order when a simulation is run.

Note

If the message

```
Unknown file type xxx
```

is displayed when you drop a file, it means that no valid SPICE models were found in the file. It does not mean the file has the wrong extension. SIMetrix will accept any extension for model files with the exception of the extensions used for schematic or graph files (sch, sxsch and sxgph).

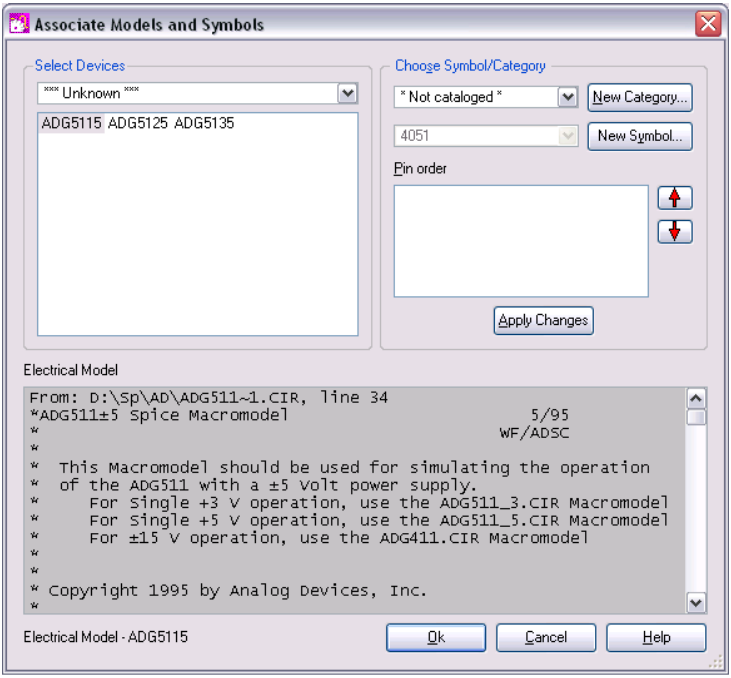
Removing Model Libraries

Select Model Library|Remove Libraries... . A dialog box similar to that shown above will be displayed but with the Available Libraries box empty. Select the devices you wish to remove from the Selected Libraries box.

Associating Models with Symbols

As explained above in "Drag and Drop Model Installation" SIMetrix allows you to install models by dropping them into the command shell. A model provides an electrical description of the device but not what schematic symbol to use nor what category it should be in the parts browser. SIMetrix is able to determine this for itself if the device is implemented using a .MODEL control as all .MODELs refer to a particular type of device (NPN, NMOS, Diode etc.). Devices implemented as subcircuits however remain a problem as there is nothing in a .SUBCKT definition which tells SIMetrix what the device is. For example a three terminal regulator and a power MOSFET use identical syntax - SIMetrix can't tell the difference. To resolve this SIMetrix is shipped with a database of known part numbers providing a named schematic symbol, component category and if relevant a pin mapping order. If the part is in the database, no further action is required by the user and the part will appear in the browser under the correct category and select the correct symbol. If the part is not in the database, you can provide the appropriate information using the Associate Symbols dialog box.

The Associate Symbols dialog box is automatically invoked if you select an unknown part from the parts browser but can also be opened with the command shell menu File|Model Library|Associate Models and Symbols. When you do this something like the following dialog appears.



Associate Model dialog box

Although this dialog box looks complicated, using it is quite simple.

In the top left hand group you select the device or devices that you wish to associate. The drop-down box at the top has a list of categories. Usually you would select a device or devices in the '*** Unknown ***' category but you can also edit the association of known devices in other categories.

Once the category has been selected, a list of devices in that category will be displayed in the list box below. You should then select a device or devices to associate. To select multiple devices hold the control key down while selecting. Note that you will not be allowed to select multiple devices that have different numbers of pins. To help you determine what type of device it is, its electrical model is displayed in the window that covers most of the lower half of the dialog box. In the example above the component is an N-channel MOSFET. You must now define the Category, symbol and, if necessary, the pin order for the device. This is done using the top right hand group of controls titled Choose Symbol/Category. Select an appropriate category and symbol. Note that only compatible symbols that have the same number of pins as the selected device will be shown. If an appropriate symbol is not available, you can define one by selecting New Symbol .... This will open the symbol generator described on page 86. You may prefer to use the graphical editor in which case you must define the symbol first.

The next list box allows the pin order to be changed. Most devices such as opamps and MOSFETs use a de-facto standard pin order and you probably won't need to change the

default. Usually you can check the pin order from the Electrical Model display at the bottom of the dialog box. Many subcircuit definitions are preceded by text which identifies each connection to the sub circuit. *This must correspond exactly to the pin order of the symbol*. (The names of symbol pins and the names used for the subcircuit terminations do not need to match; only the order is important). If the pin order does not match you can change it using the up and down arrow buttons. Simply select a pin in the list box then move it up or down the list. Note that the change will only apply to the device(s) you are currently editing; other devices associated with the same symbol will be unaffected.

Once you have finished selecting the category, symbol and pin mapping you *must* select the Apply Changes button. Your edits will be lost if you don't, but you will be warned about this before closing the box.

Catalog Files

Additional Information:

The data for model and symbol associations are stored in catalog files. There are three catalog files as follows:

ALL.CAT	Resides in SIMetrix root directory. Stores catalog data supplied with SIMetrix. SIMetrix never modifies this file.
USER.CAT	Resides in the application data directory (see "Application Data Directory" on page 317). Stores catalog data supplied by the user. Data in this file overrides data in ALL.CAT. The Associate Models dialog box writes to this file
OUT.CAT	Resides in application data directory (see "Application Data Directory" on page 317). This is what is actually used by the parts browser to select and place components. It is generated by the associate model dialog box from information in ALL.CAT, USER.CAT and installed models. It will also be automatically created by the parts browser if it does not already exist. You can also force it to be rebuilt at any time by selecting menu File|Model Library|Re-build Catalog

File Format
Catalog files are text files. Each line provides data about a single device in semi-colon delimited fields. The fields are as follows

Field 1	Device name as it appears in browser
Field 2	Symbol name
Field 3	Model property - X for subcircuits, as appropriate for other devices. (This field is empty in ALL.CAT and USER.CAT it is determined automatically from electrical model when OUT.CAT is built)

Field 4	Category
Field 5	Sub-category (currently not used)
Field 6	Pin mapping order
Filed 7	Path name (duplicate device names only)

When you select OK your edits will be written to the USER.CAT file (see above table). This is in the same format as ALL.CAT in the root folder. ALL.CAT is never modified. Also another file is updated called OUT.CAT. This is the file used by the parts browser. The process of building OUT.CAT may take a few seconds if the model library is large.

Importing Models to a Schematic

SIMetrix provides a means to automatically import all models needed for a schematic into that schematic. The models are placed in the simulator command window (opened with F11 see “Manual Entry of Simulator Commands” on page 64). Once the models are imported to a schematic, it will no longer be necessary for SIMetrix to locate the models in the library when a simulation is run. This has the following benefits:

- It makes the schematic completely self-contained. This is useful for archiving or if you wish to pass the schematic to a third party.
- You can edit the models locally without affecting the global library.

To import models to a schematic, select the schematic menu Simulator|Import Models.... You will be provided with two options: Import Direct Copy and Import by Reference. The first will import the model text directly into the schematic. The second will put the model text into a file. This will be referenced in the schematic's simulator command window using a .INC control. See “Command Reference” chapter of the *Simulator Reference Manual*.

Sundry Topics

.LIB Control

The .LIB netlist control allows the local specification of model library for a particular circuit.

Syntax:

.LIB *pathname*

pathname	File system path name specifying a single file or, by using a wildcard (* or ?), a group of files. If the path name contains spaces, it must be enclosed in quotation marks (").

This control specifies a pathname to be searched for model and subcircuit libraries. Any number of .LIB controls may be specified and wild-cards (i.e. * and ?) may be used.

If a model or subcircuit is called up by a device line but that definition was not present in the netlist, SIMetrix will search for it in files specified using the .LIB control.

SIMetrix also supports another form of .LIB used by model files designed for Star-Hspice®. See the *Simulator Reference Manual* for details.

Drag and Drop to Schematic

You can install a model file to a schematic by picking it up in windows explorer and dropping it onto the schematic window. This will insert a .LIB control (see above) with a path to the file you dropped. This installs the model file to be local to that schematic.

Library Diagnostics

When enabled, library diagnostics display messages showing the progress of the location of device models. To enable/disable select File|Options|General... then Model Library tab.

Local Models

You can also enter a model or subcircuit definition in the schematic's F11 window. However if you enter a model in this manner it will only be available to that schematic.

Library Indexing Mechanism

This is a technique used to speed the search for models and subcircuits. It is completely transparent and requires no action from the user. SIMetrix creates an index file for each library specification it encounters either installed globally or referenced using .LIB. This index files contain details of the file locations of models and subcircuit definitions referenced by the library specification. These index files can then be used for later simulation runs to speed the search for models and subcircuits. Index files are automatically rebuilt if any of the library files referenced are modified. (Modifications are detected by comparing file dates). All index files are stored in *app_data_dir*\INDEXES where *app_data_dir* is the location of the application data directory. See "Application Data Directory" for the location of this directory. The files are named SX*n*.sxidx where *n* is some number.

Note that if you add a new model file to a directory while SIMetrix is running, SIMetrix won't know of the new file and any relevant indexes won't be updated. In this situation, select the menu File|Model Library|Rebuild Catalog to update the indexes.

Duplicate Model Names

Models of some common parts are available from different sources. Sometimes these have different names, e.g LF356 and LF356/NS - the latter available from the National Semiconductor library. In some cases the model names from different sources are identical. This poses a problem as models have to be uniquely identified by their name.

SIMetrix has a built-in utility that can automatically rename models with duplicate names. The devices are renamed by adding a user specified suffix to the model name. The rename utility is not accessible via the menus but must be invoked by typing a command at the command line. Proceed as follows:

1. First ensure that all the model library files you wish to process are installed as global libraries.

2. Make backup copies of your model files. This is optional, the utility makes backups anyway.
3. Type at the command line (i.e. the edit box below the menu bar in the command shell):

   ```
   rename_libs
   ```

4. A list of currently installed libraries will be displayed. Double click on any that you wish to be processed for renaming and supply a suffix. The suffix must not contain spaces and should start with a non-alphanumeric character such as '/' or '-'. Note that only models found to have duplicates will be renamed. SIMetrix will not rename unique models. If you do not supply a suffix for a library, no devices within it will be renamed.
5. Press OK. The operation can take a long time; possibly a few minutes if the library is large. On completion the message:

   ```
   *** RENAME COMPLETE. See ???\RENAME.LOG for details
   ```

   will be displayed in the command shell. The RENAME.LOG file will contain full details of the rename process. This includes details of all models that were renamed.

Notes

- If the device being renamed is implemented as a subcircuit, the rename utility will copy any symbol/model association for that device with the new name.
- Devices that are used locally, i.e. within the model file itself, will be excluded from the rename procedure. These devices will not be renamed nor will they added to the list that is searched to identify duplicate names.
- You can perform a test run which creates the log file but does not actually perform the renaming. To do this, type the command:

  ```
  rename_libs_check
  ```

  Note that messages output to the log file and to the command shell will report the renaming of models but no renaming will actually take place.

Old Duplicate Name System

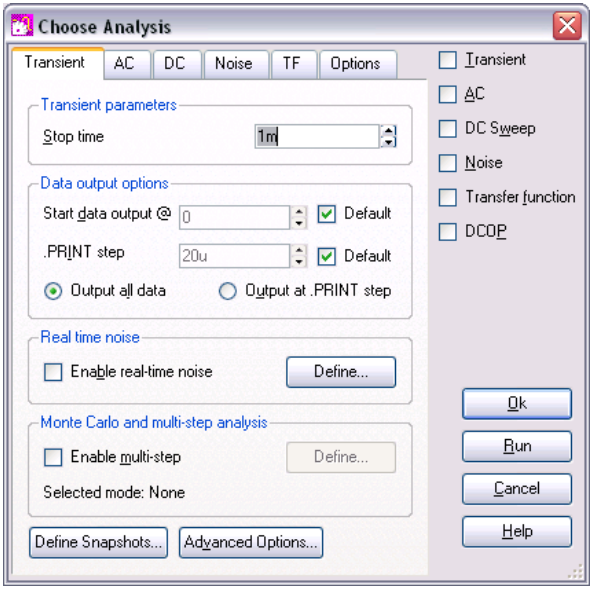
Older versions of SIMetrix (4.1 and earlier) were able to handle duplicate model names directly. This system is no longer supported.

Chapter 7 Analysis Modes

Overview

In this chapter we describe the various analysis modes available and how to set them up from the schematic editor. There is more information on analysis modes including full details of the netlist commands to invoke them, in the "Command Reference" chapter of the *Simulator Reference Manual*.

Most of the analyses can be setup using the Choose Analysis Dialog Box which is opened with the schematic menu Simulator|Choose Analysis... .



Full featured Choose Analysis Dialog

You can also enter the 'raw' netlist commands in the F11 window. The contents of this window remain synchronised with the Choose Analysis dialog box settings so you can freely switch between the two methods. The Choose Analysis dialog box does not support sensitivity and pole-zero analysis so these methods must be set up using the F11 window.

Running Simulations

Overview

Once an analysis has been set up using the procedures described in this chapter, a simulation would normally be run in *synchronous* mode perhaps by selecting the Simulator|Run menu. In *synchronous* mode, you cannot use any part of the program while the simulation is running.

There are also other methods of running a simulation. You can run a simulation for a netlist directly and you can also run in *asynchronous* mode. These are explained in the following sections.

Starting, Pausing and Aborting Analyses

Starting an Analysis

To start a simulation in normal (synchronous) mode, use the Simulator | Run menu, press the F9 key or press the Run button on the Choose Analysis Dialog box shown above. A dialog box will show the status of the simulation.

Pausing an Analysis

You can pause the simulation by selecting the Pause button on the simulator status dialog box. To restart select the Resume button (the Pause button changes name when simulation pauses) or the Simulator|Resume menu item.

When a simulation is paused, you can carry on using the program as if the simulation had completed. This includes plotting results of the simulation completed so far. If you decide you do not wish to continue the run, there is no need to explicitly abort it. You can just start a new run in the normal way. If you do this you will be asked if you would like to resume the pending run. If you answer 'No', the pending run will be automatically aborted and the new run started.

Aborting an Analysis

There is actually never a need to explicitly abort an analysis. If you decide you do not wish to continue a run, just pause it as described above. Pause is the same as abort except that you have the option to change your mind and restart.

Nevertheless there is an abort facility. Simply select the Simulator|Abort menu. When you abort a run, you will not be able to restart it.

There is just one benefit of aborting a run instead of pausing it. When an analysis is aborted, the simulator frees up the memory it needed for the run. Note that this does not happen after a run completes normally. If you need to free up simulator memory after a normal run completes, type Reset at the command line. (Not available with SIMetrix Intro).

Running Analyses in Asynchronous Mode

In *asynchronous* mode, the simulation runs in the background and you are free to carry on using the SIMetrix environment for entering schematics or viewing results from previous analyses. Because, the simulation is running in the background, it is necessary for the simulation process to be detached from the front end environment and for this reason it is not possible to use .GRAPH or fixed probes to plot simulation results during the course of the run. Also you must manually load the simulation data when the run is complete.

Starting an Asynchronous Run

1. Select menu Simulator|Run Asynchronous... . Note a simulation status box appears similar to the box used for synchronous runs but with an additional Activity box at the bottom. An messages generated by the simulator will be displayed here.
2. When the simulation is complete, you must load the data manually. The name of the file to load will be displayed in the command shell when the simulation starts. Select menu Fil|Data|Load Temporary Data... to load data file. You will be able to cross probe the schematic used to run the analysis in the normal manner once this file is loaded.

Pausing and Aborting Asynchronous Runs

To pause, press the Pause button. Note that you can load the data generated so far after pausing the run as described above.

To abort a run, press the Close button.

Running an Analysis on a Netlist

You can run an analysis on a netlist created by hand or perhaps with a third party schematic entry program.

To run a netlist in synchronous mode, select the command shell menu Simulator|Run Netlist... then locate the netlist file.

To run a netlist in asynchronous mode, select the command shell menu Simulator|Run Netlist Asynchronous... then locate the netlist file. See "Running Analyses in Asynchronous Mode" above for further information about running asynchronous analyses.

Transient Analysis

In this mode the simulator computes the behaviour of the circuit over a time interval specified by the stop time. Usually, the stop time is the only parameter that needs specifying but there are a number of others available.

Setting up a Transient Analysis

1. Select menu Simulator|Choose Analysis...
2. Select Transient check box on the right.

3. Select Transient tab at the top. Enter parameters as described in the following sections.

Transient Parameters

Enter the stop time as required. Note that the simulation can be paused before the stop time is reached allowing the results obtained so far to be examined. It is also possible to restart the simulation after the stop time has been reached and continue for as long as is needed. For these reasons, it is not so important to get the stop time absolutely right. You should be aware, however, that the default values for a number of simulator parameters are chosen according to the stop time. (The minimum time step for example). You should avoid therefore entering inappropriate values for stop time.

Data Output Options

Sometimes it is desirable to restrict the amount of data being generated by the simulator which in some situations can be very large. You can specify that data output does not begin until after some specified time and you can also specify a time interval for the data.

Output all data/Output at .PRINT step

The simulator generates data at a variable time step according to circuit activity. If Output all data is checked, all this data is output. If Output at .PRINT step is checked, the data is output at a fixed time step regardless of the activity in the circuit. The actual interval is set by the .PRINT step. This is explained below.

If the Output at .PRINT step option is checked, the simulator is forced to perform an additional step at the required interval for the data output. The fixed time step interval data is not generated by interpolation as is the case with generic SPICE and other products derived from it.

Start data output @

No simulation data will be output until this time is reached.

.PRINT step

.PRINT is a simulator command that can be specified in the netlist to enable the output of tabulated data in the list file. See *Simulator Reference Manual* for details of .PRINT.

The value specified here controls the interval used for the tabulated output provided by .PRINT but the same value is also used to determine the data output interval if Output at .PRINT step is specified. (see above).

Real Time Noise

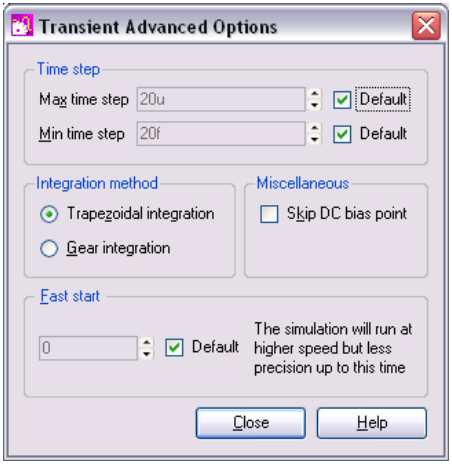
See page 181

Monte Carlo and Multi-step Analysis

See page 188

Advanced Options

Opens a dialog as shown below



Time Step

The simulator always chooses the time step it uses but it will not rise above the maximum time step specified here.

If the simulator needs to use a time step smaller than the minimum specified, the simulation will abort. Reduce this value if the simulation aborts with the message "Time step too small". This might happen for long runs on circuits that have very small time constants.

Integration Method

Set this to Gear if you see an unexplained triangular ringing in the simulation results. Always use Trapezoidal for resonant circuits. A full discussion on integration methods is given in the "Convergence and Accuracy" chapter of the *Simulator Reference Manual*.

Skip DC bias point

If checked, the simulation will start with all nodes at zero volts. Note that unless all voltage and current sources are specified to have zero output at time zero, the simulation may fail to converge if this option is specified.

Fast start

The accuracy of the simulation will be relaxed for the period specified. This will speed up the run at the expense of precision.

This is a means of accelerating the process of finding a steady state in circuits such as oscillators and switching power supplies. Its often of little interest how the steady state is reached so precision can be relaxed while finding it.

Note that the reduced precision can also reduce the accuracy at which a steady state is found and often a settling time is required after the fast start period.

Restarting a Transient Run

After a transient analysis has run to completion, that is it has reached its stop time, it is still possible to restart the analysis to carry on from where it previously stopped. (This feature is not available with all versions of the product - contact sales for details). To restart a transient run:

1. Select the menu Simulator|Restart Transient... .
2. In the New Stop Time box enter the time at which you wish the restarted analysis to stop. Press Ok to start run.

See Also

".TRAN" in *Simulator Reference Manual*.

Transient Snapshots

Overview

There is often a need to investigate a circuit at a set of circuit conditions that can only be achieved during a transient run.

For example, you might find that an amplifier circuit oscillates under some conditions but these conditions are difficult or impossible to create during the bias point calculation that usually precedes a small-signal AC analysis.

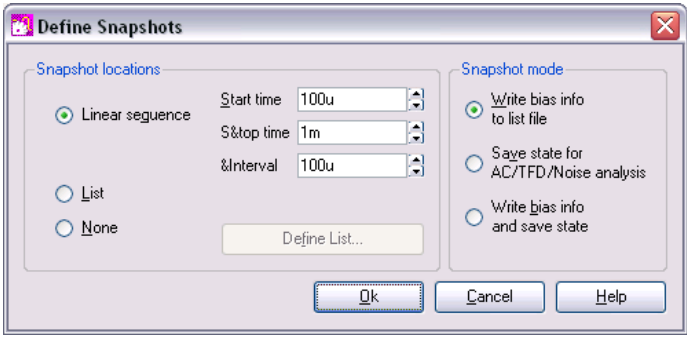
Transient snapshots provide a solution to this problem. The state of the circuit at user specified points during a transient run may be saved and subsequently used to initialise a small-signal analysis. The saved state of the circuit is called a snapshot.

Snapshots can be created at specified intervals during a transient run. They can also be created on demand at any point during a transient run by first pausing the run and then manually executing the save snapshot command. So, for example, if you find your amplifier reaches an unstable point during a transient analysis, you can stop the analysis, save a snapshot and then subsequently analyse the small signal conditions with an AC sweep.

An option is also available to save the DC operating point data to the list file at the point at which snapshots are saved.

Defining Snapshots Before a Run Starts

1. Select menu Simulator|Choose Analysis...
2. In the Transient Sheet select button Define Snapshots...
3. You will see the following dialog



Select either Linear sequence or List to define the time points at which the snapshots are saved. In the Snapshot mode box select one of the three options:

- Write bias info to list file. Instructs the simulator to write the DC operating point data to the list file. Does *not* save snapshot data.
- Save state for AC/TF/Noise analysis. Instructs the simulator to save snapshot data only. No bias point information will be output to the list file.
- Write bias info and save state. Performs both operations described in 1 and 2 above.

Creating Snapshots on Demand

You can create a snapshot of a transient run after it has started by executing the SaveSnapShot script command. Proceed as follows:

1. Pause the current transient analysis or allow it to finish normally. You must not abort the run as this destroys all internal simulation data.
2. Type at the command line (the edit box below the menu bar in the command shell window):

```
SaveSnapShot
```

That is all that is needed. You can now start a new small signal analysis using the snapshot created.

Applying Snapshots to a Small Signal Analysis

1. Select menu Simulator|Choose Analysis...
2. Select AC, TF or Noise analysis
3. Press Define Multi-step Analysis for the required analysis mode.
4. Select Snapshot mode.

The analysis will be repeated for all available snapshots.

Important Note

Snapshot data can only be applied to an identical circuit to the one that created the snapshot data. So, you must make sure that any components needed for a small-signal analysis that uses snapshot data are already present in the circuit before the transient run starts. In particular, of course, you must make sure that an AC source is present.

An error message will be output if there are any topological differences between the circuit that generated the snapshot data and the circuit that uses it. If there are only component or model parameter differences, then the snapshot data may be accepted without error but at best the results will need careful interpretation and at worst will be completely erroneous. Generally, if you change a component that affects the DC operating point then the results will not be meaningful. If you change only an AC value, e.g. a capacitor value, then the results will probably be valid.

How Snapshots are Stored

The snapshot data is stored in a file which has the default name of netlist.sxsnp where netlist is the name of the netlist used for the simulation. When using the schematic editor, this is usually design.net so the usual name for the snapshot file is design.sxsnp. You can override this name using the SNAPSHOTFILE OPTIONS setting although there is rarely any reason to do this.

The snapshot file is automatically deleted at the start of every transient run. The SaveSnapShot command always appends its data to the snapshot file so that any pre-defined snapshots are preserved.

When snapshot data is applied to a subsequent small-signal analysis, the snapshot file is read and checked that it is valid for the circuit being analysed.

Applying Snapshots to a Small Signal Analysis

1. Select menu Simulator|Choose Analysis...
2. Press Define Multi-step Analysis for the required analysis mode.
3. Select Snapshot mode

The above procedure will result in the small signal analysis being repeated for each snapshot currently available.

Operating Point

To specify a DC operating point analysis check DCOP. Note that an operating point is performed automatically for all analysis modes and this is only useful if it is the only analysis specified.

Operating point analysis does not have any additional parameters so there is no tab sheet for it.

See Also

".OP" in *Simulator Reference Manual*.
"Viewing DC Operating Point Results" on page 253

Sweep Modes

Each of the analysis modes DC, AC, AC Noise and Transfer Function are swept. That is they repeat a single analysis point while varying some circuit parameter. There are 6 different sweep modes that can be applied to these analyses. These modes are also used to define multi step analyses which are explained on page 188. The 6 modes are:

- Device
- Temperature
- Parameter
- Model parameter
- Frequency (not applicable to DC)
- Monte Carlo

As well as 6 different modes there are 3 different sweep methods

- Linear
- Decade
- List

Dialog support for the List method is only available for the definition of Multi-step analyses. The simulator also offers an Octal sweep method but this is not supported by the Choose Analysis Dialog.

Not all combinations of sweep mode and analysis are available with all versions of the product. Contact sales for details.

Each of the sweep modes is explained in more detail below.

Device Sweep

In this mode the principal value of a single device is swept. The analysis definition must specify the component reference for the device. The following types of device may be used.

Device	Value swept
Capacitor	Capacitance
Diode	Area
Voltage controlled voltage source	Gain
Current controlled current source	Gain
Voltage controlled current source	Transconductance

Device	Value swept
Current controlled voltage source	Transresistance
Current source	Current
JFET	Area
Inductor	Inductance
Bipolar Transistor	Area
Resistor	Resistance
Lossless Transmission Line	Impedance
Voltage source	Voltage
GaAs FET	Area

Temperature

Global circuit temperature is swept

Model Parameter

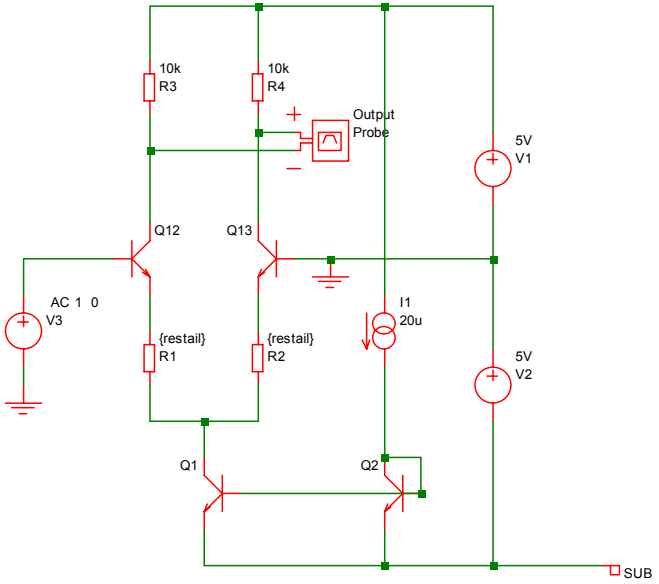
Similar to device sweep except applied to a named model parameter. Both the model name and the parameter name must be specified.

Special Note

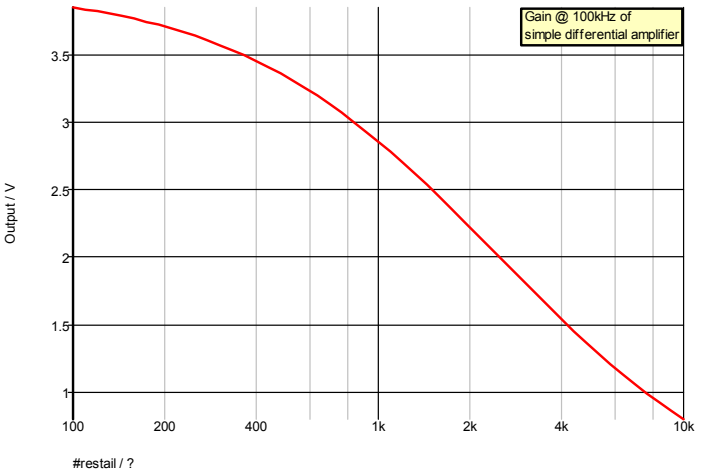
It is recommended that any model parameter being swept is also specified in the .MODEL parameter list. In most cases it isn't actually necessary but there are a few instances - such as for terminal resistance parameters - where it is necessary.

Parameter

A user named variable that can be referenced in any number of expressions used to define model or device parameters. Here is an example. (See Examples\Sweep\AC_Param.sxsch)



This is a simple long tailed pair. The above circuit resistors R1 and R2 have been given the values {restail}. *restail* is a parameter that is swept in an AC sweep to plot the gain of the amplifier vs tail resistance at 100kHz. Here is the result of the run:



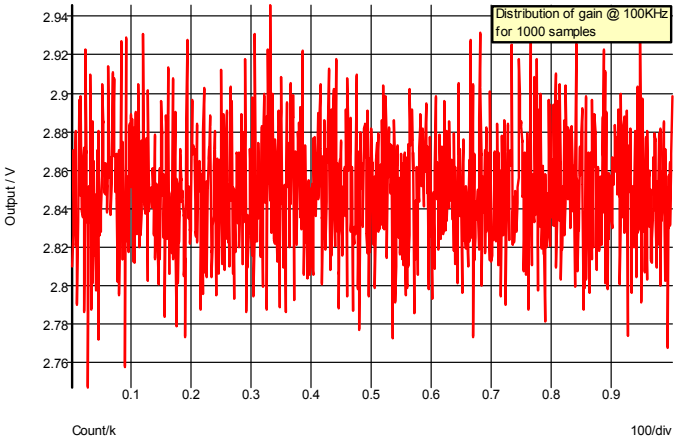
Note that this analysis mode is not available in standard SPICE or the majority of its derivatives. Most offer parameter sweeping, but only for DC analysis.

Frequency

Sweeps frequency for the small signal analysis modes namely AC, AC Noise and Transfer Function. In standard SPICE it is the only sweep mode available for AC and Noise while Transfer Function can not be swept at all.

Monte Carlo

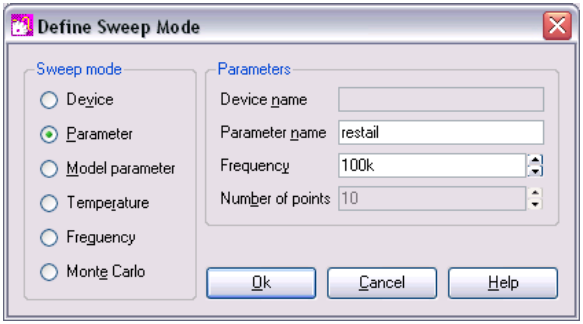
Repeats analysis point for a specified number of times with device tolerances enabled. The following graph show the result for the same circuit as shown above but with restail=1k and with a 1000 point Monte Carlo AC sweep. This run took 0.6 seconds with a 1.5G P4:



The graph shows the variation in gain for 1000 samples. Using the histogram feature a statistical distribution of the above can easily be plotted.

Setting up a Swept Analysis

In the AC, DC, Noise or Transfer Function analysis sheets, select the Define... button in the Sweep Parameters box. This will bring up the following dialog



Select the desired mode on the left then enter the necessary parameters on the right. The parameters required vary according to the mode as follows:

Mode	Parameters
Device	Device component reference (e.g. V1) Frequency (AC, Noise and TF only)
Parameter	Parameter name Frequency (AC, Noise and TF only)
Model Parameter	Model name Model parameter name Frequency (AC, Noise and TF only)
Temperature	Frequency (AC, Noise and TF only)
Frequency (not available for DC)	None
Monte Carlo	Number of points Frequency (AC, Noise and TF only)

DC Sweep

Operates in any of the sweep modes described on page 170 except Frequency. Repeats a DC operating point calculation for the range of circuit parameters defined by the sweep mode.

Setting up a DC sweep

1. Select menu Simulator|Choose Analysis...
2. Select DC sweep check box on the right.
3. Select DC tab at the top. Enter parameters as described in the following sections.

Sweep Parameters

Start value, Stop value
Defines sweep range stop and start values

Points per decade, Number of points
Defines sweep range. The number of points of the sweep is defined per decade for a decade sweep. For a linear sweep you must enter the total number of points.

Device/Parameter/Model Name
The device name for a device sweep, parameter name for a parameter sweep or the model name for a model parameter sweep may be entered here. It may also be entered in the sweep mode dialog opened by pressing Define... .

Define...
Sets up desired sweep mode. See "Setting up a Swept Analysis" on page 173.

Monte Carlo and Multi-step Analysis

See page 188

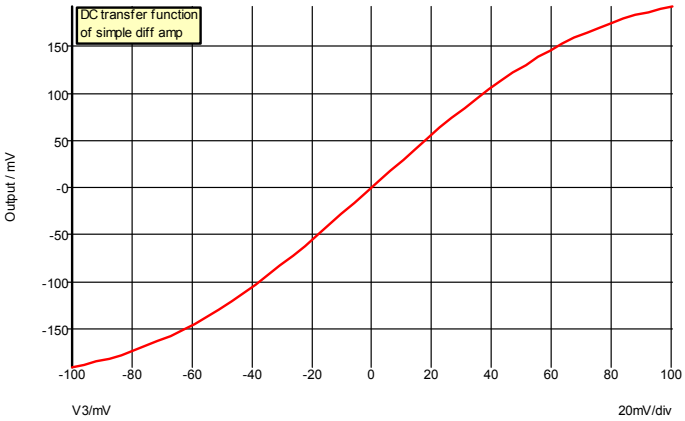
See Also

.DC in *Simulator Reference Manual*.

Example

The following is the result of a DC sweep of V3 in the example circuit shown on page 172 with restail set to 1K. Analysis parameters were as follows:

Sweep mode: Device, V3
Sweep range: -0.1 to 0.1, linear sweep with 50 points.



AC Sweep

An AC analysis calculates the small signal response of a circuit to any number of user defined inputs. The small signal response is computed by treating the circuit as linear about its DC operating point.

Like DC, AC Noise and Transfer Function analyses, AC analysis is a swept mode and can operate in any of the 6 modes documented in "Sweep Modes" on page 170. With some of these modes - e.g. sweeping a resistor value - it will be necessary for the DC operating point to be recalculated at each point while with others - such as frequency sweep - it is only necessary to calculate it at the start of the run.

For AC analysis to be meaningful at there must be at least one voltage or current source on the circuit with an AC specification. To find out how to set one up see "Circuit Stimulus" on page 55.

Setting up an AC sweep

1. Select menu Simulator|Choose Analysis...
2. Select AC check box on the right.
3. Select AC tab at the top. Enter parameters as described in the following sections.

Sweep Parameters

Start value, Stop value
Defines sweep range stop and start values

Points per decade, Number of points
Defines sweep range. The number of points of the sweep is defined per decade for a decade sweep. For a linear sweep you must enter the total number of points.

Define...
Sets up desired sweep mode. See "Setting up a Swept Analysis" on page 173.

Monte Carlo and Multi-step Analysis

See page 188

Data output

Check the Save all currents check box to enable the output of all current data including semiconductor devices. If this box is not checked the current into devices such as transistors and diodes will not be saved. In AC analysis the CPU time required to output data can be very significant relative to the solution time, so you should be aware that checking this box may slow down the simulation significantly.

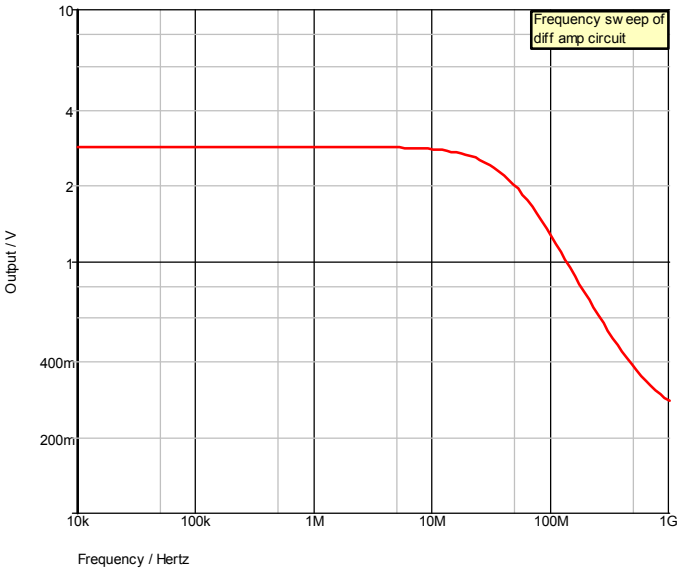
Note that this check box only affects AC analyses.

See Also

.AC in *Simulator Reference Manual*.

Example

Both the examples shown in “Sweep Modes” on page 170 are AC analyses. The following is a frequency sweep which is the traditional AC analysis mode. This was performed on the circuit shown on page 172 with restail = 1k.



Noise Analysis

Like AC analysis, AC Noise analysis is a small signal mode. The circuit is treated as linear about it's DC operating point and the contribution of all noisy devices to a designated output is computed. The total noise at that output is also calculated and optionally the noise referred back to an input source may also be computed.

Like DC, AC and Transfer Function, it is a swept mode and can be operated in any of the 6 modes described in “Sweep Modes” on page 170. With some of these modes - e.g. sweeping a resistor value - it will be necessary for the DC operating point to be recalculated at each point while with others - such as frequency sweep - it is only necessary to calculate it at the start of the run.

Note that it is not necessary to apply an AC specification to any source - including the optional input referred source - as it is with standard SPICE and many (if not all) of its derivatives.

Setting up an AC Noise analysis

1. Select menu Simulator|Choose Analysis...
2. Select Noise check box on the right.

3. Select Noise tab at the top. Enter parameters as described in the following sections.

Sweep Parameters

Start value, Stop value	Defines sweep range stop and start values
Points per decade Number of points	Defines sweep range. The number of points of the sweep is defined per decade for a decade sweep. For a linear sweep you must enter the total number of points.
Define...	Sets up desired sweep mode. See "Setting up a Swept Analysis" on page 173.

Noise Parameters

Output node	This is compulsory. It is the name of the circuit node as it appears in the netlist. Usually the schematic's netlist generator chooses the node names but we recommend that when running a noise analysis that you assign a user defined name to your designated output node. To find out how to do this see "Finding and Specifying Net Names" on page 78.
Reference node	Optional. Output noise is referred to this node. This is assumed to be ground if it is omitted.
Source name	Optional. Voltage or current source to which input source is referred. Enter the component reference of either a voltage or current source.

Monte Carlo and Multi-step Analysis

See page 188

See Also

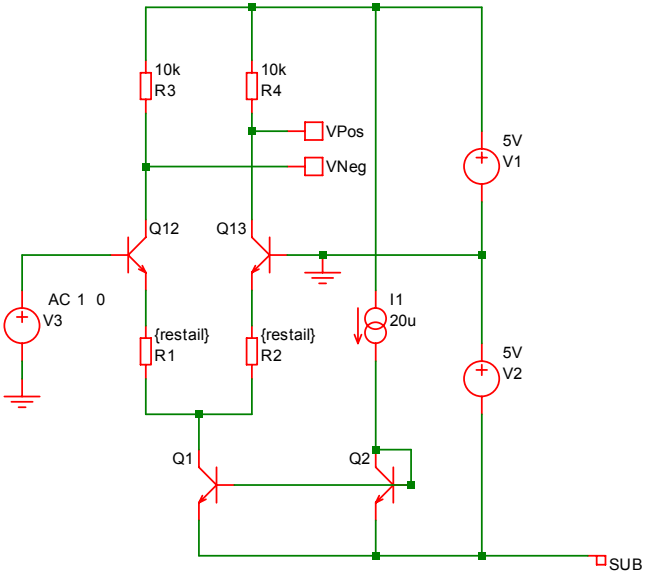
.NOISE in *Simulator Reference Manual*.

Plotting Results of Noise Analysis

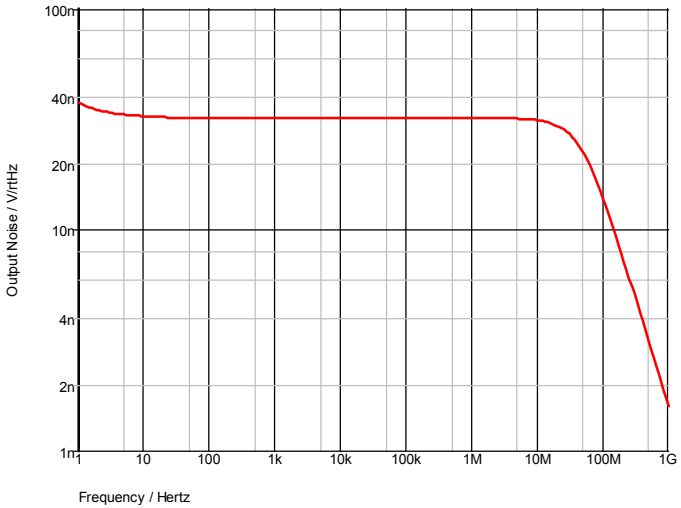
Refer to "Plotting Noise Analysis Results" on page 214

Example 1

Frequency Sweep



The result of a noise analysis on the above circuit using a frequency sweep



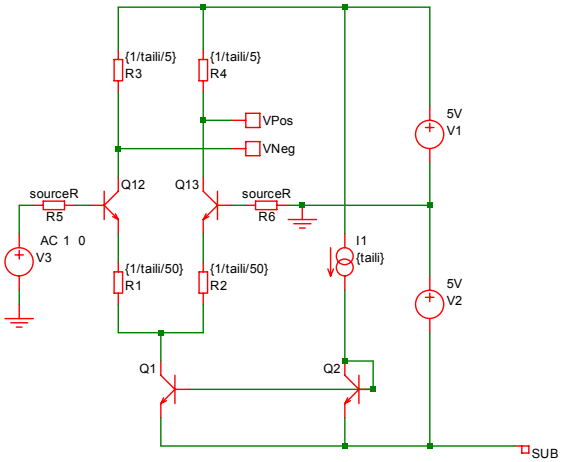
Example 2

Noise with a Parameter Sweep

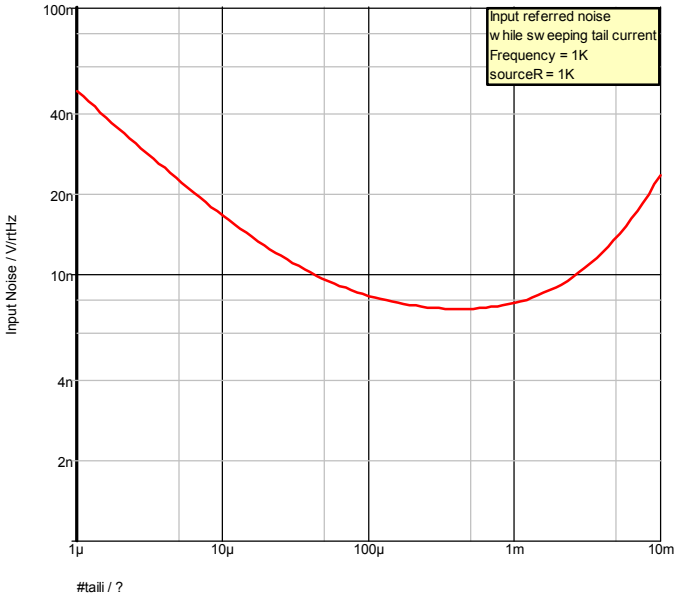
In the following circuit we wish to find the optimum value of tail current for a source impedance of 1KΩ. To do this we sweep the parameter *taili* which is used to set the current as well as the values for R1, R2, R3 and R4. As can be seen from the graph about 300µA would seem to be best. The noise analysis was setup with the following parameters:

Sweep parameter *taili* from 1µ to 10m, 25 points per decade
Output node: VPos
Reference node:VNeg
Input source: V3

sourceR = 1000 (set with .PARAM control)



The result:



Real Time Noise

This is an extension of transient analysis rather than a separate analysis mode. When activated, real time noise sources are added to all noisy devices with a magnitude and frequency distribution calculated using the same equations used for AC noise analysis. This allows noise analysis to be performed on sampled data systems and oscillators for which AC noise analysis is not appropriate.

Real time noise is not available with all versions of the product. Contact sales for details.

Setting Up a Real Time Noise Analysis

1. Select menu Simulator|Choose Analysis...
2. Select Transient check box on the right.
3. Select Transient tab at the top. Enter parameters as described in the following sections.
4. Set up transient analysis parameters as detailed on page 164.
5. Check Enable real-time noise. Select Define... to set up real time noise parameters. Enter values as explained below.

Interval

This specifies the sampling interval of the noise generators. You should set this to a maximum of about 1/3 of the highest noise frequency of interest. Note that the interval also forces a maximum time step so short intervals can result in long simulation times.

Start time

The time at which the noise generators are switched on. Defaults to 0.

Stop time

The time at which the noise generators are switched off. This defaults to the stop time of the transient run.

If you think you may wish to restart the transient run after it has completed and you wish the noise generators to continue to be enabled after the restart then you must specify this time beyond the initial stop time before starting the analysis. You should avoid, however, using inappropriately large values for this stop time as this may noticeably slow the simulation and in extreme cases could cause an out of memory condition.

See Also

Real Time Noise analysis in the *Simulator Reference Manual*. This includes the results of some comparisons between AC noise and real time noise.

Transfer Function

Transfer function analysis is similar to AC analysis in that it performs a swept small signal analysis. However, whereas AC analysis calculates the response at any circuit node from a (usually) single input source, transfer function analysis calculates the individual responses from each source in the circuit to a single specified output node. This allows, for example, the series mode gain, common mode gain and power supply rejection of an amplifier to be measured in one analysis. The same measurements could be performed using AC analysis but several of them would need to be run. Transfer function mode also calculates output impedance or admittance and, if an input source is specified, input impedance.

Setting up a Transfer Function Analysis

1. Select menu Simulator|Choose Analysis...
2. Select TF check box on the right.
3. Select TF tab at the top. Enter parameters as described in the following sections.

Sweep Parameters

Start value, Stop value
Defines sweep range stop and start values

Points per decade, Number of points
Defines sweep range. The number of points of the sweep is defined per decade

for a decade sweep. For a linear sweep you must enter the total number of points.

Define...
Sets up desired sweep mode. See “Setting up a Swept Analysis” on page 173.

Transfer Function Parameters

Voltage/Current
Specify whether the output is a node voltage or device current.

Output node/Output source
This is compulsory. If voltage mode is selected it is the name of the circuit node to which the gain of all circuit sources will be calculated It is the node name as it appears in the netlist. Usually the schematic's netlist generator chooses the node names but we recommend that when running a transfer function analysis that you assign a user defined name to your designated output node. To find out how to do this see “Finding and Specifying Net Names” on page 78.

If current mode is selected it is the name of a voltage source through which the output current is measured. The simulation will calculate the gain for every circuit source to this current.

Reference node
Optional and only available in voltage mode. Output voltage is referred to this node. This is assumed to be ground if it is omitted.

Source name
Optional. Input impedance to this source will be calculated if specified.

Monte Carlo and Multi-step Analysis

See page 188

See Also

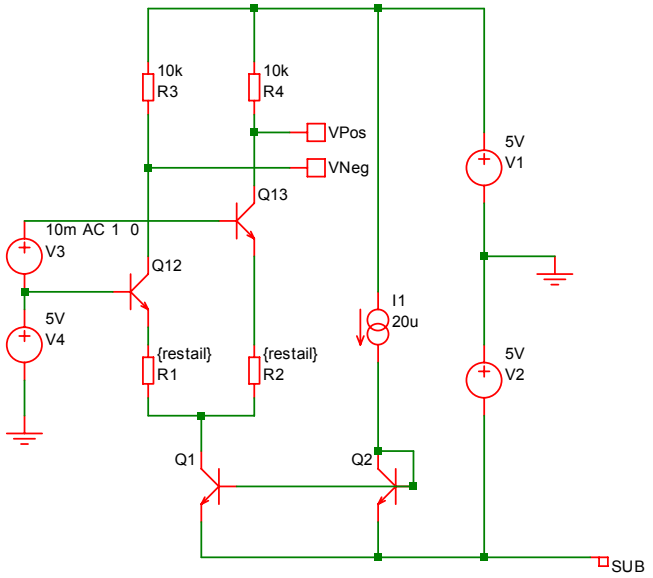
“.TF” in *Simulator Reference Manual*.

Plotting Transfer Function Analysis Results

See “Plotting Transfer Function Analysis Results” on page 215

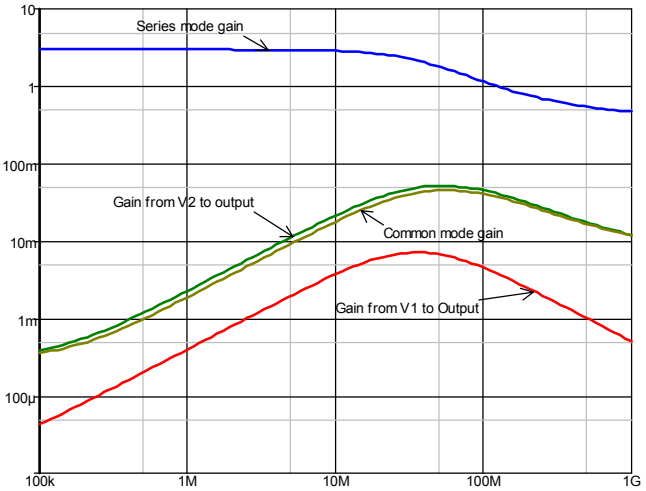
Example

Perform transfer function frequency sweep on the following circuit



Transfer function frequency sweep

The results:



All of the above waveforms were created with a single analysis.

Pole-zero

Pole zero analysis is a small signal analysis mode that - as the name implies - locates the poles and zeros of a circuit. Note that circuits containing transmission lines or any of the Philips compact models are not supported.

*** IMPORTANT *** Pole-zero analysis is an unsupported mode. This means that we cannot provide assistance in its use nor will we be able to resolve any problems found with it. We may withdraw Pole-zero analysis from future versions of the product.

Setting up a Pole-zero Analysis

Place a control of the following form in the F11 window:

.PZ *N1 N2 N3 N4* CUR|VOL POL|ZER|PZ

Where *N1*,*N2* are the input nodes and *N3*,*N4* are the output nodes. CUR means the transfer function is of the type (output voltage)/(input current) while VOL means it is (output voltage)/(input voltage). Usually the last parameter would be PZ which instructs the simulator to find both poles and zeros. The alternatives instruct it to find one or the other. This may be used if the simulator aborts because it didn't converge on poles or on zeros, at least it can be instructed to find the other.

Viewing Results

Select the command shell menu Simulator|List Pole-zero results. The poles and zeros will be listed in complex form.

Example

An example circuit that is already setup is provided in Examples\Pole-zero\simple_amp.sxsch. Also provided is another circuit containing a Laplace block defined from the results of the pole-zero analysis. This circuit can be found at Examples\Pole-zero\verify_pz.sxsch. The example demonstrate a method of verifying the results and also an application for pole-zero analysis. The application is a method of modelling a complex circuit as a small signal block. First run a pole-zero analysis to locate the poles and zeros then build the laplace transform from them. The laplace transform can then be entered into the Laplace block. Note that pole-zero analysis does not provide the gain of the circuit. This will need to be evaluated separately, perhaps using transfer function analysis.

Sensitivity

This control instructs the simulator to perform a DC sensitivity analysis. In this analysis mode, a DC operating point is first calculated then the linearised sensitivity of the specified circuit voltage or current to every model and device parameter is evaluated. The results are output to a file (SENS.TXT by default but can be changed with SENSFILE option) and they are also placed in a new data group. The latter allows

the data to be viewed in the message window (type Display) at the command line and can also be accessed from scripts for further analysis.

*** IMPORTANT *** Sensitivity analysis is an unsupported mode. This means that we cannot provide assistance in its use nor will we be able to resolve any problems found with it. We may withdraw Sensitivity analysis from future versions of the product.

Setting up a Sensitivity Analysis

Place a control of the following form in the F11 window:

.SENS V(*nodename* [,*refnodename*])| I(*sourcename*)

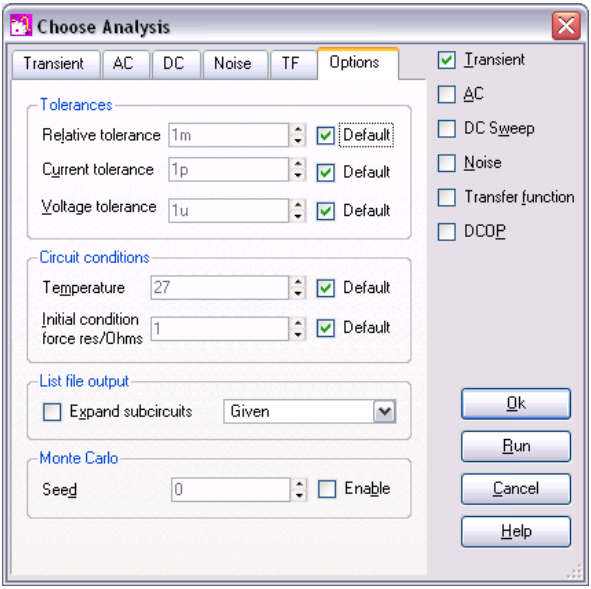
nodename	Output node to which sensitivities are calculated
refnodename	Reference node. Ground if omitted
sourcename	Voltage source to measure output current to which sensitivities are calculated.

Simulator Options

The simulator features a large number of option settings although, fortunately, the vast majority can be left at their default values for nearly all applications. A few option settings can be set via the Choose Analysis dialog box and these are described in the following sections. The remainder can be controlled using the simulator's .OPTIONS control details of which may be found in the *Simulator Reference Manual*.

Setting Simulator Options

1. Select menu Simulator|Choose Analysis...
2. Select Options tab. The following will be displayed:



Tolerances

Relative Tolerance	Controls the overall accuracy of the simulation. The default value is 0.001 and this is adequate for most applications. If you are simulating oscillator circuits it is recommended to reduce this to 0.0001 or lower. Increasing this value will speed up the simulation but often degrades accuracy to an unacceptable level.
Current Tolerance	Sets the minimum tolerance for current. It may be beneficial to increase this for circuits with large currents.
Voltage Tolerance	Sets the minimum tolerance for voltage. It may be beneficial to increase this for circuits with large voltages.

Circuit Conditions

Temperature	Circuit temperature in °C.
Initial Condition Force Resistance	Initial conditions apply a voltage to a selected node with a force resistance that defaults to 1Ω. This option allows that force resistance to be changed.

List File Output

Expand subcircuits	If checked, the listing of expanded subcircuits will be output to the list file. This is sometime useful for diagnosing problems.
Parameters	Controls the level of model and device parameter output to the list file. Options are:

None	No Output
Brief	Only values defined by an expression are output
Given	The default. Values that are explicitly defined are output
Full	All parameter values are output including defaults

Monte Carlo

Seed

Seed for pseudo random number generator used to generate random numbers for tolerances. See "Multi-step Analyses" on page 188.

Multi-step Analyses

Multi-step analyses are not available with all versions of the product.

The analysis modes, Transient, AC, DC, Noise and Transfer Function can be setup to automatically repeat while varying some circuit parameter. Multi-step analyses are defined using the same 6 sweep modes used for the individual swept analyses. The 6 modes are briefly described below. Note that Monte Carlo analysis is the subject of a whole chapter see "Monte Carlo Analysis" on page 305.

- Device. Steps the principal value of a device. E.g. the resistance of a resistor, voltage of a voltage source etc. The component reference of the device must be specified.
- Model parameter. Steps the value of a single model parameter. The name of the model and the parameter name must be specified.
- Temperature. Steps global circuit temperature.
- Parameter. Steps a parameter that may be referenced in an expression.
- Frequency. Steps global frequency for AC, Noise and Transfer Function analyses.
- Monte carlo. Repeats run a specified number of times with tolerances enabled.

As well as 6 different modes there are 3 different sweep methods which can be applied to all modes except Monte Carlo. These are:

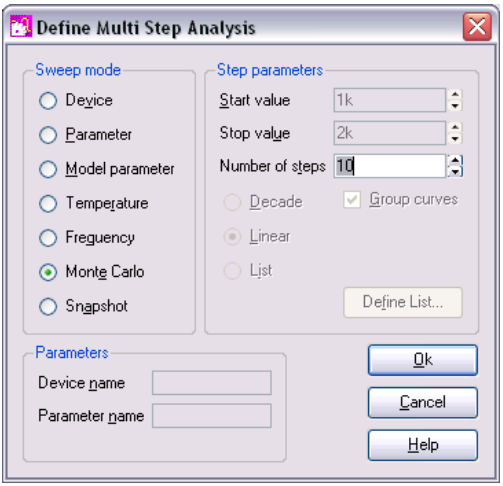
- Linear

- Decade
- List

The simulator also offers an Octal sweep method but this is not supported by the Choose Analysis Dialog.

Setting up a Multi-step Analysis

Define Transient, AC, DC, Noise or Transfer Function as required then check Enable Multi-step and press Define... button. For transient/DC analysis you will see the following dialog box. Other analysis modes will be the same except that the frequency radio button will be enabled.



Enter parameter as described below. Only the boxes for which entries are required will be enabled. In the above example, only the Number of steps box is enabled as this is all that is required for Monte Carlo mode.

Sweep Mode

Choice of 6 modes as described above.

Step Parameters

Define range of values. If Decade is selected you must specify the number of steps per decade while if Linear is specified, the total number of steps must be entered. If List is selected, you must define a sequence of values by pressing Define List... .

Group Curves	Curve traces plotted from the results of multi-step analyses will be grouped together with a single legend and all in the same colour. For Monte Carlo analysis, this is compulsory; for other analyses it is off by default.

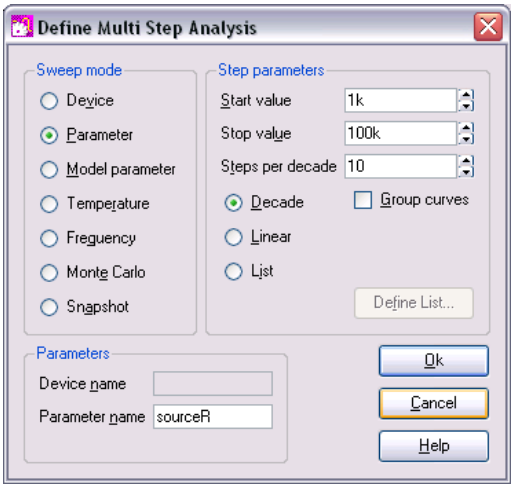
Parameters

The parameters required vary according to the mode as follows:

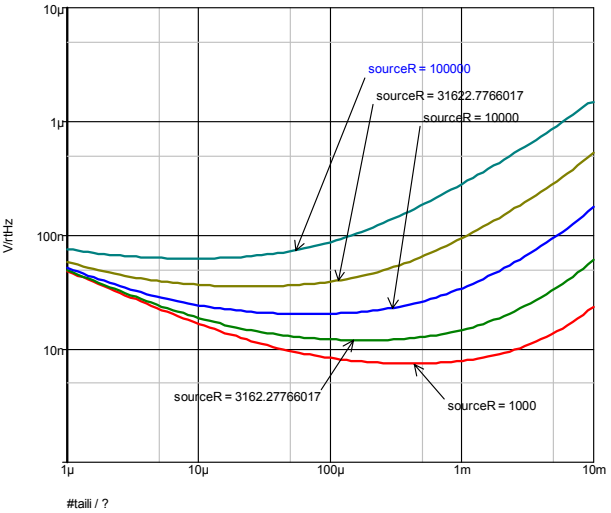
Mode	Parameters
Device	Device name (e.g. V1)
Parameter	Parameter name
Model Parameter	Model name Model parameter name
Temperature	None
Frequency (not DC or transient)	None
Monte Carlo	None

Example 1

Refer to circuit on page 180. In the previous example we swept the tail current to find the optimum value to minimise noise for a 1K source resistance. Here we extend the example further so that the run is repeated for a range of source resistances. The source resistance is varied by performing a parameter step on *sourceR*. Here is what the dialog settings are for the multi-step run:

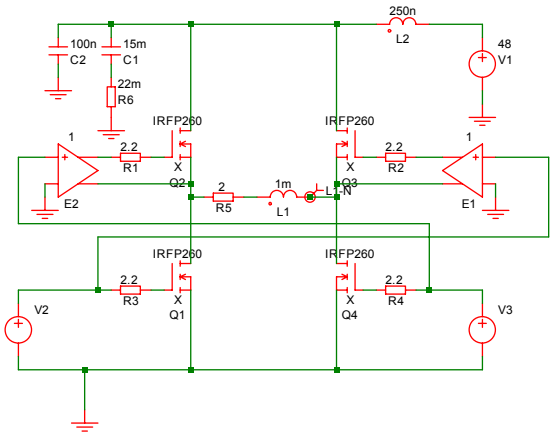


This does a decade sweep varying *sourceR* from 1K to 100k with 2 steps per decade. This is the result we get:



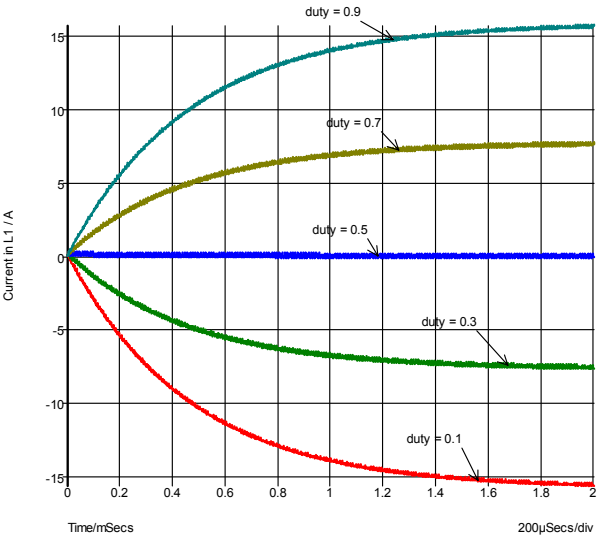
Example 2

The following circuit is a simple model of a full bridge switching amplifier used to deliver a controlled current into an inductance.



Sources V2 and V3 have been defined to be dependent on a parameter named *duty* which specifies the duty cycle of the switching waveform. See EXAMPLES\BRIDGE\BRIDGE.sxsch.

This was setup to perform a multi step analysis with the parameter *duty* stepped from 0.1 to 0.9. This is the result:



Safe Operating Area Testing

Overview

Safe Operating Area (SOA) is not a separate analysis mode, but a feature that can be enabled with DC or Transient analyses. With SOA testing, you can set maximum and minimum limits for any simulation quantity and the simulator will display when those limits are violated.

To use SOA testing, you must do two things:

1. Define the SOA limits for the models or devices you are using.
2. Enable and configure SOA testing

Item 1. above is covered in detail in the *Simulator Reference Manual* - see section titled .SETSOA and also the LIMIT parameter described in the section titled .MODEL. Setting up simple limit tests using some simple schematic symbols is described below.

Defining Simple Limit Tests

Schematic Symbols

Three schematic symbols are provided that allow the definition of simple limit tests that report the following:

1. Over and under voltage on a single node
2. Over and under current on a single device pin
3. Over and under differential voltage on a node pair

Use the following menus to place these devices:

Place | Probe | Watch Voltage
Place | Probe | Watch Current
Place | Probe | Watch Differential Voltage

Each of these symbols can be edited in the usual way. Each has three parameters that specify

1. The minimum limit. Use a large negative number (e.g. -1e100) if you don't wish to specify a minimum limit.
2. The maximum limit. Use a large positive number (e.g. 1e100) if you don't wish to specify a maximum limit.
3. A label. The default value is %REF% that will resolve to the device's component reference. You can enter any literal value instead.

Setting Up SOA Testing

1. Select menu Simulator | Choose Analysis...
2. Select the SOA tab.
3. Under SOA mode choose either Summary output or Full output. In summary output mode, only the first violation for each SOA device will be reported. In full output mode, all violations are reported.
4. In Results to: choose where you would like the results reported. Note that writing results to the message window is a time consuming operation and it is recommended that you should not select this if you are expecting a large number of violations.

Running Simulation

Run the simulation in the normal way. If there are any violations, the results will be reported in the location or locations specified in the Results to: section.

Advanced SOA Limit Testing

The simulator control .SETSOA allows much more sophisticated definitions for SOA limits. In particular, you can define limits for all devices belonging to a specified model. Suppose that you are using a BJT model that has a Vcb limit of 15V. While you could place a differential voltage watch device across each instance of this model, this would be time consuming and error prone. Instead, you can define a single .SETSOA control that refers to the model name of the device. The simulator will then automatically set up the limit test for every instance of that model.

You would usually enter a .SETSOA control in the schematic editor's F11 window. See "Manual Entry of Simulator Commands" on page 64 for details. For details of the .SETSOA syntax, please refer to the *Simulator Reference Manual's* section titled .SETSOA.

It is also possible to set up an SOA specification for a model within the .MODEL control. Again, see the *Simulator Reference Manual* for details.

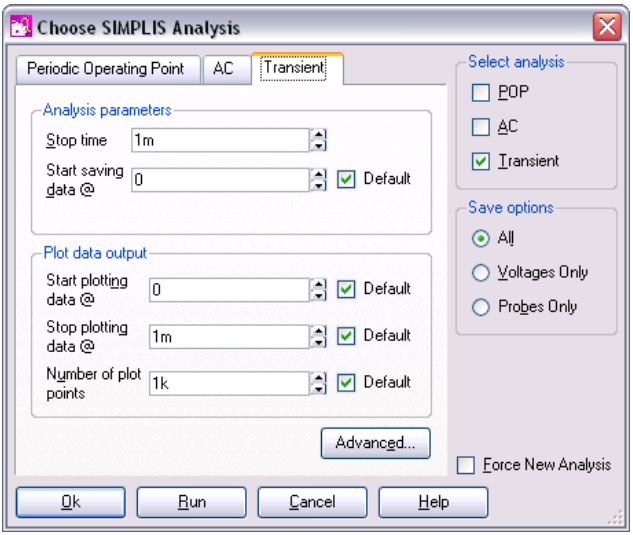
Chapter 8 SIMPLIS Analysis Modes

Overview

The SIMPLIS simulator is supplied with the SIMetrix/SIMPLIS product. For information on SIMPLIS see "What is SIMPLIS" on page 27.

In this chapter we explain the analysis modes available with the SIMPLIS simulator. There is more information on SIMPLIS analysis modes including full details of the netlist commands required to invoke them, in the SIMPLIS Reference Manual.

To setup a SIMPLIS simulation, you must first set the schematic editor to SIMPLIS mode. See "Simulation Modes - SIMetrix or SIMPLIS" on page 52 for details. To set up a SIMPLIS analysis select menu Simulator|Choose Analysis.... You will see this dialog box:



SIMPLIS offers three analysis modes namely Transient, AC and Periodic Operating Point or POP. These analysis modes are described in detail in the SIMPLIS Reference Manual. The meaning of each of the controls is described in this chapter.

As with SIMetrix, you can also enter the raw netlist command in the F11 window. The contents of this window remain synchronised with the Choose Analysis dialog box settings so you can freely switch between the two methods.

Transient Analysis

SIMPLIS transient analysis is similar to SIMetrix transient analysis.

Setting up a Transient Analysis

1. Select menu Simulator|Choose Analysis...
2. Select Transient check box on the right.
3. Select Transient tab at the top. Enter parameters as described in the following sections.

Analysis Parameters

Stop Time — The finish time of a transient analysis.

Start Saving Data @ — The data required to create plots will start being output at this time. (Start plotting data @ under Plot data output has a similar function but is subtly different. See below for details)

Plot data output

Start plotting data @ — This is the time at which the process of creating plot data is started. This is similar to Analysis parameters -> Start saving data @ but subtly different. The process of generating plot data in SIMPLIS is a two stage operation. When the simulation is running it saves internal state data known as *switching instance data*. The switching instance data then has to be transformed to actual plot data. This latter process is known as *Post Simulation Processing* or PSP. Analysis parameters -> Start saving data specifies the start time for switching instance data while Start plotting data @ specifies when PSP begins. It is perfectly valid to set Analysis parameters -> Start saving data to zero so that all switching instance data is saved, but to set Start plotting data @ to some later time. Here is an example to illustrate why you might want to do this.

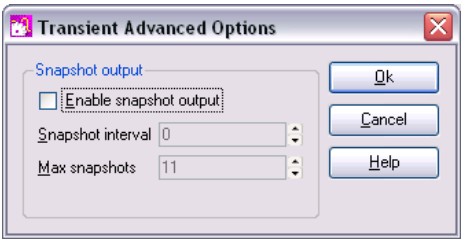
Suppose you are simulating a large circuit to 100mS but you are only interested in the last 20mS i.e. 80mS to 100mS. You could set Start saving data @ to 80mS to reduce the amount of data generated and also to speed up the run. However, after the run is complete, you look at the data and realise that you need to see what is happening from the start of the run. As no data at all was output from the start, the only thing to do is to rerun the entire simulation. If instead, however, you had set Start plotting data @ to 80mS but left Start saving data @ at 0, SIMPLIS will have saved the switching instance data and only the PSP process will be needed to create the final plot data. SIMPLIS is smart and is able to detect when you run the same simulation as before but with only changes to data output required. So, if you rerun the simulation with Start plotting data @ set to zero, SIMPLIS will only perform the PSP which is very much quicker than the whole simulation.

Stop Plotting Data @ — This is the time at which the process of creating plot data is stopped i.e. when the PSP operation (see above) completes.

Number of Plot Points — The total number of points to be generated. These will be evenly spaced within the start and stop times.

Advanced...

Pressing the Advanced button opens the following dialog



Snapshot output

SIMPLIS has the ability to save its internal state in order to allow a run to be repeated from a certain time point. This allows a run to be continued from where it previously left off. (Similar to SIMetrix transient restart facility). The internal saved states are known as *snapshots*.

SIMPLIS always saves a snapshot at the end of every run so if you start a new run of the same circuit with a start time (Start Saving Data @) equal to the stop time of the previous run, SIMPLIS will not need to rerun the start and instead will load the snapshot state. SIMPLIS will do this automatically.

The entries in this dialog section allow you to specify the saving of snapshots at other times as well as the end of a run. This might be useful if you wanted to restart a run at some before the end of the previous run.

Enable snapshot output	Check this box to enable saving of snapshot data. (Snapshots are always saved at the end of a run)
Snapshot interval	This is the minimum duration between snapshots.
Max snapshots	This is the maximum number of snapshots that will be saved. This setting overrides Snapshot interval if there is a conflict.

Periodic Operating Point (POP)

Periodic Operating Point (POP) finds a steady state operating point of switched systems that are periodically driven or self-oscillating. The predominant application of this analysis mode is to rapidly find the settled condition of a switching power supply without having to simulate the entire power up sequence. This dramatically speeds up the analysis of design's behaviour under different load conditions.

For further details of POP analysis see the SIMPLIS Reference Manual.

Setting up a POP Analysis

1. Select menu Simulator|Choose Analysis...
2. Select POP check box on the right.
3. Select POP tab at the top. Enter parameters as described in the following sections.

POP Parameters

Triggering - Use "POP Trigger" Schematic Device
: POP analysis requires a trigger signal to indicate the start of each periodic cycle. The best way to define this is using a special schematic component. To place this select menu Place|Analog Functions|POP Trigger. You should check this box if you are using this component.

Trigger gate
: If you do not use the schematic POP trigger device (see above) you must specify a suitable component in this edit box. Enter the full component reference of the device.

Trigger Condition
: The polarity of the trigger edge.

Conditions

Max. period
: You should set this to a value that is larger than the expected period of your circuit's switching cycle.

  During each run SIMPLIS expects to see valid trigger conditions. However, if there is a fault in the design of the circuit or a fault in the definition of the trigger conditions, it is possible that none will be detected. The Max. period prevents SIMPLIS from carrying on indefinitely in such an event.

Advanced - POP Options

Press the Advanced... button for more POP options.

Convergence
: Sets the convergence criteria for the periodic operating point analysis. The convergence criteria is satisfied when the relative change in each state variable, between the start and end of a switching cycle, is less than this parameter.

Iteration limit
: Sets the maximum number of iterations for the periodic operating point analysis.

Number of cycles output
: After a successful POP analysis, and if there is no transient analysis specified, SIMPLIS will generate the steady-state time-domain waveforms for an integral number switching cycles. This option sets the number of cycles.

Use snapshot from previous transient analysis
: If checked, POP is instructed to take advantage of the last data point of a previous transient simulation, assuming the circuit and the initial conditions remained the same between the two

simulation runs.

Output POP progress

If checked the progress of the POP solution will be output to the data file for plotting etc. This is useful for debugging.

AC Analysis

AC is a small signal frequency domain analysis mode applied to a switching circuit. Please refer to the SIMPLIS Reference Manual for full details of this analysis mode. Note that AC analysis requires a POP analysis (see above) to be also defined.

Setting up an AC Analysis

1. Select menu Simulator|Choose Analysis...
2. Select AC check box on the right. Note that the POP check box is automatically checked when AC is checked.
3. Select AC tab at the top. Enter parameters as described in the following sections.

AC Sweep Parameters

Start frequency — Enter the start frequency for the AC sweep

Stop frequency — Enter the stop frequency for the AC sweep

Points per decade/Number of points

If a decade sweep is selected enter the number of points required for each decade. If a linear sweep is selected enter the total number of points for the analysis.

Decade/Linear — Select type of sweep.

SIMPLIS Options

Save options

All — If selected, all voltages and currents will be saved.

Voltages only — If selected, only node voltages will be saved

Probes only — If selected only voltages and currents that are explicitly probed will be output.

Other Options

Force New Analysis — This tells SIMPLIS to ignore any state information that it may have stored and which could be used to speed up the run. For example, any stored snapshots (see above) will not be used if this is selected.

Multi-step and Monte Carlo Analyses

Overview

The SIMetrix environment provides a facility to run automatic multiple SIMPLIS analyses. Two modes are available namely parameter step and Monte Carlo.

In parameter step mode, the run is repeated while setting a parameter value at each step. The parameter may be used within any expression to describe a device or model value.

In Monte Carlo mode runs are simply repeated the specified number of times with random distribution functions enabled. Distribution functions return unity in normal analysis modes but in Monte Carlo mode they return a random number according to a specified tolerance and distribution. Any model or device parameter may be defined in terms of such functions allowing an analysis of manufacturing yields to be performed.

Comparison Between SIMetrix and SIMPLIS

The multi-step analysis modes offered in SIMetrix simulation mode achieve the same end result as the SIMPLIS multi-step modes but their method of implementation is quite different.

SIMetrix multi-step analyses are implemented within the simulator while the SIMPLIS multi-step analyses are implemented by the front end using the scripting language. The different approaches trade off speed with flexibility. The approach used for SIMPLIS is more flexible while that used for SIMetrix is faster.

Setting up a SIMPLIS Multi-step Parameter Analysis

An Example

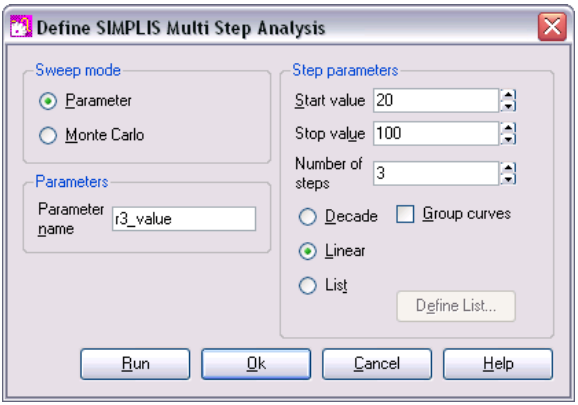
We will begin with an example and will use one of the supplied example schematics. First open the schematic Examples/SIMPLIS/Manual_Examples/Example1/example1.sxsch. We will set up the system to repeat the analysis three times while varying R3. Proceed as follows:

1. First we must define R3's value in terms of an expression relating to a parameter. To do this, select R3 then press *shift*-F7. Enter the following:

   ```
   {r3_value}
   ```

   r3_value is an arbitrary parameter name. You could also use 'R3'
2. Select menu Simulator|Select Multi-step...

3. Enter ‘r3_value’ for Parameter Name and set Start value to 20, Stop value to 100 and Number of steps to 3. This should be what you see:



4. Press Run .

The analysis will be repeated three times for values of r3_value of 20, 60 and 100. The resistor value R3 is defined in terms of r3_value so in effect we are stepping R3 through that range.

In most cases you will probably want to step just one component in a similar manner as described above. But you can also use the parameter value to define any number of component or model values.

If you now run a normal single analysis, you will find that SIMPLIS reports an error as it is unable to resolve the value for R3. This can be overcome by specifying the value using a .VAR control. Add this line:

```
.VAR r3_value=100
```

to the F11 window. This line defines the value of R3 when a normal single step analysis is run.

Options

The above example illustrates a linear multi-step parameter run. You can also define a decade (logarithmic) run and also a list based run that selects parameter values from a list. To set up a list run, select the List radio button, then press Define List... Enter the values for the list using the dialog box.

The Group Curves check box controls how graphs are displayed. If unchecked, curves for each run will have their own legend and curve colour. If checked, curves will all have the same colour and share a single legend.

Setting Up a SIMPLIS Monte Carlo Analysis

An Example

To set up a Monte Carlo analysis. you must first define component tolerances. This is done by defining each value as an expression using one of the functions Gauss(), Unif or WC(). Here is another example. Open the same example circuit as above then make the following changes:

1. Select R3, press shift-F7 then enter the value

   ```
   {100*GAUSS(0.05)}
   ```

2. Select C2, press shift-F7 then enter the value

   ```
   {100u*GAUSS(0.2)}
   ```

3. Delete the fixed probes on the V1 input and on R1. (This is just to prevent too many unnecessary curves being plotted)

The above will give R3 a 5% tolerance and C2 a 20% tolerance with a 3 Sigma Gaussian distribution. Now set up the Monte Carlo run:

1. Select menu Simulator|Setup Multi-step...
2. In Sweep mode select Monte Carlo
3. Enter the desired number of steps in Number of steps. To demonstrate the concepts, 10 will be sufficient, but usually a Monte Carlo run would be a minimum of around 30 steps
4. Press Run

You should see a series of curves build up as the run progresses.

Tolerances and Distribution Functions

Distribution Functions

Tolerances are defined using distribution functions. For SIMPLIS Monte Carlo there are just three functions available. These are defined below.

Function Name	Description
GAUSS(*tol*)	Returns a random with a mean of 1.0 and a standard deviation of *tol*/3. Random values have a Gaussian or Normal distribution.
UNIF(*tol*)	Returns a random value in the range 1.0 +/- *tol* with a uniform distribution
WC(tol)	Returns either 1.0-*tol* or 1.0+*tol* chosen at random.

The 'L' and 'E' suffix functions available in SIMetrix Monte Carlo analysis are not available for SIMPLIS operation.

Lot and Device Tolerances

No special provision has been made to implement so called ‘Lot’ tolerances which model tolerances that track. However, it is nevertheless possible to implement Lot tolerances by defining a parameter as a random variable. Suppose for example that you have a resistor network consisting of 4 resistors of 1k with an absolute tolerance of 2% but the resistors match to within 0.2%. The absolute tolerance is the ‘lot’ tolerance. This is how it can be implemented:

1. Assign a random variable using the .VAR preprocessor control. (You cannot use .PARAM in SIMPLIS simulations). E.g.:

   ```
   .VAR rv1 = {UNIF(0.02)}
   ```

2. Give each resistor in the network a value of:

   ```
   {1K * rv1 * UNIF(0.002)}
   ```

rv1 will be updated on each Monte Carlo step but will always have the same value in each place where it is used.

Performance Analysis and Histograms

Once a SIMPLIS multi-step or Monte Carlo analysis is complete, the data can be analysed in exactly the same way as for SIMetrix multi-step analyses. This includes the performance analysis and histogram features. For more information, see “Performance Analysis and Histograms” on page 255.

Initial Condition Back-annotation

Overview

On each run, SIMPLIS generates a file called the initial condition file. This contains a sequence of SIMPLIS netlist commands that initialises a circuit to the state achieved at the end of the run. This allows a new run to continue from where a previous run completed.

The initial condition file can be applied by including it in the netlist for a new run and in some instances this may be the most convenient method. However, it is also possible to annotate the schematic with the initial condition information. This has some advantages:

1. The initial conditions back annotated to top level capacitors and inductors will also be recognised in SIMetrix simulation mode.
2. Back annotated initial conditions are attached to schematic instances and will be faithfully reproduced if, for example, a schematic block is copied and pasted to another schematic

Please read all of the sections below on back-annotation and ensure you correctly understand all the issues involved.

How to Back-annotate a Schematic

Simply select menu Simulator|Initial Conditions|Back-annotate. You will notice a second or two of activity in the schematic and then the operation is complete.

You should note that SIMetrix/SIMPLIS does not distinguish between initial conditions that are back-annotated and initial conditions that are applied manually. After running the back-annotation algorithm, you will not be able to restore the initial condition value to those set before. You can, however, use Undo in the normal way and in fact the back-annotation operation will be reversed with a single Undo operation.

Disable/Enable Initial Conditions

To disable initial conditions select menu Simulator|Initial Conditions|Disable. Note that this will disable all initial conditions defined at the top level, not just ones that are back-annotated. To re-enable use the menu Simulator|Initial Conditions|Enable.

Back-annotation Errors

If you get the error message "The following instances have initial condition values but do not support back annotation" it means that the SIMPLIS_TEMPLATE property is protected for the instances listed. To fix the problem remove the protection on this property. You will need to open the symbol in the symbol editor to do this.

In order to apply back-annotation in a generic fashion, SIMetrix needs to modify the SIMPLIS_TEMPLATE property, but cannot do so if it protected hence the error message. You shouldn't get this error with any standard symbols from the SIMetrix v5 library or later, but you may get it with your own symbols or symbols from an earlier library.

Editing Back-annotated Initial Conditions

How you change the value of an back-annotated initial condition depends on the device. If the device already has a user editable initial condition, then simply use the standard method. With capacitors and inductors, this is simply done using F7 or the Edit Part... menu. With some other devices, the initial condition value may be found in the Edit Additional Parameters menu.

For devices that do not have user editable initial conditions, you should use the Edit Additional Parameters menu. This applies to most subcircuit models and to all hierarchical blocks.

How Does it Work?

The initial condition file specifies the value of initial conditions for each device that requires them. This information must then be applied to each schematic instance in an appropriate manner. Two basic approaches are used to apply the initial condition values depending on the device namely the *specialised* method and the *generic* method.

In the specialised method, a special script is called which edits one or more properties of the schematic instance. With a capacitor for example, the VALUE property is edited so that the IC parameter is specified or modified. Something similar is done for

inductors. This action is done using a special script specified by the INIT_SCRIPT property. In the case of the capacitor, the script ‘ic_reactive’ is called. The advantage of the specialised method is that the device can be modified in a manner that is consistent with its existing user interface. Capacitors already have user editable initial conditions and the application of back-annotated initial conditions is compatible with this.

The disadvantage of the specialised method is that a method of applying the back annotated value needs to be developed for every different type of device. This would not be acceptable for most users who develop their own symbols. The *generic* method overcomes this difficulty. The *generic* method modifies the properties so that additional netlist lines are created containing the .INIT simulator command that defines the initial conditions. To achieve this the SIMPLIS_TEMPLATE property needs to be modified and as long as this isn’t protected , the generic method will always work.

Hierarchical Blocks and Subcircuits

All back-annotated initial conditions are applied at the top level and no child schematics or subcircuits will be modified.

This introduces a potential problem in that once back-annotated initial conditions are applied, you will no longer be able to modify individual initial conditions within a hierarchical block. You will only be able to edit them on the top level device using the Edit Additional Parameters... menu.

You will be able to use initial conditions defined within a hierarchy or subcircuit if you first disable top level initial conditions using the Initial Conditions|Disable menu. This will of course disable all initial conditions specified at the top level.

To disable initial conditions for a single hierarchical block, use the Edit Properties menu to set the USEIC property to 0. Note that the Enable and Disable menus will reset this property.

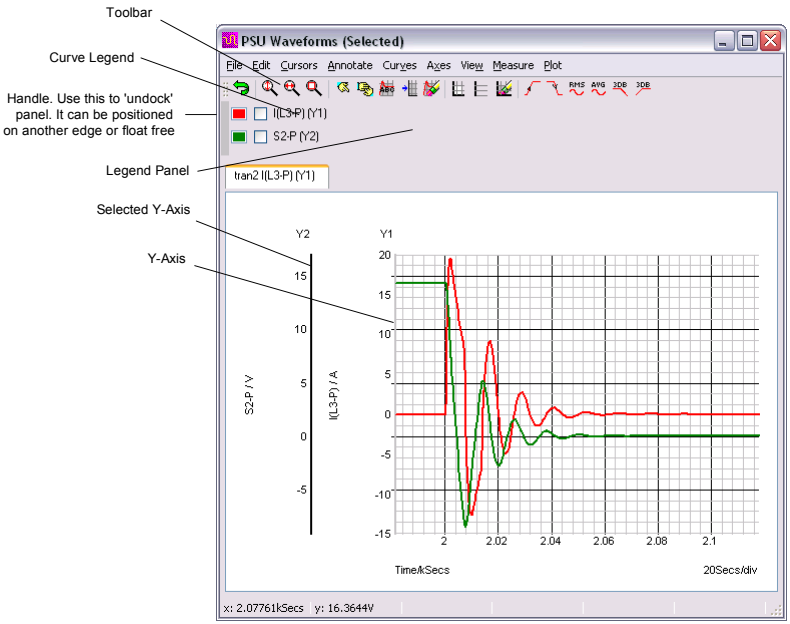
Chapter 9 Graphs, Probes and Data Analysis

Overview

The basics of how to create graphs of your circuit's signals were explained in "Getting Started" on page 52. This chapter provides a full reference on all aspects of probing and creating graphs.

Elements of the Graph Window

Main Window

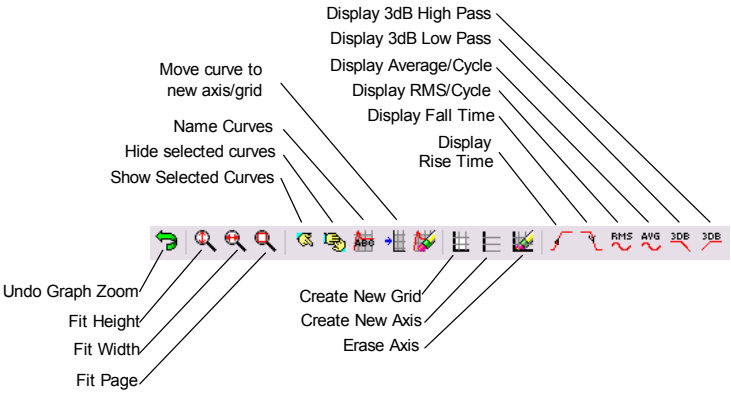


Note that the legend panel can be resized. With most systems a 'resize' handle is clearly visible on the lower edge but with the standard Windows XP theme - e.g. the above picture - this is not the case.

Windows and Tabbed Sheets

Normally new graphs are created within the same window as a tabbed sheet. A row of tabs will appear at the top of the graph window allowing you select which graph you wish to view. You can also create a new graph window using the menu Probe|New Graph Window. This will create an empty window to which you may add new graphs.

Graph Toolbar



Graph toolbar

The above shows the function of each of the buttons on the graph toolbar. These are referred to in the following sections.

Probes: Fixed vs. Random

Much of this section and some of the next have already been covered in "Plotting Simulation Results" on page 65. It is repeated here for convenience.

SIMetrix provides two approaches to creating plots of simulated results from a schematic.

The first approach is to fix voltage or current probes to the schematic before or during a run. SIMetrix will then generate graphs of the selected voltages and/or currents automatically. Normally the graphs for fixed probes are opened and updated while the simulator is running. The probes have a wide range of options which allow you to specify - for example - how the graphs are organised and when and how often they are updated. These probes are known as *fixed probes*.

The second approach is to randomly probe the circuit after the run is complete. (You can also do this during a run by pausing first). With this approach, the graph will be created as you point the probe but will not be updated on a new run. These probes are known as *random probes*.

You do not need to make any decisions on how you wish to probe your circuit before starting the run. You can enter a circuit without any fixed probes, run it, then randomly probe afterwards. Alternatively, you can place a single fixed probe on an obvious point of interest, then randomly probe to investigate the detailed behaviour of your circuit. Note that you can add fixed probes after a run has started but the run must be paused first.

There are currently 8 types of fixed probe to suit a range of applications. The random probing method allows you to plot anything you like including device power, FFTs, arbitrary expressions of simulation results and X-Y plots such as Nyquist diagrams. It *is* possible to set up fixed probes to plot arbitrary expressions of signals but this requires manually entering the underlying simulator command, the .GRAPH control. There is no direct schematic support for this. For more info on the .GRAPH control see the "Command Reference Chapter" of the *Simulator Reference Manual*.

Fixed Probes

There are 8 types of fixed probe as described in the following table

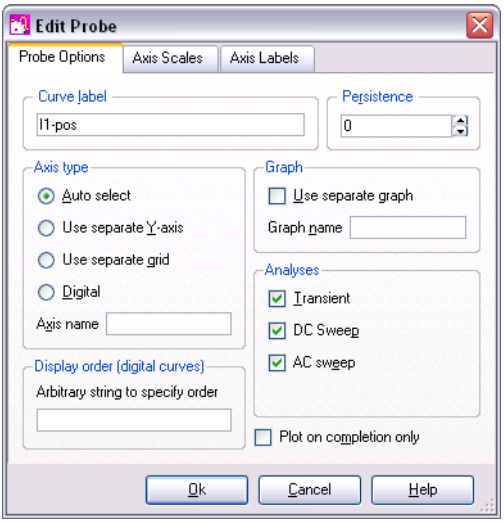
Probe Type	Description	To Place
Voltage	Single ended voltage. Hint: If you place the probe immediately on an existing schematic wire, it will automatically be given a meaningful name related to what it is connected to	Menu: Probe|Place Fixed Voltage Probe... Hot key: B
Current	Device pin current. A single terminal device to place over a device pin	Menu: Probe|Place Fixed Current Probe... Hot key: U
Inline current	In line current. This is a two terminal device that probes the current flowing through it.	Menu: Probe|Place Inline Current Probe...
Differential voltage	Probe voltage between two points	Menu: Probe|Place Fixed Diff. Voltage Probe...
dB	Probes db value of signal voltage. Only useful in AC analysis	Menu: Probe AC/ Noise|Fixed dB Probe...
Phase	Probes phase of signal voltage. Only useful in AC analysis	Menu: Probe AC/ Noise|Fixed phase Probe...
Bode plot	Plots db and phase of vout/ vin. Connect to the input and output of a circuit to plot its gain and phase.	Menu: Probe AC/ Noise|Bode Plot Probe...
Bus plot	Plots bus signal in 'logic analyser' style	Menu: Probe|Place|Fixed Bus Probe

These probes are simply schematic symbols with special properties. When you place a fixed probe on the schematic, the probed value at the point where you place the probe will be plotted each time you run the simulation.

Current probes must be placed directly over a component pin. They will have no function if they are not and a warning message will be displayed.

Fixed Voltage and Current Probe Options

These probe types have a large number of options allowing you to customise how you want the graph plotted. For many applications the default settings are satisfactory. In this section, the full details of available probe options are described. Select the probe and press F7 or menu Edit Part... The following dialog will be displayed:



The elements of each tabbed sheet are explained below.

Probe Options Sheet

Curve Label — Text that will be displayed by the probe on the schematic and will also be used to label resulting curves

Persistence — If non-zero, curves created from the curve will have a limited lifetime. The persistence value is the number of curves from a single probe that will be displayed at once, the oldest being automatically deleted. If set to zero, they will never be deleted.

Axis Type — Specifies the type of y-axis to use for the curve.

- Auto Select — Will use main y-axis unless its unit are incompatible. E.g. plotting a current but the graph already has a voltage. In that case, a new y-axis will be created alongside the main one. See diagram in section "Graph Layout - Multiple Y-Axis Graphs" on page 229 If the signal is digital, a digital axis (see below) will be used for this probe.

Use Separate Y-axis

Will always use its own separate y-axis. If you specify this you can optionally supply an axis name. The value of the axis name is arbitrary and is used to identify the axis so that multiple fixed probes can specify the same one. This name is not used as a label for display purposes but simply as a means of identification. Axes can be labelled using the Axis Labels sheet. See below.

Use Separate Grid

Similar to above but uses a new grid that is stacked on top of main grid. See diagram in section "Graph Layout - Multiple Y-Axis Graphs" on page 229

Digital

Use a digital axis. Digital axes are placed at the top of the window and are stacked. Each one may only take a single curve. As their name suggests, they are intended for digital traces but can be used for analog signals if required.

Graph

Check the Use Separate Graph box if you wish a new graph sheet to be used for the probe. You may also supply a graph name. This works in the same way as axis name (see above). It is not a label but a means of identification. Any other probes using the same graph name will have their curves directed to the same graph sheet.

Analyses

Specifies for which analyses the probe is enabled. Note, other analysis modes such as noise and transfer function are not included because these don't support schematic cross probing of current or voltage.

If the schematic is in SIMPLIS mode (SIMetrix/SIMPLIS product only) the analysis POP will show instead of DC Sweep.

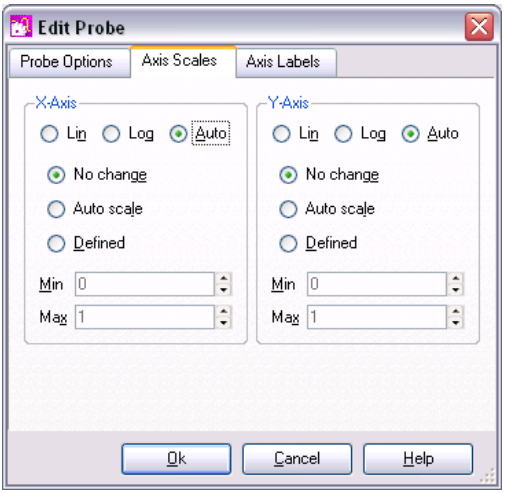
Display order (digital curves)

Enter a string to control display order for digital curves. Normally digital curves are ordered according to their title. The value supplied here will be used instead if not empty. To force the curve to be placed above other curves that don't use this value, prefix the name with '!'. The '!' character has a low ASCII value. Conversely, use '~' to force curve to be displayed after other curves.

Plot on completion only

If checked the curve will not be created until the analysis is finished. Otherwise they will be updated at an interval specified in the Options dialog (File|Options|General... see "Options" on page 317)

Axis Scales Sheet



X-Axis/Y-Axis — X and Y axis parameters

Lin/Log/Auto	Specify whether you want X-Axis to be linear or logarithmic. If Auto is selected, the axis (X or Y) will be set to log if the *x values* are logarithmically spaced. For the Y-axis it is also necessary that the curve values are positive for a log axis to be selected.
No Change	Keep axis scales how they are. Only relevant if adding to an existing graph.
Defined	Set axis to scales defined in Min and Max boxes

Axis Labels Sheet

This sheet has four edit boxes allowing you to specify, x and y axis labels as well as their units. If any box is left blank, a default value will be used or will remain unchanged if the axis already has a defined label.

Fixed Bus Probe Options

Select device and press F7 in the usual manner. For details about bus probe options please see “Bus Probe Options” on page 221.

Using Fixed Probes in Hierarchical Designs

Fixed probes may successfully be used in hierarchical designs. If placed in a child schematic, a plot will be produced *for all instances* of that child and the labels for each curve will be prefixed with the child reference.

Adding Fixed Probes After a Run has Started

When you add a fixed probe after a run has started, the graph of the probed point opens soon after resuming the simulation. *This doesn't apply to differential voltage probes.* To do this:

1. Pause simulation.
2. Place a probe on the circuit in the normal way.
3. Resume simulation

Changing Update Period and Start Delay

The update period of all fixed probes can be changed from the Options dialog box. Select command shell menu File|Options|General... and click on the Graph/Probe/Data analysis tab. In the Probe update times/seconds box there are two values that can be edited. Period is the update period and Start is the delay after the simulation begins before the curves are first created.

Random Probes

General Behaviour

A wide range of functions are available from the schematic Probe and Probe AC/Noise menus. With a few exceptions detailed below, all random probe functions have the following behaviour.

- If there are no graph windows open, one will be created.
- If a graph window is open and the currently displayed sheet has a compatible x-axis to what you are probing, the new curve will be added to that sheet. E.g. if the currently displayed graph is from a transient analysis and has an x-axis of Time, and you are also probing the results of a transient analysis, then the new curve will be added to the displayed graph. If, however the displayed curve was from an AC analysis, its x-axis would be frequency which is incompatible. In this case a new graph sheet will be created for the new curve.

If you want to force a new graph sheet to be created, press F10. This will create an empty graph sheet.

The menus:
Probe|Voltage (New graph sheet)...
Probe|Current (New graph sheet)...

will always create a new graph.

Functions

The following table shows all available random probe functions. Many of these can be found in the schematic's Probe menu while others are only available from Probe|More Probe Functions...

Function
Single Ended Voltage
Single Ended Voltage - AC coupled
Single Ended Voltage - dB
Single Ended Voltage - Phase
Single Ended Voltage - Fourier
Single Ended Voltage - Nyquist
Single Ended Voltage - Normalised dB
Single Ended Voltage - Group delay
Differential Voltage
Differential Voltage - dB
Differential Voltage - Phase
Differential Voltage - Fourier
Differential Voltage - Nyquist
Differential Voltage - Normalised dB
Differential Voltage - Group delay
Relative Voltage - dB
Relative Voltage - Phase
Relative Voltage - Nyquist
Relative Voltage - Normalised dB
Relative Voltage - Group delay
Single Ended Current - In device pin
Single Ended Current - AC coupled in device pin
Single Ended Current - In wire
Single Ended Current - dB
Single Ended Current - Phase
Single Ended Current - Fourier
Single Ended Current - Nyquist
Single Ended Current - Normalised dB
Single Ended Current - Group delay
Differential Current - Actual
Differential Current - dB

Function
Differential Current - Phase
Differential Current - Fourier
Differential Current - Nyquist
Differential Current - Normalised dB
Differential Current - Group delay
Power
Impedance
Output noise (noise analysis only)
Input noise (noise analysis only)
Device noise (noise analysis only)
Arbitrary expressions and XY plots

Notes on Probe Functions

Impedance

You may plot the AC impedance at a circuit node using Probe|More Probe Functions....This only works in AC analysis. This works by calculating V/I at the device pin selected.

Device Power

Device power is available from Probe|Power In Device... . This works by calculating the sum of VI products at each pin of the device. Power is not stored during the simulation. However, once you have plotted the power in a device once, the result is stored with the vector name:

device_name#pwr

E.g. if you plot the power in a resistor R3, its power vector will be called R3#pwr. You can use this as part of an expression in any future plot.

Note that, because SIMetrix is able to find the current in a sub-circuit device or hierarchical block, it can also calculate such a device's power. Be aware, however, that as this power is calculated from the VI product of the device's pins, the calculation may be inaccurate if the sub-circuit uses global nodes.

Plotting Noise Analysis Results

Small signal noise analysis does not produce voltage and current values at nodes and in devices in the way that AC, DC and transient analyses do. Noise analysis calculates the

overall noise at a single point and the contribution of every noisy device to that output noise. Optionally the input referred noise may also be available.

To Plot Output Noise

1. Select menu Probe AC/Noise|Plot Output Noise

To Plot Input Referred Noise

1. Select menu Probe AC/Noise|Plot Input Noise

Note that you must specify an input source for input referred noise to be available. See "Noise Parameters" on page 178 for details.

To Plot Device Noise

1. Select menu Probe AC/Noise|Probe Device Noise
2. Click on device of interest

Note that noise results are only available for noisy devices such as resistors and semiconductor devices.

Plotting Transfer Function Analysis Results

No cross-probing is available with transfer function analysis. Instead, you must use the general purpose Define Curve dialog box. With this approach you must select a vector name from a list. Proceed as follows:

1. Select menu Probe|Add Curve…
2. Select a value from the Available Vectors drop down box.

Transfer Function Vector Names

The vector names for transfer function will be of the form:

source_name#Vgain
source_name#Transconductance
source_name#Transresistance
source_name#Igain

where *source_name* is the name of a voltage or current source.

The vectors Zout, Yout or Zin may also be available. These represent output impedance, output admittance and input impedance respectively.

For more information see the "Command Reference" chapter of the *Simulator Reference Manual*.

Fourier Analysis

A Fourier spectrum of a signal can be obtained in a number of ways. You have a choice of using the default settings for the calculation of the Fourier spectrum or you can customise the settings for each plot. The following menus use the default settings:

Probe|Fourier|Probe Voltage Quick...
Probe|More Probe Functions...
Graph menu: Measure|Plot Fourier of Curve
Graph menu: Measure|Plot Fourier of Curve (Cursor span)

The following prompt you to customise the settings:
Probe|Fourier|Probe Voltage Custom...
Probe|Fourier|Arbitrary...
Command shell menu: Graphs and Data|Fourier...

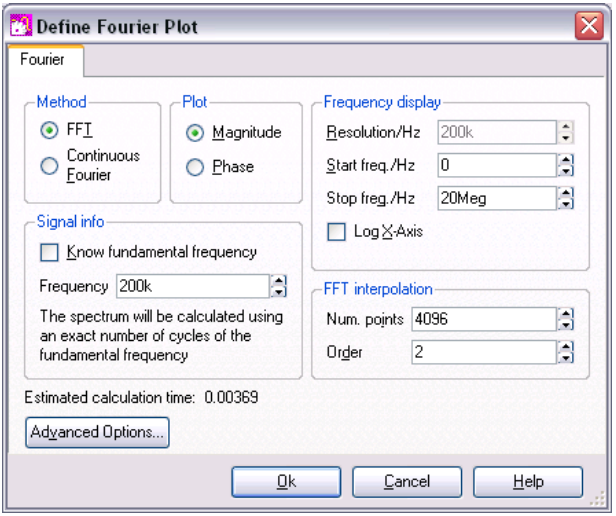
Default Settings

The default fourier spectrum settings are:

Setting	Default value
Method	Interpolated FFT
Number of points	Next integral power of two larger than number of points in signal
Interpolation order	2
Span	All data except Measure|Plot Fourier of Curve (Cursor span) which uses cursor span

Custom Settings

With menu Probe|Fourier|Probe Voltage Custom... you will see the dialog below. With the menus Probe|Fourier|Arbitrary... or command shell menu Graphs and Data|Fourier... a dialog box similar to that shown in "Plotting an Arbitrary Expression" on page 222 will be displayed but will include a Fourier tab. Click on the this tab to display the Fourier analysis options as shown below.



Method

SIMetrix offers two alternative methods to calculate the Fourier spectrum: *FFT* and *Continuous Fourier*.

The simple rule is: use FFT unless the signal being examined has very large high frequency components as would be the case for narrow sharp pulses. When using Continuous Fourier, keep an eye on the Estimated calculation time shown at the bottom right of the dialog.

A description of the two techniques and their pros and cons follows.

FFT

Fast Fourier Transform. This is an efficient algorithm for calculating a discrete Fourier transform or DFT. DFTs generally operate on evenly spaced sampled data. Unfortunately the data generated by the simulator is not evenly spaced so it is therefore necessary to interpolate the data before presenting it to an FFT algorithm. The interpolation process is in effect the sampling process and the Nyquist sampling theorem applies. This states that the signal can be perfectly reproduced from the sampled data if the sampling rate is greater than twice the maximum frequency component in the signal. In practice this condition can never be met perfectly and any signal components whose frequency is greater than half the sampling rate will be *aliased* to a different frequency.

So if the number of interpolated points is too small there will be errors in the result due to high frequency components being aliased to lower frequencies. This is the Achilles heel of FFTs applied to simulated data.

The *Continuous Fourier* technique, described next, does not suffer from this problem. It suffers from other problems the main one being that it is considerably slower than the FFT.

Continuous Fourier — This calculates the Fourier spectrum by numerically integrating the Fourier integral. With this method, each frequency component is calculated individually whereas with the FFT the whole spectrum is calculated in one - quite efficient - operation. Continuous Fourier does not require the data to be interpolated and does not suffer from aliasing.

The problem with continuous Fourier is that compared to the FFT it is a slow algorithm and in many cases an FFT with a very large number of interpolated points can be calculated more quickly and give just as accurate a result.

However in cases where a signal has a very large high frequency content - such as narrow pulses - this method is superior and it is recommended that it is used in preference to the FFT in such situations.
The continuous Fourier technique has the additional advantage that it can be applied with greater confidence as the aliasing errors will not be present. It does have its own source of error due to the fact that simulated data itself is not truly continuous but represented by unevenly spaced points with no information about what lies between the points. This error can be minimised by ensuring that close simulation tolerances are used. See the "Convergence and Accuracy" chapter of the *Simulator Reference Manual* for details.

Because each frequency component is calculated individually, the calculation time is affected by the values entered in Frequency Display. See below

Plot (Phase or Magnitude)

The default is to plot the magnitude of the Fourier spectrum. Select Phase if you require a plot of phase.

Frequency Display

Resolution/Hz — Available only for the continuous Fourier method. This is the frequency interval at which the spectral components are evaluated. It cannot be less than 1/T where T is the time interval over which the spectrum is calculated.

Start Freq./Hz — Start frequency of the display.

Stop Freq./Hz — Stop frequency of the display.

Log X-Axis — Check this to specify a logarithmic x-axis. This will force a minimum value for the start frequency equal to 1/T where T is the time interval being analysed.

Signal Info

If the signal being analysed is repetitive and the frequency of that signal is known *exactly* then a much better result can be obtained if it is specified here. Check the Know fundamental frequency box then enter the frequency. The Fourier spectrum will be calculated using an integral number of complete cycles of the fundamental frequency. This substantially reduces *spectral leakage*. Spectral leakage occurs because both the Fourier algorithms work on an assumption that the signal being analysed is a repetition of the analysed time interval from $t=-\infty$ to $t=+\infty$. If the analysed time interval does not contain a whole number of cycles of the fundamental frequency this will be a poor approximation and the spectrum will be in error. In practice this problem is minimised by using a *window* function applied to the signal prior to the Fourier calculation, but using a whole number of cycles reduces the problem further.

Note that the fundamental frequency is not necessarily the lowest frequency in the circuit but the largest frequency for which all frequencies in the circuit are integral harmonics. For example if you had two sine wave generators of 1kHz and 1.1KHz, the fundamental is 100Hz, not 1kHz; 1kHz is the tenth harmonic, 1.1KHz is the eleventh.

You should *not* specify a fundamental frequency for circuits that have self-oscillating elements.

FFT Interpolation

As explained above, the FFT method must interpolate the signal prior to the FFT computation. Specify here the number of points and the order. The number of points entry may be forced to a minimum if a high stop frequency is specified in the Frequency Display section.

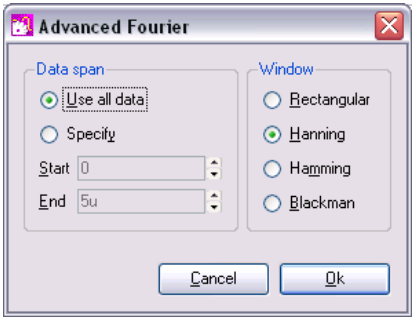
The number of interpolation points required depends on the highest significant frequency component in the signal being analysed. If you have an idea what this is, a useful trick to set the number of points to a suitable value, is to increase the stop frequency value in the Frequency Display section up to that frequency. This will automatically set the number of interpolation points to the required value to handle that frequency. If you don't actually want to display frequencies up to that level, you can bring the stop frequency back down again. The number of interpolation points will stay at the value reached.

If in doubt, plot the FFT twice using a different number of points. If the two results are significantly different in the frequency band of interest, then you should increase the number of points further.

Usually an interpolation order of 2 is a suitable value but you should reduce this to 1 if analysing signals with abrupt edges. If analysing a smooth signal such as a sinusoid, useful improvements can be gained by increasing the order to 3.

Advanced Options

Pressing the Advanced Options... button will open this dialog box:



Data Span

Usually the entire simulated time span is used for the fourier analysis. To specify a smaller time interval click Specify and enter the start and end times.

Note that if you specify a fundamental frequency, the time may be modified so that a whole number of cycles is used. This will occur whether or not you explicitly specify an interval.

Window

A window function is applied to the time domain signal to minimise spectral leakage (See above).

The choice of window is a compromise. The trade off is between the bandwidth of the main spectral component or lobe and the amplitude of the side-lobes. The rectangular window - which is in effect no window - has the narrowest main lobe but substantial side-lobes. The Blackman window has the widest main lobe and the smallest side lobes. Hanning and Hamming are something in between and have similar main lobe widths but the side lobes differ in the way they fall away further from the main lobe. Hamming starts smaller but doesn't decay whereas Hanning while starting off larger than Hamming, decays as the frequency moves away from the central lobe.

Despite the great deal of research that has been completed on window functions, for many applications the difference between Hanning, Hamming and Blackman is not important and usually Hanning is a good compromise.

There are situations where a rectangular window can give significantly superior results. This requires that the fundamental frequency is specified and also that the simulated signal is consistent over a large number of cycles. The rectangular window, however, usually gives considerably *poorer* results and must be used with caution.

Probing Busses

It is possible to probe a bus as long as all the signals on the bus are digital. In this case a plot representing all the signals on the bus will be created. Usually this will be a numeric display of the digital bus data, but it is also possible to display the data as an analog waveform.

To probe bus using default settings

Use the schematic popup menu Probe Voltage... or hot key F4 and probe the bus in the same way as you would a single wire.

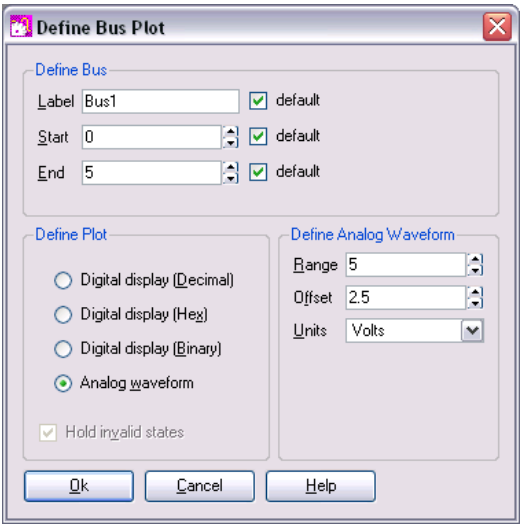
This will plot a numeric trace using decimal values.

To probe bus using custom settings

1. Select menu Probe|Voltage - Bus...
2. Click on desired bus.
3. Enter the desired bus parameters as described in "Bus Probe Options" below

Bus Probe Options

The following describes the options available for random and fixed bus probes. These options are set using the dialog box shown below. See "Probing Busses" above and "Fixed Voltage and Current Probe Options" on page 209 for details on plotting busses.



Define Bus

Label	This is how the curve will be labelled in the plot
Start, End	Defines which wires in the bus are used to created the displayed data. The default is to use all wires

Plot Type

Decimal/Hexadecimal/Binary
Each of these specifies a numeric display (see below) showing

	the bus values in the number base selected.
Analog waveform	Specifies that the bus data should be plotted as an analog waveform
Hold invalid states	If checked, then and invalid digital states found in the data will be replaced with the most recent valid state. If not checked, invalid states will be shown as an 'X' in numeric displays. This option is automatically selected for analog waveform mode.

Define Analog Waveform

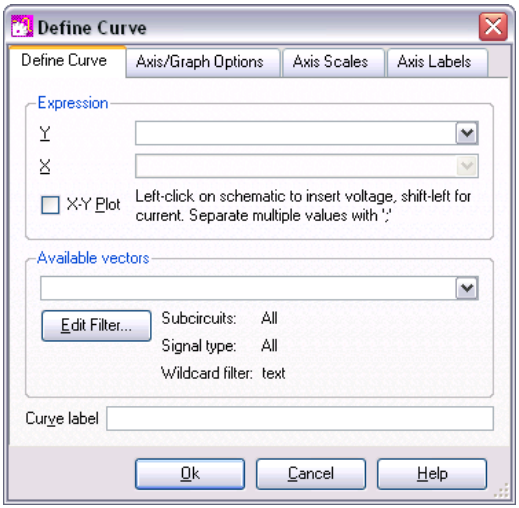
Only enabled if Analog waveform is specified in the Plot Type box. Specifies the scaling values and units for analog waveforms:

Range	Peak-peak value used for display
Offset	Offset for analog display. A value of zero will result in an analog display centred about the x-axis.
Units	Select an appropriate unit from the drop down box.

Plotting an Arbitrary Expression

If what you wish to plot is not in one of the probe menus, SIMetrix has a facility to plot an arbitrary expression of node voltages or device currents. This is accessed via one of the menus Probe|Add Curve... or Graphs and Data|Add Curve.... Selecting one of these menus brings up the "Define Curve" dialog box shown below.

Define Curve Sheet



Expression

Y	Enter arithmetic expression. This can use operators + - * / and ^ as well as the functions listed in “Function Summary” on page 290. To enter a node voltage, click on a point on the schematic. To enter a device pin current, hold down the shift key and click on the device pin in the schematic. Both voltages and currents may also be selected from the Available Vectors box. Any entries made in this box are stored for future retrieval. Use the drop down box to select a previous entry.
X	Expression for X data. Only required for X-Y plot and you must check X-Y Plot box. Expression entered in the same way as for Y data

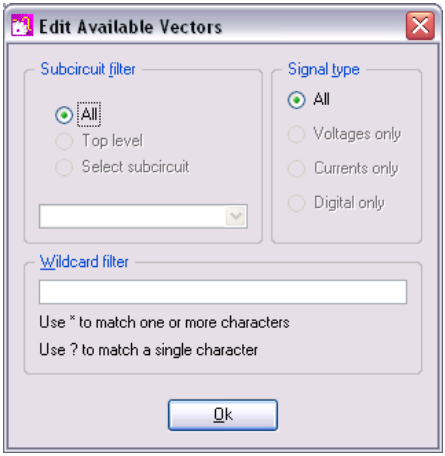
Available Vectors

Lists values available for plotting. This is for finding vectors that aren't on a schematic either because the simulation was made direct from a netlist or because the vector is for a voltage or current in a sub-circuit. (You need to tell SIMetrix to save sub-circuit currents and voltages using .KEEP - for details see page 185 of the “Simulator Reference Manual”). Press Edit Filter to alter selection that is displayed. See below.

The names displayed are the names of the vectors created by the simulator. The names of node voltages are the same as the names of the nodes themselves. The names for device currents are composed of device name followed by a '#' followed by the pin name. Note that some devices output internal node voltages which could get confused with pin currents. E.g. q1#base is the internal base voltage of q1 not the base current. The base current would be q1#b. For the vector names output by a noise analysis refer to .NOISE on page 193 of the *Simulator Reference Manual*.

Edit Filter...

Pressing the Edit Filter... button opens:



This allows you to select what is displayed in the available vectors dialog. This is useful when simulating large circuits and the number of vectors is very large.

Sub-circuit Filter

All	Vectors at all levels are displayed
Top level	Only vectors for the top-level are displayed
Select sub-circuit	All sub-circuit references will be displayed in the list box. Select one of these. Only vectors local to that sub-circuit will be displayed in Available Vector list.

Signal Type

All	List all signal types
Voltages Only	Only voltages will be listed
Currents Only	Only currents will be listed
Digital Only	Only digital vectors will be listed

Wildcard filter

Enter a character string containing '*' and/or '?' to filter vector names. '*' matches 1 or more occurrences of any character and '?' matches any single character. Some examples:

*	matches anything
X1.*	matches any signal name that starts with the three letters: X1.
X?.*	matches any name that starts with an X and with a '.' for the third letter.

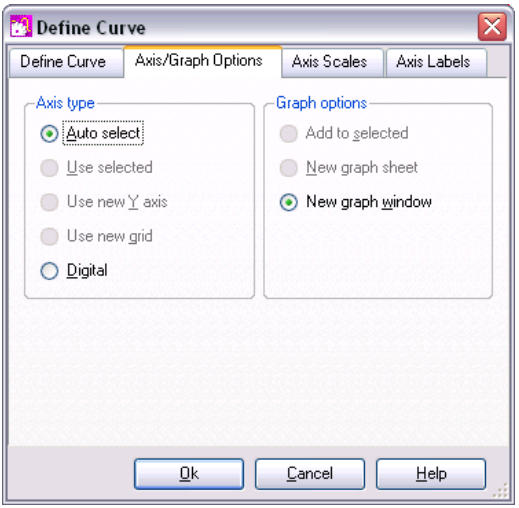
*.q10#c	matches any name ending with .q10#c i.e the current into any transistor called q10
*.U1.vout	matches any name ending with .U1.C11 i.e any node called vout in a subcircuit with reference U1.

Curve Label

Enter text string to label curve

Axis/Graph Options Sheet

Allows you to control where the curve for the probed signal will be placed.



Axis Type

Select an appropriate axis type. Note that you can move a curve to a new axis or grid after it has been plotted. See “Moving Curves to Different Axis or Grid” on page 231

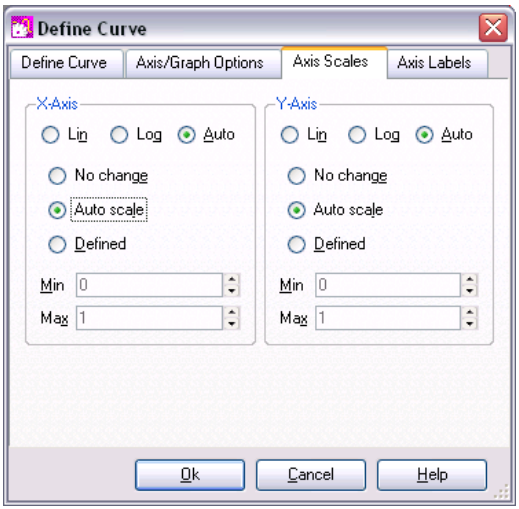
Auto select	Select an appropriate axis automatically. See “AutoAxis Feature” on page 231
Use Selected	Use currently selected y-axis
Use New Y-axis	Create a new y-axis alongside main one
Use New Grid	Create a new grid stacked on top of main axis
Digital Axis	Create a new digital axis. Digital axes are placed at the top of the window and are stacked. Each one may only take a single curve. As their name suggests, they are intended for digital traces but can be used for analog signals if required.

Graph Options

Add To Selected	Add curve to currently selected and displayed graph sheet
New Graph Sheet	Create a new graph sheet within current graph window
New Graph Window	Create a new graph window.

Axis Scales Sheet

Allows you to specify limits for x and y axes.



X-Axis/Y-Axis

Lin/Log/Auto	Specify whether you want X-Axis to be linear or logarithmic. If Auto is selected, the axis (X or Y) will be set to log if the *x values* are logarithmically spaced. For the Y-axis it is also necessary that the curve values are positive for a log axis to be selected.
No Change	Keep axes how they are. Only relevant if adding to an existing graph.
Auto scale	Set limits to fit curves
Defined	Set to limits defined in Min and Max boxes

Axis Labels Sheet

This sheet has four edit boxes allowing you to specify, x and y axis labels as well as their units. If any box is left blank, a default value will be used or will remain unchanged if the axis already has a defined label.

Using Random Probes in Hierarchical Designs

Random probes may successfully be employed in hierarchical designs. There are however some complications that arise and these are explained below.

Closed Schematics

Read the following if you find situations where cross-probing inside hierarchical blocks sometimes fails to function.

The names used for cross-probing are stored in the schematic itself and are saved to the schematic file. These netnames are not assigned until the netlist is created and this doesn't usually happen until a simulation is run. A problem arises, however, if the schematic is not open. If netnames have never been created then they won't be updated during the run as, by default, SIMetrix will not update a closed file.

This problem can be resolved by giving SIMetrix permission to update schematic files that are closed. To do this, type at the command line:

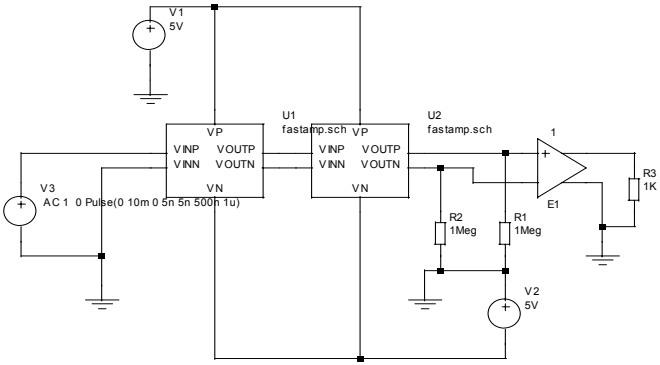
```
Set UpdateClosedSchematics
```

This only needs to be done once. Note that you can only do this with the full versions of SIMetrix.

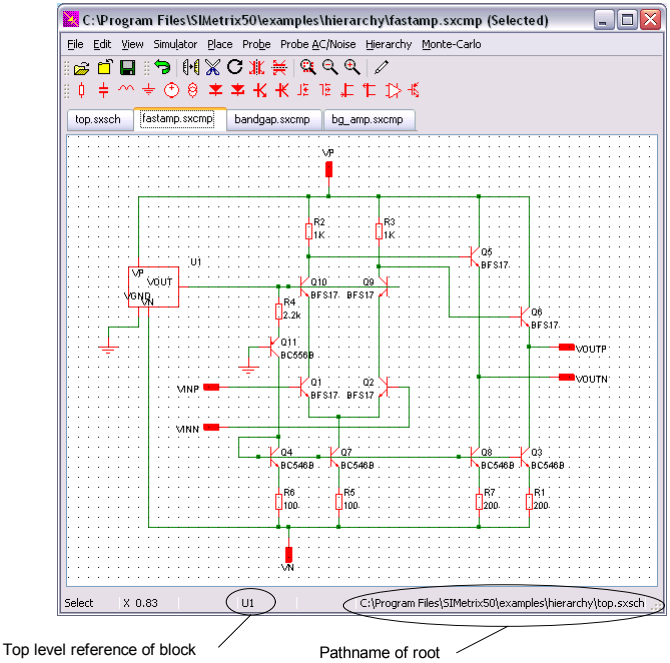
This problem won't arise if you always run every schematic at least once while it is open. If you do this, the netnames will be updated and you will be promted to save the schematic before closing it. This wasn't the case with SIMetrix version 4.2 and earlier and the above problem is most common with schematics created with those earlier versions.

Multiple Instances

An issue arises in the situation where there are multiple instances of a block attached to the same schematic. Consider the following top level circuit.



This has two instances of the block FASTAMP.SCH U1 and U2. Suppose you wanted to plot the voltage of a node inside U1. The schematic FASTAMP.SCH is open but to which block does it refer? The answer is that it will refer to the most recent block that was used to descend into it. The block that a schematic refers to is always displayed in the schematic's status bar as illustrated below



To plot a node in U2, ascend to parent (TOP.SCH in the above example) then descend into U2. The same schematic as above will be displayed but will now refer to U2 instead of U1.

Plotting Currents

In the same way that you can plot currents into subcircuits in a single sheet design, so you can also plot currents into hierarchical blocks at any level.

Plot Journals and Updating Curves

Overview

You can repeat previous plotting operations in one of two ways.

The ‘Update Curves’ feature rebuilds the current graph sheet using the latest available data. This allows you to randomly probe a schematic and then update the curves with new results for a new simulation run.

The ‘Plot Journal’ feature allows you to save the plots in the current graph sheet for later reconstruction. This doesn’t save the data, it saves the vector names and expressions used to create the graph’s curves. In fact this is done by building a SIMetrix script to plot the curves.

Update Curves

Make sure that no curves are selected then select graph menu Plot|Update Curves. The curves currently on the graph sheet will be redrawn using the current simulation data. Although this would usually be the latest simulation run, you can also use this feature to restore the curves back to those from an earlier run. Use the Graphs and Data|Change Data Group... menu to select earlier data. (For more information see “Plotting the Results from a Previous Simulation” on page 233)

Options

By default all curves are redrawn, that is the older ones are deleted. You can change this behaviour so that older curves are kept. Select menu Plot|Update Curves Settings... then uncheck the Delete old curves box.

If there are curves that you would like to remain fixed and so won’t be updated, simply select them first. This behaviour can be overridden using the menu Plot|Update Curves Settings... Simply uncheck the Ignore selected curves box.

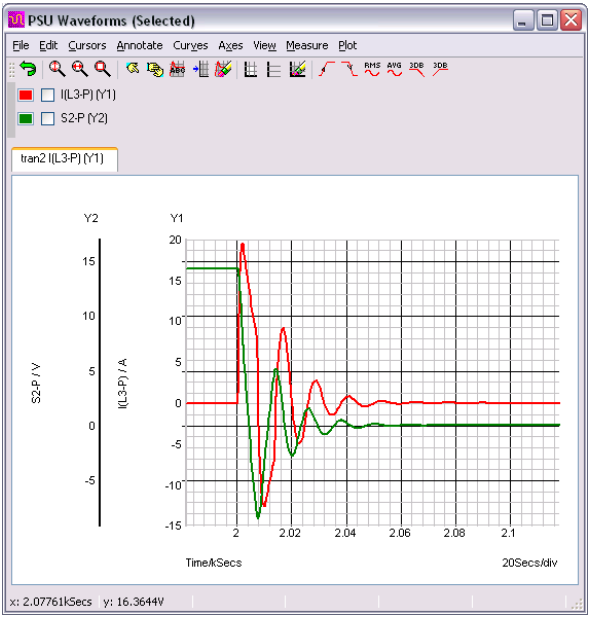
Plot Journals

First create a plot journal using the menu Plot|Create Plot Journal... then choose a file name. The file created has a .sxscr extension - its the same extension used by scripts because the file created *is* a script.

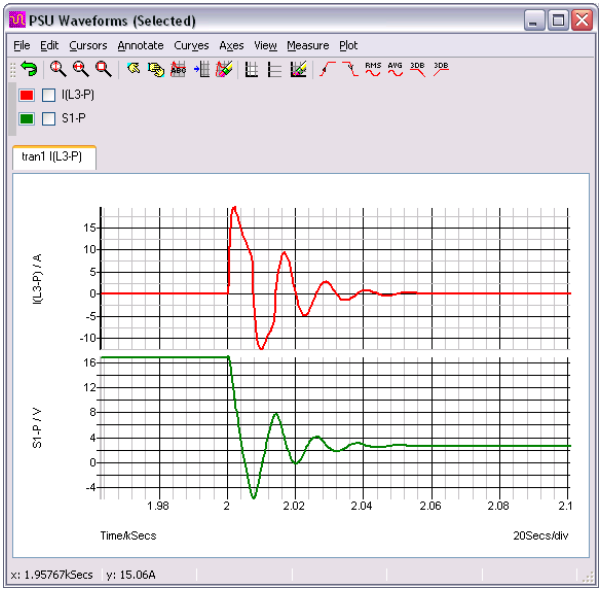
To run the plot journal, you will of course first need to run a simulation or load previous data so that the journal has some data to work with. The plot journal itself does not store any data. With the simulation data you wish to work with in place, select either graph menu Plot|Run Plot Journal... or command shell menu Graph|Run Plot Journal.... This simply runs a script located in the current directory. Note that the plot journal always creates a new graph sheet.

Graph Layout - Multiple Y-Axis Graphs

Graphs may have additional Y axes to accommodate plotting results with incompatible scales. This occurs particularly for plotting dB and phase against each other and also for voltage and current. The additional Y axes may either be superimposed or stacked. In the user interface and the remainder of this documentation these are referred to respectively as *Axes* and *Grids*. These are illustrated below.



Current and Voltage plotted on separate Axes



Current and Voltage plotted on separate Grids

AutoAxis Feature

When you plot a new curve on an existing graph, SIMetrix will select - or if necessary create - a compatible axis for that curve. The decision is made on the basis of the curve's Units i.e voltage, current etc. The rules it follows are:

1. If the currently selected axis or grid (shown by black axis line) has the same units as curve to be plotted or if it has undefined units (designated by a '?' on label), that axis will be used.
2. If any other axis or grid has compatible units (i.e same as curve or undefined) that axis will be used.
3. If no axes exist with compatible units, a new axis (not grid) will be created to accommodate the curve.

The above works for all plots made using random probes. For plots created with fixed probes, the above is the default behaviour, but this can be changed. See "Fixed Probes" on page 208 for more details. For plots created using the Curve command at the command line, the /AutoAxis switch must be specified e.g

```
Curve /AutoAxis L3#P
```

Manually Creating Axes and Grids

Two toolbar buttons Create new grid and Create new axis allow manual creation of new axes and grids. These will be initially empty. Subsequent random probe operations will use the new axis or grid unconditionally as long as it remains selected (see below).

Selecting Axes

Some operations are performed on the selected axis or grid. The selected axis or grid will be displayed with its vertical axis line a deep black while the remaining axes and grids will be light grey. Newly created axes and grids are always selected. To select an axis, click the left mouse button immediately to the left of the vertical axis line.

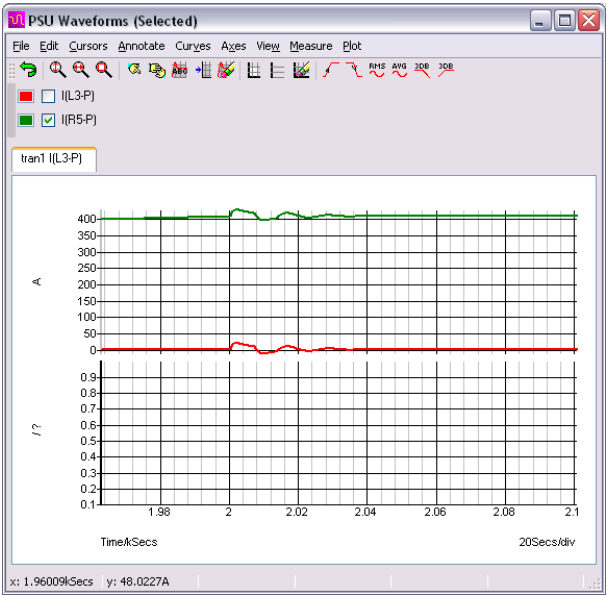
Moving Curves to Different Axis or Grid

You can freely move curves around from one axis or grid to another. Proceed as follows:

1. Select the curve or curves you wish to move by checking its checkbox next to the coloured legend which designates the curve.
2. Select the axis you wish to move it to. (See above)
3. Press the Move selected curves to new axis button. The curves will be re-drawn on the new axis. Any axes that become empty as a result of this operation will be deleted unless it is the Main axis. See section below on "Deleting Axes".

Deleting Axes

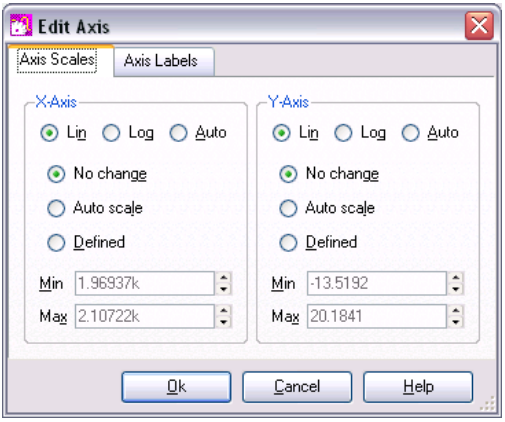
To delete an axis, select it then press Erase axis button. Note that you cannot erase an axis or grid that has curves attached to it nor can you erase the Main axis. The main axis is the first axis that is created on a graph. For example with the following graph



If you attempt to delete the selected axis (the lower one), nothing will happen. Instead you should move the two curves in the top axis to the lower one. See above section on how to move curves.

Editing Axes

You can edit axis scales, label and units by selecting the graph popup menu Edit Axis.... This brings up the following dialog box:



The function of the Axis scales sheet and axis labels sheet is similar to the sheets of the same name in the define curve dialog box. See "Plotting an Arbitrary Expression" on page 222 for details.

Reordering Grids and Digital Axes

You can change the vertical order of the analog grids and digital axes. To change the analog grid order:

1. Select Axes|Reorder Grids...
2. You will be presented with a list of currently displayed grids identified by their y-axis title. Use the up and down arrow buttons to arrange them in the order required then press Ok

Note that the main axis (the one at the bottom) cannot be moved.

To change the digital axis order:

1. Select menu Axes|Reorder Digital Axes...
2. Rearrange entries in list as described above for analog grids.

Plotting the Results from a Previous Simulation

1. Select the menu item Simulator|Change Data Group... .
2. Select the name of the previous run (or group) that you require. The current group will be highlighted. (Note that the AC analysis mode generates two groups. One for the AC results and the other for the dc operating point results. Transient analysis will do the same if the start time is non-zero)
3. Plot the result you require in the normal way. A word of warning: If the schematic has undergone any modifications other than component value changes since the old simulation was completed, some of the netnames may be different and the result plotted may not be of what you were expecting.

Note By default, only the three most recent groups are kept. This can be changed

using the GroupPersistence option (using Set command - see "Set" on page 289) or a particular group can be kept permanently using the Simulator|Keep Current Data Group menu item.

Although only three groups are held at a time, the data is actually stored on a disc file which will not necessarily have been deleted. If you wish to access an old run, use File|Load Data... and retrieve the data from the TEMPDATA directory created under the SIMetrix install directory. The file will have the same name as the group appended with .SXDAT. In the case of monte carlo analyses, it will be named MC*n*.SXDAT. Whether or not the data file is still available depends on a preference setting. See "Graph/Probe/Data Analysis" on page 319 for details.

Combining Results from Different Runs

There are occasions when you wish to - say - plot the difference between a node voltage for different runs. To do this in SIMetrix you need to type a command at the command line. This will be of the form 'Plot *vector1*-*vector2*' for the example of plotting the difference. *vector1* and *vector2* are the names of the signals. However, as the two signals come from different runs we need a method of identifying the run. This is done by prefixing the name with the *group name* followed by a colon. The group name is an analysis type name (tran, ac, op, dc, noise, tf or sens) followed by a number. The signal name can be obtained from the schematic. For voltages, put the cursor over the node and press control-S. For currents put the cursor on a device pin and press control-P. The group name is displayed in the simulator progress box when the simulation is running. You can also find the current group by selecting Simulator|Change Data Group... and noting which group is highlighted in the dialog box.

Here is an example. In tutorial 1, the signal marked with the *Amplifier Output* probe is actually called *Q3_E*. The latest run (group) is called *tran4*. We want to plot the output subtracted from the output for the previous run. The previous run will be *tran3*. So we type at the command line:

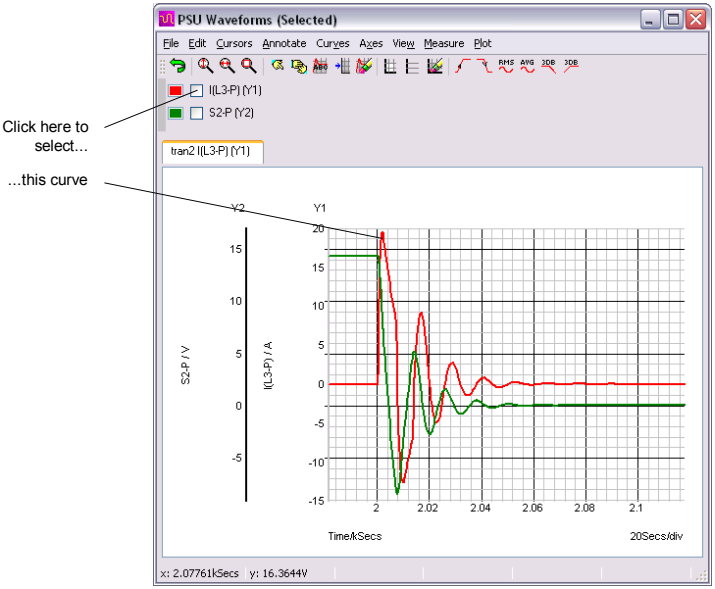
```
Plot tran4:q3_e-tran3:q3_e
```

This will create a new graph sheet. If you wanted to add the curve to an existing graph, use the Curve command instead of Plot.

For more details on *data groups,* the Plot command and the Curve command, please refer to the *Script Reference Manual*. This is available as a PDF file on the install CD and may also be downloaded from our web site. A hardcopy version is also available for an additional charge.

Curve Operations

Selecting Curves



Deleting Curves

To delete a curve (or curves), select it (or them) then press the Erase selected curves button. Any axes or grids other than the Main axis left empty by this operation will also be deleted.

Hiding and Showing Curves

A curve may be hidden without it actually being deleted. This is sometimes useful when there are many curves on a graph but the detail of one you wish to see is hidden by others. In this instance you can temporarily remove the curves from the graph. To hide a curve (or curves) select it (or them) then press the Hide selected curves button. To show it (or them) again, press the Show selected curves button.

Re-titling Curves

You can change the title of a curve by selecting it then pressing the Name curve button. This will change the name of the curve as displayed in the legend panel. (Above main graph area and below toolbar)

Highlighting Curves

You can highlight one or more curves so that they stand out from the others. This is useful if there are many overlapping curves displayed.

To Highlight Curves

1. Select the curves you wish to highlight then press 'H' or menu Curves|Highlight Selected Curves.

To Unhighlight Curves

1. Select the curves you wish to unhighlight then press 'U' or menu Curves|Unhighlight Selected Curves.

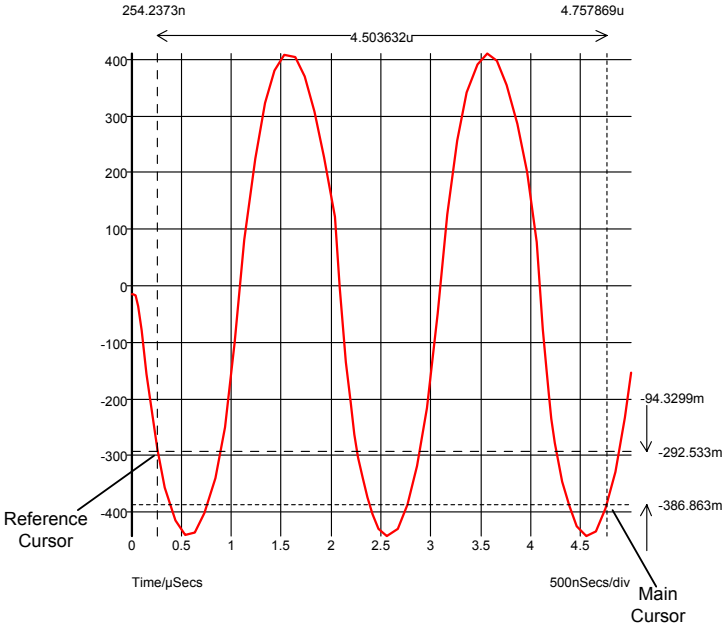
To Unhighlight All Curves

1. Select menu Curves|Unhighlight All Curves.

Graph Cursors

Overview

Graph cursors can be used to make measurements from waveforms. In their default configuration they consist of two dimensioned crosshairs as shown below:



The cursors can be moved horizontally or vertically while tracking an attached curve or they can be picked up and dragged onto another curve.

Cursor Operations

Displaying

To switch on/off the cursor display select the graph menu Cursors|Toggle On/Off.

Moving

Cursors can be moved by any of three methods:

1. Left to right. In this mode the x-position of the cursor is varied while the cursor tracks the curve to which it is attached. To use this method, place the mouse on the vertical crosshair but away from the intersection with the horizontal crosshair. You should see the mouse cursor shape change to a left-right arrow. Press left mouse key and drag.
2. Up-down. Similar to 1. above but instead the y-position is varied. To use this method, place the mouse on the horizontal crosshair but away from the intersection with the vertical crosshair. You should see the mouse cursor shape change to an up-down arrow. Press left mouse key and drag.
3. Drag and drop. In this mode the cursor is picked up and moved without tracking any curve. It can be dropped to any location and will then snap to the nearest curve. To use this method, place the mouse cursor at the intersection of the crosshairs. You will see the cursor shape change to a four-pointed arrow. Press left key and drag to new location.

You can also move the reference cursor in left-right mode using the right mouse button.

Moving Cursors along a Curve

You can move a cursor to a peak or trough using the hot-key defined in the following table

Key	Function
F5	Move main cursor to next peak
shift-F5	Move main cursor to previous peak
F6	Move main cursor to next trough
shift-F6	Move main cursor to previous trough

Key	Function
F7	Move reference cursor to next peak
shift-F7	Move reference cursor to previous peak
F8	Move reference cursor to next trough
shift-F8	Move reference cursor to previous trough

These operations can also be accessed from the graph menu Cursors|Move.

Freezing Cursors

You can freeze the cursors so that they can't be moved accidentally. Select menu Cursors|Freeze/Unfreeze.

Aligning Cursors

Select menu Cursors|Align to align the two cursors so that they have the same y position.

Changing Cursor Style

The crosshair style is the default but there is an alternative style where each cursor is a small cross. Select menu Cursors|Set style to change. This is the same style used with versions 3.1 and earlier.

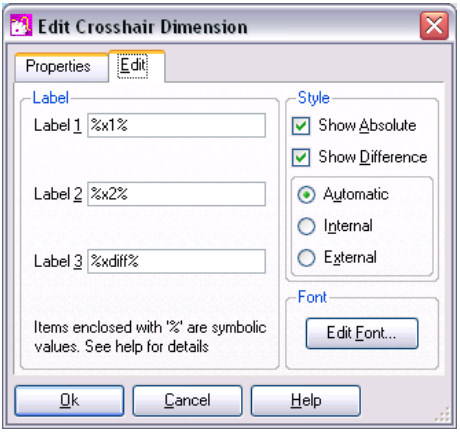
Cursor Readout

There are a number of options as to how the cursors' absolute and relative positions are displayed. Initially all values are displayed as dimensions on the graph. This can be altered in a number of ways:

- You can opt to have just the absolute or just relative readings displayed
- The actual format of the graph readout can be customised. E.g extra text can be added, perhaps something like 'Delay = xxxnS' where xxx is the relative reading.
- The values can optionally be displayed in the status bar with or without the graph readings.

Editing Style or/and Format of Cursor Dimension

Double click on one of the displayed values of the cursor dimension. The following dialog will open:



Edit values as described below

Label

The labels are the three values displayed on the dimension. Label 1 is the value displayed above the reference cursor, label 2 is the value displayed above the main cursor and label 3 is the value displayed as the difference. %x1%, %x2% and %xdiff% are symbolic values that will be substituted with the absolute position of the reference cursor, the absolute position of the main cursor and the difference between them respectively. You can add additional text to these. For example, if you changed label 1 to 'Pulse Start = %x1%' the value displayed for the position of the reference cursor would be prefixed with 'Pulse Start = '.

Style

Show Absolute — Clear check box to disable display of the absolute positions of the cursors.

Show Difference — Clear check box to disable display of relative positions.

Automatic/Internal/External — Style of dimension. Internal means that the arrows will always be displayed between the cursors. External means they will always be displayed outside the cursors. In automatic mode the style will change according to the spacing and position.

Note, if you clear both absolute and difference, you will only be able to restore the display of the dimension by switching cursors off then on again.

Font

Select font used for readout text.

Properties Tab

The properties tab lists all available properties of the CrosshairDimension object. This will probably only be of interest if you are writing custom scripts to manipulate cursor dimensions. More information on this subject can be found in the "Script Reference Manual". This is available as a PDF file on the install CD. A hardcopy version is also available for an additional charge.

Status Bar Readout

You can optionally have the cursor read out in the status bar instead of or as well as the on-graph dimension display. Select menu Cursors|Display Options... and select option as required. This will change the current display.

You can opt to have this preference used as the default. Select command shell menu File|Options|General... then Graph/Probe/Data Analysis tab. Select appropriate option in **Cursor readout** section.

Show Curve Info

The menu Cursors|Show Curve Info will display in the command shell information about the curve which currently has the main cursor attached. The following information is listed:

Curve name	
Source group	The name of the simulation group that was current when the curve was created
Curve id	Only required when accessing curves using script commands.
Run number	If there are multiple curves generated by a Monte Carlo run, this is a number that identifies the run number that created the curve. This number can be used to plot the curve alone and also to identify the seed value used for that Monte Carlo step.

Cursor Functions

There are four functions which return the current positions of the cursors and these can be used in script expressions . These are

XDatum()
YDatum()
XCursor()
YCursor()

See *Script Reference Manual* for details. This is available as a PDF file on the install CD. A hardcopy version is also available for an additional charge.

Curve Measurements

Overview

A number of measurements can be applied to selected curves. The results of these measurements are displayed below the curve legend and are also printed. Some of these measurements can be selected from the tool bar and more can be called directly from the Legend Panel's pop-up menu (Right click in Legend Panel see "Elements of the Graph Window" on page 206). The remainder are listed in a tree structured list that is opened with the legend panel menu More Functions... or by pressing F3.

Note that the legend panel may be resized by dragging its bottom edge with the mouse.

In general to perform a measurement, select the curve or curves then select measurement from tool bar or legend panel popup menu. If there is only one curve displayed, it is not necessary to select it.

Available Measurements

The following table list all the measurements available and how they may be accessed:

Transient measurements	Access from	Description
RMS/Full	menu - RMS menu - More Functions...	RMS for full span
RMS/Per Cycle	Toolbar menu - RMS/cycle menu - More Functions...	RMS for each cycle
RMS/Cursor span	menu - More Functions...	RMS over span defined by cursor positions
RMS - AC coupled/Full	menu - More Functions...	RMS of AC component only for full span
RMS - AC coupled/Per Cycle	menu - More Functions...	RMS of AC component only for each cycle
RMS - AC coupled/ Cursor span	menu - More Functions...	RMS of AC component only over span defined by cursor positions
Mean/Full	menu - Mean menu - More Functions...	Mean for full span
Mean/Per Cycle	Toolbar menu - Mean/cycle menu - More Functions...	Mean for each cycle
Mean/Cursor span	menu - More Functions...	Mean over span defined by cursor positions
Peak/Full	menu - Peak menu - More Functions...	Magnitude and location of peak for full span
Peak/Cursor span	menu - More Functions...	Magnitude and location of peak over span defined by cursor positions
Trough/Full	menu - Trough menu - More Functions...	Magnitude and location of trough for full span
Trough/Cursor span	menu - More Functions...	Magnitude and location of trough over span defined by cursor positions
Peak-Peak/Full	menu - More Functions...	Peak-peak for full span

Transient measurements	Access from	Description
Peak-Peak/Cursor span	menu - More Functions...	Peak-peak over span defined by cursor positions
Rise Time/First edge/10-90%	Toolbar menu - Rise Time menu - More Functions...	Rise time of first rising edge in waveform, measured at 10% and 90% points
Rise Time/First edge/20-80%	menu - More Functions...	Rise time of first rising edge in waveform, measured at 20% and 80% points
Rise Time/First edge/ Custom	menu - More Functions...	Rise time of first rising edge in waveform, measured at user defined points
Rise Time/Cursors define edge/10-90%	menu - More Functions...	Rise time of edge defined by cursor positions, measured at 10% and 90% points
Rise Time/Cursors define edge/20-80%	menu - More Functions...	Rise time of edge defined by cursor positions measured at 20% and 80% points
Rise Time/Cursors define edge/Custom	menu - More Functions...	Rise time of edge defined by cursor positions, measured at user defined points
Fall Time/First edge/10-90%	Toolbar menu - Fall Time menu - More Functions...	Fall time of first falling edge in waveform, measured at 10% and 90% points
Fall Time/First edge/20-80%	menu - More Functions...	Fall time of first falling edge in waveform, measured at 20% and 80% points
Fall Time/First edge/ Custom	menu - More Functions...	Fall time of first falling edge in waveform, measured at user defined points
Fall Time/Cursors define edge/10-90%	menu - More Functions...	Fall time of edge defined by cursor positions, measured at 10% and 90% points
Fall Time/Cursors define edge/20-80%	menu - More Functions...	Fall time of edge defined by cursor positions measured at 20% and 80% points

Transient measurements	Access from	Description
Fall Time/Cursors define edge/Custom	menu - More Functions...	Fall time of edge defined by cursor positions, measured at user defined points
Duty Cycle/Full	menu - More Functions...	Duty cycle measured over full span
Duty Cycle/Cursor span	menu - More Functions...	Duty cycle measured over span defined by cursor positions
Overshoot/Absolute/Auto	menu - More Functions...	Maximum absolute value of overshoot
Overshoot/Relative/Auto	menu - More Functions...	Maximum value of overshoot relative to pulse amplitude
Overshoot/Absolute/ Cursors define edge	menu - More Functions...	Absolute value of overshoot measured at pulse defined by cursor positions
Overshoot/Relative/ Cursors define edge	menu - More Functions...	Value of overshoot relative to pulse amplitude measured at pulse defined by cursor positions
Settling time/1%	menu - More Functions...	Settling time to 1%. Pulse defined by cursor positions
Settling time/0.1%	menu - More Functions...	Settling time to 0.1%. Pulse defined by cursor positions
Settling time/0.01%	menu - More Functions...	Settling time to 0.01%. Pulse defined by cursor positions
Settling time/Custom	menu - More Functions...	Settling time to user defined specification. Pulse defined by cursor positions
Frequency/Full	menu - Frequency menu - More Functions...	Frequency measured over full span.
Frequency/Cursor span	menu - More Functions...	Frequency measured over span defined by cursor positions
Distortion/Full	menu - More Functions...	Distortion measured over full span
Distortion/Cursor span	menu - More Functions...	Distortion measured over span defined by cursor positions

Transient measurements	Access from	Description
AC measurements		
-3dB Low-pass	Toolbar menu - More Functions...	-3dB point assuming a low pass roll off
-3dB High-pass	Toolbar menu - More Functions...	-3dB point assuming a high pass roll off
+3dB Low-pass	menu - More Functions...	+3dB point assuming a response with low frequency lift
+3dB High-pass	menu - More Functions...	+3dB point assuming a response with high frequency lift
Other Measurements		
Temperature coefficient	menu - More Functions...	Average temperature coefficient for temperature sweep only
Total Noise	menu - More Functions...	Integrated noise for noise analysis only

Notes on Curve Measurement Algorithms

Some of the measurements algorithms make some assumptions about the wave shape being analysed. These work well in most cases but are not fool-proof. The following notes describe how the algorithms work and what their limitations are.

All the measurement algorithms are implemented by internal scripts. The full source of these scripts can be found on the install CD.

'per Cycle' and Frequency Measurements

These measurements assume that the curve being analysed is repetitive and of a fixed frequency. The results may not be very meaningful if the waveform is of varying frequency or is of a burst nature. The /cycle measurements calculate over as many whole cycles as possible.

Each of these measurements use an algorithm to determine the location of x-axis crossings of the waveform. The algorithm is quite sophisticated and works very reliably. The bulk of this algorithm is concerned with finding an optimum base line to use for x-axis crossings.

The per cycle measurements are useful when the simulated span does not cover a whole number of cycles. Measurements such as RMS on a repetitive waveform only

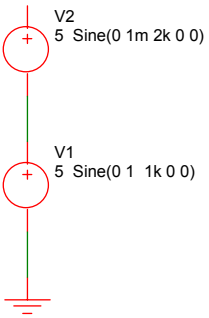
have a useful meaning if calculated over a whole number of cycles. If the simulated span does cover a whole number of cycles, then the full version of the measurement will yield an accurate result.

Rise and Fall Time, and Overshoot Measurements

These measurements have to determine the waveforms pulse peaks. A histogram method is used to do this. Flat areas of a waveform produce peaks on a histogram. The method is very reliable and is tolerant of a large number of typical pulse artefacts such as ringing and overshoot. For some wave-shapes, the pulse peaks are not well enough defined to give a reliable answer. In these cases the measurement will fail and an error will be reported.

Distortion

This calculates residue after the fundamental has been removed using an FFT based method. This algorithm needs a reasonable number of cycles to obtain an accurate result. The frequency of the fundamental is displayed in the message window. Note that most frequency components between 0Hz and just before the second harmonic are excluded. The precision of the method can be tested by performing the measurement on a test circuit such as:



The signal on the pos side of V2 has 0.1% distortion. Use V1 as your main test source (assuming you are testing an amplifier) then after the simulation is complete, check that the distortion measurement of V2 is 0.1%. If it is inaccurate, you will need either to increase the number of measurement cycles or reduce the maximum time step or both. You can adjust the amplitude of V2 appropriately if the required resolution is greater or less than 0.1%.

Note, that in general, accuracies of better than around 1% will require tightening of the simulation tolerance parameters. In most cases just reducing RELTOL (relative tolerance) is sufficient. This can be done from the Options tab of the Choose Analysis Dialog (Simulator|Choose Analysis...). For a more detailed discussion on accuracy see the chapter “Convergence and Accuracy” in the *Simulator Reference Manual*.

Frequency Response Calculations

These must find the passband for their calculations. Like rise and fall a histogram approach is used to find its approximate range and magnitude. Further processing is performed to find its exact magnitude.

Note that the algorithms allow a certain amount of ripple in the passband which will work in most cases but will fail if this in excess of about 3dB.

Note that the frequency response measurements are general purpose and are required to account for a wide variety of responses including those with both high and low pass elements as well as responses with band pass ripple. This requirement compromises accuracy in simpler cases. So, for example, to calculate the -3dB point of a low pass response that extends to DC, the 0dB point is taken to be a point midway between the start frequency and the frequency at which roll-off starts. A better location would be the start frequency but this would be inaccurate if there was a high pass roll off at low frequencies. Taking the middle point is a compromise which produces good - but not necessarily perfect - results in a wide range of cases. To increase accuracy in the case described above, start the analysis at a lower frequency, this will lower the frequency at which the 0dB reference is taken.

Plots from curves

Two plots can be made directly from selected curves. These are described below

FFT of Selected Curve

With a single curve selected, from legend popup menu select
Plot FFT of Selected Curve. A new graph sheet will be opened with the FFT of the curve displayed. To plot an FFT of the curve over the span defined by the cursor locations select Plot FFT of Selected Curve (Cursor span).

Smoothed Curves

With a single curve selected, from legend popup menu select More Functions... then under the Plot branch select LP Filter and choose a time constant. Press OK and a new curve will be displayed showing a smoothed version of the original curve.

This system uses a first order digital IIR filter to perform the filtering action.

Graph Zooming and Scrolling

Zooming with the Mouse

To zoom in on a portion of a graph, place the cursor at the top left of the area you wish to view, press and hold the left mouse key then move cursor to bottom right of area and release left key. The axes limits will be modified appropriately.

To view whole graph again select the graph popup Zoom|Full or toolbar button.

Zooming with the Keyboard

F12 to zoom out
shift-F12 to zoom in
HOME returns graph to full view. (Same as graph popup Zoom|Full)

Recovering an Earlier Zoom

Press the Undo Zoom toolbar button to recover earlier zoom or scroll positions.

Scrolling with the Keyboard

up, down, left and right cursor keys will scroll the active graph.

Zooming Selected Axes.

When using the mouse to zoom graphs, all curves on the same grid are normally zoomed together. To zoom only the curve on the selected grid, press and hold the shift key while selecting the zoom area with the mouse.

Notes If you add a new curve to a graph which has been zoomed, the axes limits will not change to accommodate that curve; if the new curve does not lie within the zoomed area you will not see it. Selecting graph popup Zoom|Full or pressing HOME key restores the graph to auto-scaling and the limits will always adjust so that all curves are visible even ones subsequently added.

Zoom to Fit Y-axis

To zoom in the y-axis only to fit the displayed x-axis, press the Fit Height toolbar button:

Copying to the Clipboard

Overview

SIMetrix offers facilities to copy both graph data and the graph's graphical image to the system clipboard. This provides the ability to export simulation results to other applications. The data - for example - may be exported to a spreadsheet application for custom processing, while the graphical image may be exported to a word processor for the preparation of documents.

SIMetrix may also import data in a tabulated ASCII format. This feature may be used to display data from a spreadsheet allowing, for example, a comparison between measured and simulated data.

As well as the system clipboard, SIMetrix also uses an internal clipboard to which graph curves may be copied. This provides an efficient method of moving or copying curves to a new graph sheet.

Copy Data to the Clipboard

1. Select the graphs you wish to export
2. Select the menu Edit|Copy ASCII Data

The data will be copied in a tabulated ASCII format. The first line will contain the names of the curves, while the remaining lines will contain the curves' data arranged in columns

Copying Graphics to the Clipboard

Note that this feature is not currently available in the Linux environment.

There are three different ways a graph can be copied to the clipboard. Use the menus under Edit|Copy Graphics. These are detailed below

Colour	Copies graph to clipboard in full colour. The curve legends identify the curves using coloured squares similar to how the graph is displayed on the screen.
Monochrome	Copies graph to clipboard in monochrome. Curves are distinguished using varying markers and line styles. Curve legends distinguished curves with a straight line example
Colour with markers	Copies graph to clipboard in full colour but also differentiates curves using markers and line styles. Curve legends distinguished curves with a straight line example.

Paste Data from the Clipboard

SIMetrix can plot curves using tabulated ASCII data from the clipboard. The format is the same as used for exporting data. See "Copy Data to the Clipboard" above for more details.

Using the Internal Clipboard

The menus Edit|Copy, Edit|Cut and Edit|Paste all use the internal clipboard. These menus are intended to allow the moving or copying of curves to new graphs. Note that these menus do not use the system clipboard at all. See above sections for details on how to copy and paste from the system clipboard.

The internal clipboard uses an efficient method for transferring curves that uses very little memory even if the curve is large. Also, if you copy a curve, the data itself is not copied internally; the two curves just reference the same data. This makes copying a memory efficient operation.

To Move a Curve to a New Graph Sheet

1. Select the curve or curves you wish to move.
2. Select menu Edit|Cut.
3. Either create a new graph sheet to receive the new curves (use F10) or switch to an existing graph sheet.

4. Select menu Edit|Paste.

To Copy a Curve to a New Graph Sheet

1. Select the curve or curves you wish to move.
2. Select menu Edit|Copy.
3. Either create a new graph sheet to receive the new curves (use F10) or switch to an existing graph sheet.
4. Select menu Edit|Paste.

Annotating a Graph

A number of objects are available to annotate graphs for documentation purposes. These are:

- Curve Marker. A single arrow, line and item of text to identify a curve or feature of a curve
- Legend Box. Box of text that lists all the names of curves currently displayed.
- Text Box. Box containing text message.
- Free Text. Similar to text box but without border and background.
- Caption. As free text but designed for single line heading.

Curve Markers

Placing

To place a curve marker, select menu Annotate|Add Curve Marker. A single curve marker should appear in the right hand margin of the graph.

Moving

To move it, place the mouse cursor at the arrow head - you should see the cursor shape change to a four pointed arrow - then left click and drag to your desired location. When you release the marker it will snap to the nearest curve.

Moving Label

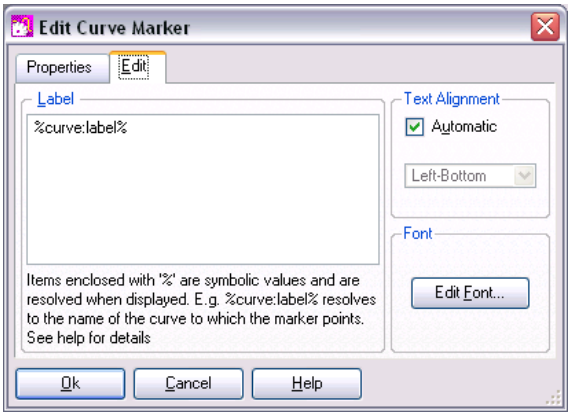
To move the text label alone, place the mouse cursor to lie within the text, then left click and drag. You will notice the alignment of the text with respect to the arrowed line change as you move the text around the arrow. You can fix a particular alignment if preferred by changing the marker's properties. See below.

Deleting

First select the marker by a single left click in the text. The text should change colour to blue. Now press delete key or menu Annotate|Delete Selected Object.

Editing Properties

Double click the marker's label or select then menu Annotate|Edit Selected Object. The following dialog will open:



Label

Text of the marker's label. %curve:label% automatically resolves to the curve's label. If the curve name is edited with menu Curves|Rename curve this value will reflect the change. You can of course enter any text in this box.

Text Alignment

This is how the label is aligned to the arrowed line. If set to automatic the alignment will be chosen to be the most appropriate for the relative position of the label and the arrowhead. Uncheck automatic and select from the list to fix at a particular alignment.

Font

Press Edit Font... to change font for text.

Other Properties

Snap To Curve You can switch off the action that causes curve markers to always snap to a curve. Select Properties tab then double click on SnapToCurve item. Select Off. You will now be able to move the curve marker to any location.

Legend Box

Placing

Select menu Annotate|Add Legend Box. A box listing all the curve names will appear at the top left of the graph.

Moving

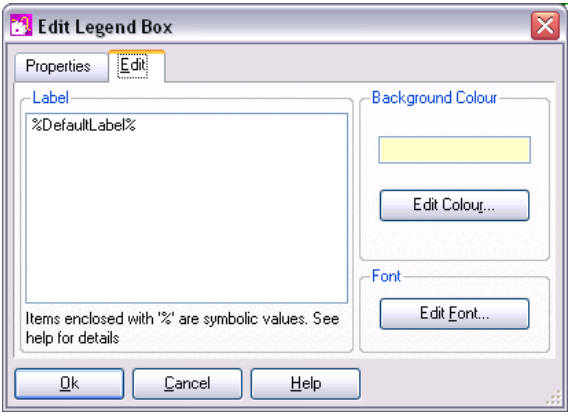
Place cursor inside the box and drag to new location.

Resizing

You can alter the maximum height of the box by placing the mouse cursor on it's bottom edge and dragging. The text in the box will automatically reposition to comply with the new maximum height.

Editing Properties

Double click on the box or select then menu Annotate|Edit Selected Object. The following dialog will be opened:



Label

Lists each label in the box. These are usually %DefaultLabel% which resolves to the name of the referenced curve. To edit, double click on the desired item.You can also enter the symbols %X1% and %Y1% which represent the x and y co-ordinates of the marker respectively. These can be combined with other text in any suitable manner. For example: 'Voltage @ %X1%S = %Y1%' might resolve to something like 'Voltage at 10u = 2.345'. The values of %X1% and %Y1% will automatically update if you move the marker.

Background Colour

Select button Edit Colour... to change background colour. To change the default colour select command shell menu File|Options|Colour... then select item Text Box. Edit colour as required.

Font

Select button Edit Font... to change font. To change the default font select command shell menu File|Options|Font... then select item Legend Box. Edit font as required.

Text Box

Placing

Select menu Annotate|Text Box. Enter required text then Ok. You can use the symbolic constants %date%, %time%, and %version% to represent creation date, creation time and the product version respectively.

Moving

Place cursor inside the box and drag to new location.

Editing Properties

Double click on the box or select then menu Annotate|Edit Selected Object. A dialog like the one shown for legend boxes (see above) will be displayed

Note when editing the label, you can use the symbolic constants as detailed in "Placing" above.

Caption and Free Text

The Caption and Free Text objects are essentially the same, the only difference is their initial font size and position.

Placing

Select menu Annotate|Caption or Annotate|Free Text. Enter required text then Ok. You can use the symbolic constants %date%, %time%, and %version% to represent creation date, creation time and the product version respectively.

Moving

Place cursor inside the box and drag to new location.

Editing Properties

Double click on the box or select then menu Annotate|Edit Selected Object. This will open a dialog similar to the one shown for curve markers but without the Automatic option for text alignment.

Saving Graphs

You can save a graph complete with all its curves, cursor settings and annotations to a binary file for later retrieval. Note that all the graph data is stored not just that needed for the current view. If a long run was needed to create the graph, the file could be quite large.

Saving

Select command shell menu File|Graph|Save As... or graph menu File|Save As... to save a graph that has never been saved before. To update a saved graph use command shell menu File|Graph|Save or graph menu File|Save

Restoring

Select command shell menu File|Graph|Open... or, if a graph window already exists, graph menu File|Open...

Viewing DC Operating Point Results

Schematic Annotation

You can annotate the schematic with the results of a DC operating point analysis. This requires special markers to be placed on the schematic. You can instruct SIMetrix to place markers at every node or you can place them manually.

To place a voltage marker manually use the schematic popup: Bias Annotation|Place Marker or use control-M. The text displaying the value will be placed on the *sharp* side of the marker which to start with points up. If you are placing the marker on a vertical wire you might wish the text to be on one side. To do this, rotate the marker before placing by pressing the rotate toolbar button or the F5 key.

To place a current marker use the menu Place|Bias Annotation|Place Current Marker.

To place markers as all nodes select Bias Annotation|Auto Place Markers. This does however clutter up the schematic and you may prefer to place them manually.

To display the values select Bias Annotation|Update Values. These values are automatically updated after each simulation run.

The menu Bias Annotation|Delete Markers deletes all the markers and Bias Annotation|Hide Values removes the text but leaves the markers in place.

Displaying Device Operating Point Info

The menu Bias Annotation|Display Device Bias Info will display in the message window the node voltages, pin currents and total power dissipation for the selected schematic component. Note that power dissipation is calculated from the node voltages and currents.

List File Data

A great deal of information about each device in the circuit can be obtained from the list file. Use command shell menu Graphs and Data|View List File or Graphs and Data|Edit List File to see it. Also see the Simulator Reference Manual for more information about the list file.

Other Methods of Obtaining Bias Data

You can also display a voltage or current in the command shell without placing any component on the schematic. For voltages, place the mouse cursor over the point of interest and press control-N. For currents, place the cursor over the component pin and press control-I.

Bias Annotation in SIMPLIS

The above apply to operation in both SIMetrix and SIMPLIS modes. When in SIMPLIS mode the dc values displayed represent the results at time=0. For AC analysis this will be the time=0 value for its associated POP analysis.

Bias Annotation Display Precision

By default, bias annotation values are displayed with a precision of 6 digits. To change this, select command shell menu File|Options|General... then edit the value in box Bias Annotation Precision in the Schematic sheet.

Bias Annotation and Long Transient Runs

If you are running a long transient analysis and plan to use bias annotation extensively, you might like to set a simulator option that will make this process more efficient. The simulator option is:

```
.OPTIONS FORCETRANOPGROUP
```

This forces a separate data group and separate data file to be created for the transient analysis bias point data. Unless tstart>0 bias point data is usually taken from t=0 values. The problem with this approach is that to view a single value, the entire vector has to be loaded from the data file to memory. This isn't a problem if the run is only a 100 points or so, but could be a problem if it was 100,000 points. It can take a long time to load that amount of data. By specifying this option, the bias point data is stored separately and only a single value needs to be read from the file. This is much more efficient.

Future versions may set this option by default.

Saving Data

Saving the Data of a Simulation

The simulator usually saves all its data to a binary file stored in a temporary location. This data will eventually get deleted. To save this data permanently, select menu File|Data|Save.... You will be offered two options:

Move existing data file to new location

This will move the data file to location that you specify and thus change its status from temporary to permanent. As long as the new location is in the same volume (=disk partition) as the original location, this operation will be very quick. However, if the data is from the most recent simulation, SIMetrix needs to 'unhook' it in order to be

able to move the file. This will make it impossible to resume the simulation (if paused) or restart the simulation (transient only).

Note that if you specify a location on a different volume as the original data, then the file's data has to be copied and for large data files, this will take a long time.

Make new copy

This makes a fresh copy of the data. This option does not suffer from the drawbacks of moving the file but if the data file is large can take a very long time.

Restoring SImulation Data

Select menu File|Data|Load.... Navigate to a directory where you have previously saved data files.

You can also reload data from temporary files using menu File|Data|Load Temporary Data.... Whether or not there will be any files available to opened depends on the temporary data file delete options. See "Graph/Probe/Data Analysis" on page 319 for information about these options.

The error "The process cannot access the file because it is being used by another process" means that the temporary data file is still in use. Unless the file is in use by another instance of SIMetrix you will be able to use its data by selecting its associated group. Use menu Graphs and Data Analysis|Change Data Group....

Performance Analysis and Histograms

Overview

When running multi-step analyses which generate multiple curves, it is often useful to be able to plot some characteristic of each curve against the stepped value. For example, suppose you wished to investigate the load response of a power supply circuit and wanted to plot the fall in output voltage vs transient current load. To do this you would set up a transient analysis to repeat a number of times with a varying load current. (See "Multi-step Analyses" on page 188 to learn how to do this). After the run is complete you can plot a complete set of curves, take cursor measurements and manually produce a plot of voltage drop vs. load current. This is of course is quite a time consuming and error prone activity.

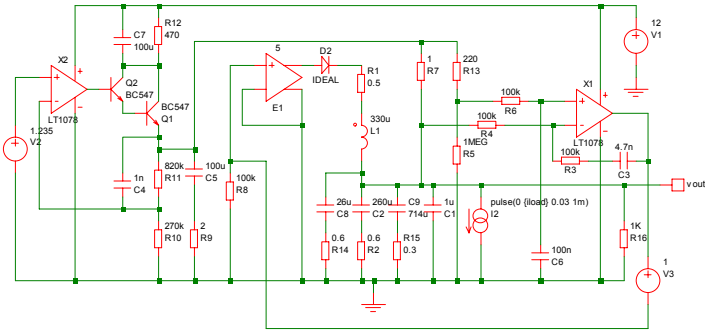
Fortunately, SIMetrix has a means of automating this procedure. A range of functions - sometimes known as *goal functions* - are available that perform a computation on a complete curve to create a single value. By applying one or a combination of these functions on the results of a multi-step analysis, a curve of the goal function versus the stepped variable may be created.

This feature is especially useful for Monte Carlo analysis in which case you would most likely wish to plot a histogram.

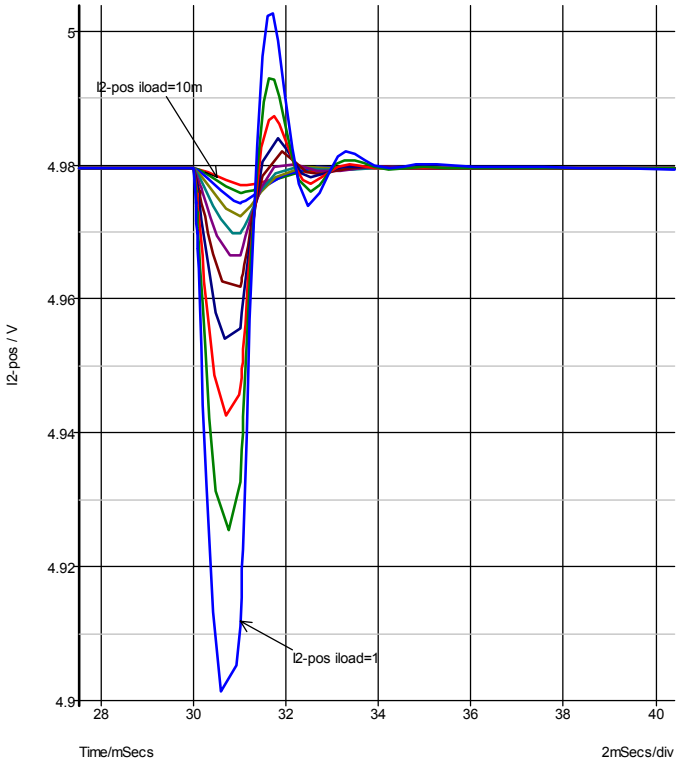
We start with an example and in fact it is a power supply whose load response we wish to investigate.

Example

The following circuit is a model of a hybrid linear-switching 5V PSU. See Work\Examples\HybridPSU\5vpsu_v1.sxsch



I2 provides a current that is switched on for 1mS after a short delay. A multi-step analysis is set up so that the load current is varied from 10mA to 1A. The output for all runs is:

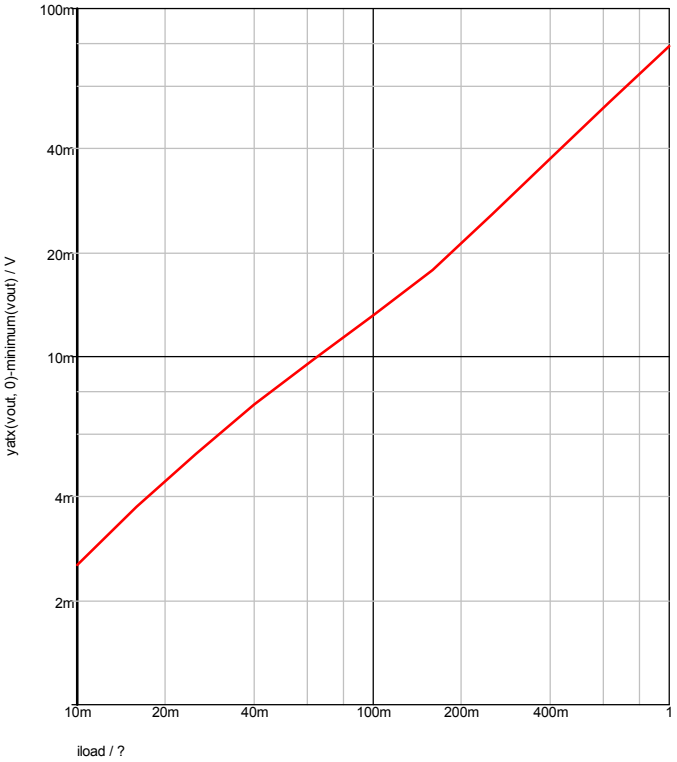


We will now plot the a graph of the voltage drop vs the load current. This is the procedure:

1. Select menu Probe|Performance Analysis...
2. You will see a dialog box very similar to that shown in "Plotting an Arbitrary Expression" on page 222. In the expression box you must enter an expression that resolves to a single value for each curve. For this example we use:

   ```
   yatx(vout, 0)-minimum(vout)
   ```

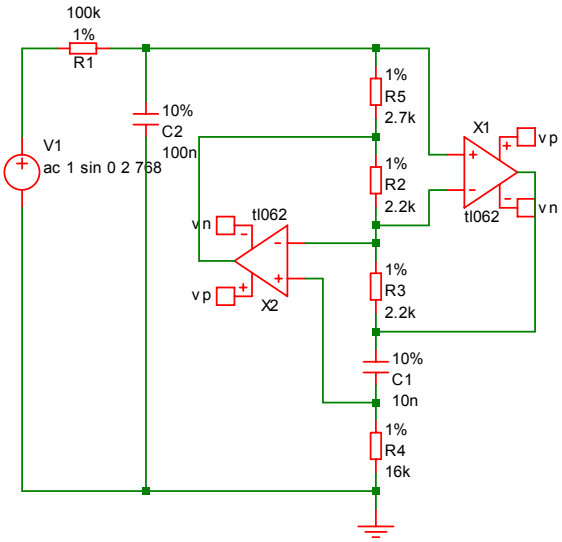
   yatx(vout, 0) returns the value of vout when time=0. minimum(vout) returns the minimum value found on the curve. The end result is the drop in voltage when the load pulse occurs. Press OK and the following curve should appear:



Histograms

The procedure for histograms is the same except that you should use the menu Probe|Histogram... instead. Here is another example.

This is a design for an active band-pass filter using the simulated inductor method. See Examples\MonteCarlo\768Hz_bandpass.sxsch. We want to plot a histogram of the centre frequency of the filter.



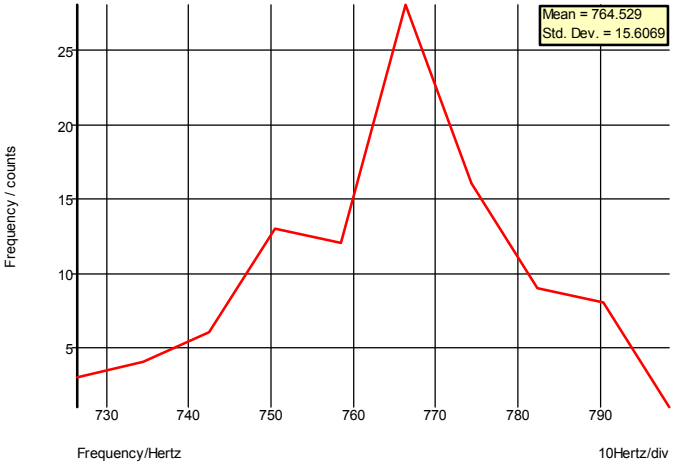
The example circuit has been set up to do 100 runs. This won't take long to run, less than 10 seconds on most machines. This is the procedure:

1. Run the simulation using F9 or equivalent menu.
2. Select menu Probe|Histogram...
3. Left click on the output of the filter. This is the junction of R1 and C2.
4. You should see R1_P appear in the expression box. We must now modify this with a goal function that returns the centre frequency. The function CentreFreq will do this. This measures the centre frequency by calculating the half way point between the intersections at some specified value below the peak. Typically you would use 3dB.

   Modify the value in the expression box so that it reads:

   ```
   CentreFreq(R1_p, 3)
   ```

5. At this stage you can optionally modify the graph setting to enter your own axis labels etc. Now close the box. This is what you should see:



Note that the mean and standard deviation are automatically calculated.

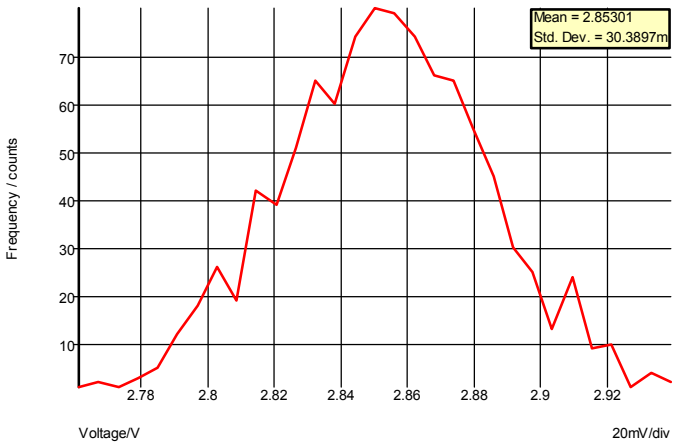
Histograms for Single Step Monte Carlo Sweeps

An example of this type of run is shown on page 173. These runs produce only a single curve with each point in the curve the result of the Monte Carlo analysis. With these runs you do not need to apply a goal function, just enter the name of the signal you wish to analyse. To illustrate this we will use the same example as shown on page 173.

1. Open the example circuit Examples\Sweep\AC_Param_Monte
2. Run simulation.
3. Select menu Probe|Plot Histogram...
4. Left click on '+' pin of the differential amplifier E1. You should see R4_N appear in the box. Now enter a '-' after this then click on the '-' pin of the E1. This is what should be in the box:

   ```
   R4_N-R3_N
   ```

5. Close box. You should see something like this:



This is a histogram showing the distribution of the gain of the amplifier at 100kHz.

Goal Functions

A range of functions are available to process curve data. Some of these are *primitive* and others use the user defined function mechanism. Primitive functions are compiled into the binary executable file while user defined functions are defined as scripts and are installed at functions at start up. User defined functions can be modified and you may also define your own. For more information refer to the *Script Reference Manual*. This is available as a PDF file on the install CD. A hardcopy version is also available for an additional charge.

The functions described here aren't the only functions that may be used in the expression for performance analysis. They are simply the ones that can convert the array data that the simulator generates into a single value with some useful meaning. There are many other functions that process simulation vectors to produce another vector for example: log; sqrt; sin; cos and many more. These are defined in “Function Reference” on page 293.

Of particular interest is the Truncate function described on page 303. This selects data over a given X range so you can apply a goal function to work on only a specific part of the data.

Primitive Functions

The following primitive functions may be used as goal functions. Not all actually return a single value. Some return an array and the result would need to be indexed. Maxima is an example.

Name	Description	Page
Maxima(real [, real, string])	Returns array of all maximum turning points	299
Maximum(real/complex [, real, real])	Returns the largest value in a given range.	300
Mean(real/complex)	Returns the mean of all values. (You should not use this for transient analysis data as it fails to take account of the varying step size. Use Mean1 instead.)	300
Mean1(real [, real, real])	Finds the true mean accounting for the interval between data points	300
Minima(real [, real, string])	Returns array of all minimum turning points.	300
Minimum(real/complex)	Returns the largest value in a given range.	301
RMS1(real [, real, real])	Finds RMS value of data	302
SumNoise(real [, real, real])	Integrates noise data to find total noise in the specified range.	302
XFromY(real, real [, real, real])	Returns an array of X values at a given Y value.	303
YFromX(real, real [, real])	Returns an array of Y values at a given X value.	304

User Defined Functions

The following functions are defined using the user defined functions mechanism. They are defined as scripts but behave like functions.

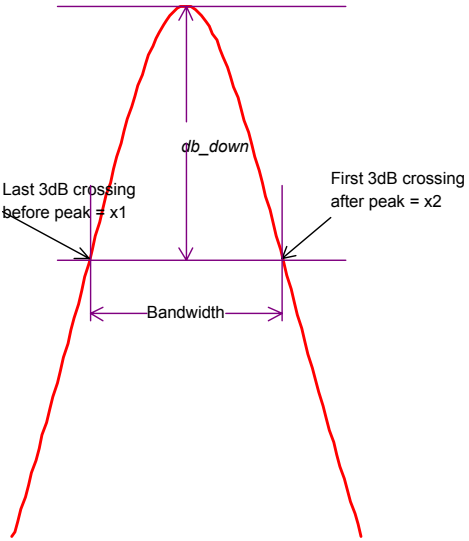
Name	Description	Page
BPBW(data, db_down)	Band-pass bandwidth.	263
Bandwidth(data, db_down)	Same as BPBW	263
CentreFreq(data, db_down)	Centre frequency	264
Duty(data, [threshold])	Duty cycle of first pulse	264
Fall(data, [start, end])	Fall time	265
Frequency(data, [threshold])	Average frequency	266

Name	Description	Page
HPBW(data, db_down)	High pass bandwidth	266
LPBW(data, db_down)	Low pass bandwidth	267
Overshoot(data, [start, end])	Overshoot	267
PeakToPeak(data, [start, end])	Peak to Peak	268
Period(data, [threshold])	Period of first cycle.	268
PulseWidth(data, [threshold])	Pulse width of first cycle	268
Rise(data, [start, end])	Rise time	269
XatNthY(data, yValue, n)	X value at the Nth Y crossing	269
XatNthYn(data, yValue, n)	X value at the Nth Y crossing with negative slope	269
XatNthYp(data, yValue, n)	X value at the Nth Y crossing with positive slope	269
XatNthYpct(data, yValue, n)	X value at the Nth Y crossing. y value specified as a percentage.	270
YatX(data, xValue)	Y value at xValue	270
YatXpct(data, xValue)	Y value at xValue specified as a percentage	270

BPBW, Bandwidth

BPBW(*data*, *db_down*)

Finds the bandwidth of a band pass response. This is illustrated by the following graph



Function return x2-x1 as shown in the above diagram.

Note that *data* is assumed to be raw simulation data and may be complex. It must not be in dBs.

Implemented by built-in script uf_bandwidth. See install CD for source.

CentreFreq, CenterFreq

CentreFreq(*data, db_down*)

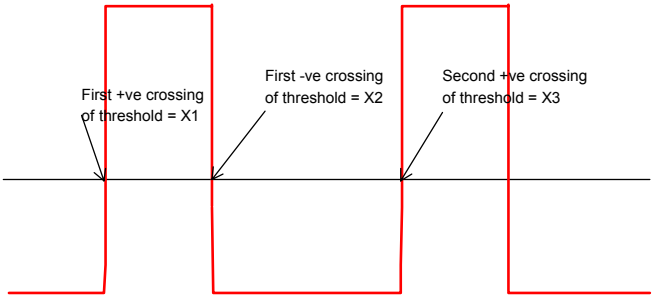
See diagram in "BPBW, Bandwidth" above. Function returns (x1+x2)/2

Both British and North American spellings of centre (center) are accepted.

Implemented by built-in script uf_centre_freq. See install CD for source.

Duty

Duty(*data*, [*threshold*])



Function returns (X2-X1)/(X3-X1)
X1, X2 and X3 are defined in the above graph.

Default value for *threshold* is

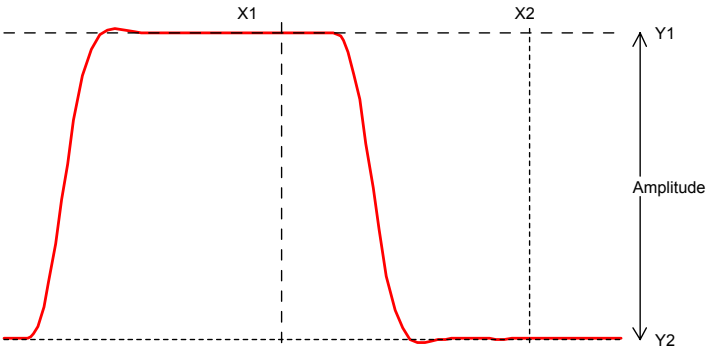
(Ymax+Ymin)/2

Where Ymax = largest value in *data* and Ymin in smallest value in *data*.

Implemented by built-in script uf_duty. See install CD for source.

Fall

Fall(*data*, [*xStart, xEnd*])



Function returns the 10% to 90% fall time of the first falling edge that occurs between x1 and x2. The 10% point is at y threshold Y1 + (Y2-Y1)*0.1 and the 90% point is at y threshold Y1 + (Y2-Y1)*0.9.

If *xStart* is specified, X1=*xStart* otherwise X1 = x value of first point in data.
If *xEnd* is specified, X2=*xEnd* otherwise X2 = x value of last point in data.
If *xStart* is specified, Y1=y value at *xStart* otherwise Y1 = maximum y value in data.

If *xEnd* is specified, Y2=y value at *xEnd* otherwise Y2 = minimum y value in data.

Implemented by built-in script uf_fall. See install CD for source.

Frequency

Frequency(*data*, [*threshold*])

Finds the average frequency of *data*.

Returns:

$(n-1)/(x_n-x_1)$

Where:
n = the number of positive crossings of *threshold*
x_n = the x value of the nth positive crossing of *threshold*
x_1 = the x value of the first positive crossing of *threshold*

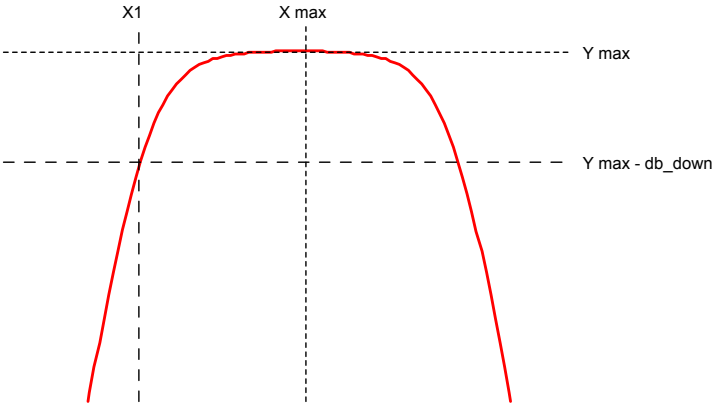
If *threshold* is not specified a default value of (ymax+ymin)/2 is used where ymax is the largest value in data and ymin is the smallest value.

Implemented by built-in script uf_frequency. See install CD for source.

HPBW

HPBW(*data*, *db_down*)

Finds high pass bandwidth.



Returns the value of X1 as shown in the above diagram.

Y max is the y value at the maximum point.
X max is the x value at the maximum point.

X1 is the x value of the first point on the curve that crosses (Y max - db_down) starting at X max and scanning *right to left*.

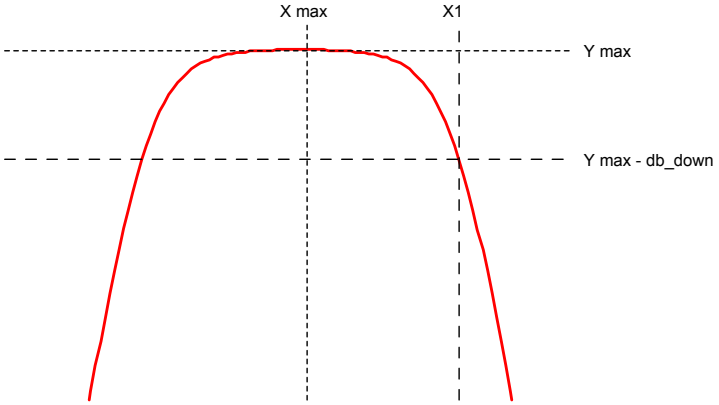
Note that *data* is assumed to be raw simulation data and may be complex. It must not be in dBs.

Implemented by built-in script uf_hpbw. See install CD for source.

LPBW

LPBW(*data*, *db_down*)

Finds low pass bandwidth



Returns the value of X1 as shown in the above diagram.

Y max is the y value at the maximum point.
X max is the x value at the maximum point.
X1 is the x value of the first point on the curve that crosses (Y max - db_down) starting at X max and scanning left to right.

Note that *data* is assumed to be raw simulation data and may be complex. It must not be in dBs.

Implemented by built-in script uf_lpbw. See install CD for source.

Overshoot

Overshoot(*data*, [*xStart*, *xEnd*])

Finds overshoot in percent.

Returns:

(*yMax-yStart*)/(*yStart-yEnd*)

Where

yMax is the largest value found in the interval between *xStart* and *xEnd*.
yStart is the y value at *xStart*.
yEnd is the y value at *xEnd*.

If *xStart* is omitted it defaults to the x value of the first data point.
If *xEnd* is omitted it defaults to the x value of the last data point.

Implemented by built-in script uf_overshoot. See install CD for source.

PeakToPeak

PeakToPeak(*data*, [x*Start*, x*End*])

Returns the difference between the maximum and minimum values found in the data within the interval *xStart* to *xEnd*.

If *xStart* is omitted it defaults to the x value of the first data point.
If *xEnd* is omitted it defaults to the x value of the last data point.

Implemented by built-in script uf_peak_to_peak. See install CD for source.

Period

Period(*data*, [*threshold*])

Returns the period of the data.

Refer to diagram for the "Duty" function on page 264. The Period function returns:

X3 - X1

Default value for *threshold* is

(Ymax+Ymin)/2

Where Ymax = largest value in *data* and Ymin in smallest value in *data*.

Implemented by built-in script uf_period. See install CD for source.

PulseWidth

PulseWidth(*data*, [*threshold*])

Returns the pulse width of the first pulse in the data.

Refer to diagram for the "Duty" function on page 264. The PulseWidth function returns:

X2 - X1

Default value for *threshold* is

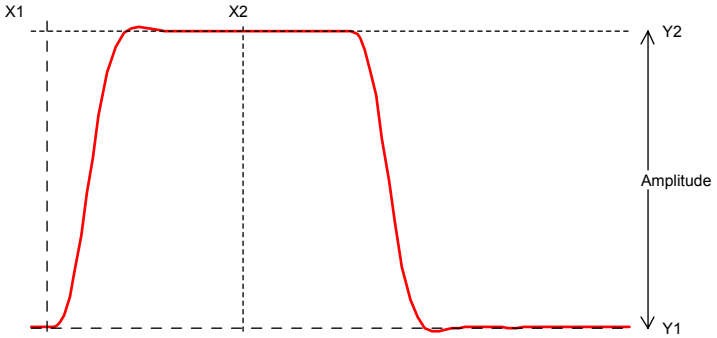
(Ymax+Ymin)/2

Where Ymax = largest value in *data* and Ymin in smallest value in *data*.

Implemented by built-in script uf_pulse_width. See install CD for source.

Rise

Rise(*data*, [*xStart, xEnd*])



Function returns the 10% to 90% rise time of the first rising edge that occurs between x1 and x2. The 10% point is at y threshold Y1 + (Y2-Y1)*0.1 and the 90% point is at y threshold Y1 + (Y2-Y1)*0.9.

If *xStart* is specified, X1=*xStart* otherwise X1 = x value of first point in data.
If *xEnd* is specified, X2=*xEnd* otherwise X2 = x value of last point in data.
If *xStart* is specified, Y1=y value at *xStart* otherwise Y1 = maximum y value in data.
If *xEnd* is specified, Y2=y value at *xEnd* otherwise Y2 = minimum y value in data.

XatNthY

XatNthY(*data*, *yValue*, *n*)

Returns the x value of the data where it crosses *yValue* for the *n*th time.

XatNthYn

XatNthYn(*data*, *yValue*, *n*)

Returns the x value of the data where it crosses *yValue* for the *n*th time with a negative slope.

XatNthYp

XatNthYp(*data*, *yValue*, *n*)

Returns the x value of the data where it crosses *yValue* for the *n*th time with a positive slope.

XatNthYpct

XatNthYpct(*data*, *yValue*, *n*)

As XatNthY but with *yValue* specified as a percentage of the maximum and minimum values found in the data.

YatX

YatX(*data*, *xValue*)

Returns the y value of the data at x value = *xValue*.

YatXpct

As YatX but with *xValue* specified as a percentage of the total x interval of the data.

Data Import and Export

SIMetrix provides the capability to export simulation data to a file in text form and also to import data from a file in text form. This makes it possible to process simulation data using another application such as a spreadsheet or custom program.

SIMetrix may also import data in SPICE3 raw file format. Some other simulation products can output in this format.

Importing SPICE3 Raw Files

1. Select command shell menu File|Data|Load...
2. In Files of type select SPICE3 Raw Files
3. Select file to import.

SIMetrix will read the entire file and write its data out to a temporary .sxdat file in the same way as it does when saving its own simulation data. The data read from the raw file is buffered in RAM in order to maximise the efficiency of the saved data. SIMetrix will use up to 10% of system RAM for this purpose.

Importing Data

To import data use the OpenGroup command (page 286) with the /text switch. E.g. at the command line type:

```
OpenGroup /text data.txt
```

This will read in the file data.txt and create a new group called text*n*. See "Data Files Text Format" on page 271 below for details of format.

Note that if you create the file using another program such as a spreadsheet, the above command may fail if the file is still open in the other application. Closing the file in the other application will resolve this.

Exporting SPICE3 Raw Files

SIMetrix can export all simulation data to a SPICE3 raw file. This format may be accepted by third party waveform viewers.

To export a SPICE3 raw file, proceed as follows:

1. Select menu File|Data|Save...
2. Under Save as type: choose “SPICE3 Raw Files”.

Note that various applications use slightly different variants of this format. By default, SIMetrix outputs the data in a form that is the same as the standard unmodified SPICE3 program. This can be modified using the option setting “ExportRawFormat”. Use the Set command to set this value. See “Set” on page 289 for details. Set this value to ‘spice3’, ‘spectre’ or ‘other’.

Exporting Data

To export data, use the Show command (page 289) with the /file switch. E.g

```
Show /file data.txt vout r1_p q1#c
```

will output to data.txt the vectors vout, r1_p, and q1#c. The values will be output in a form compatible OpenGroup /text.

Vector Names

In the above example the vector names are vout, r1_p and q1#c. If you simulate a schematic, the names used for voltage signals are the same as the node names in the netlist which in turn are assigned by the schematic's netlist generator. To find out what these names are, place the mouse cursor on the node of interest on the schematic then press control-S. The node name - and therefore the vector name - will be displayed in the command shell. A similar procedure can be used for currents. Place the mouse cursor on the device pin of interest and press control-P.

Launching Other Applications

Data import and export makes it possible to process simulation data using other applications. SIMetrix has a facility to launch other programs using the Shell command. You could therefore write a script to export data, process it with your own program then read the processed data back in for plotting. To do this you must specify the /wait switch for the Shell command to force SIMetrix to wait until the external application has finished. E.g.

```
Shell /wait procdata.exe
```

will launch the program procdata.exe and will not return until procdata.exe has closed.

Data Files Text Format

SIMetrix has the ability to read in data in text form using the OpenGroup command (page 286). This makes it possible to use SIMetrix to graph data generated by other

applications such as a spreadsheet. This can be useful to compare simulated and measured results.

There are two alternative formats.
The first is simply a series of values separated by white space. This will be read in as a single vector with a reference equal to its index.

The second format is as follows:

A text data file may contain any number of *blocks*. Each *block* has a *header* followed by a list of *datapoints*. The *header* and each *datapoint* must be on one line.

The *header* is of the form:
reference_nameydata1_name[*ydata2_name* ...]

Each *datapoint* must be of the form:
reference_valueydata1_value[*ydata2_value* ...]

The number of entries in each *datapoint* must correspond to the number of entries in the *header*.
The *reference* is the x data (e.g. time or frequency).

Example

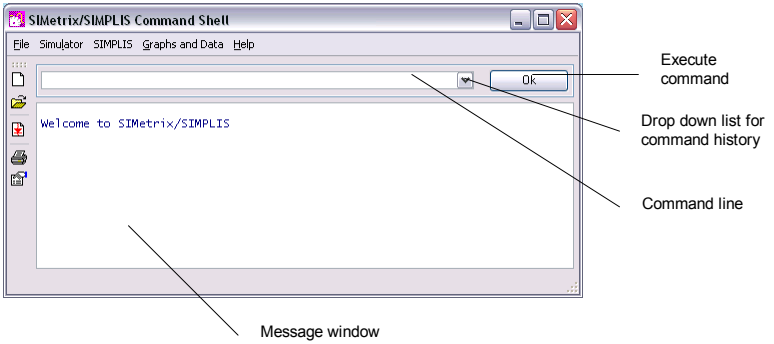
```
Time     Voltage1     Voltage2

0            14.5396      14.6916
1e-09        14.5397      14.6917
2e-09        14.5398      14.6917
4e-09        14.54        14.6917
8e-09        14.5408      14.6911
1.6e-08      14.5439      14.688
3.2e-08      14.5555      14.6766
6.4e-08      14.5909      14.641
1e-07        14.6404      14.5905
1.064e-07    14.6483      14.5821
```

If the above was read in as a text file (using OpenGroup /text), a new group called textn where n is a number would be generated. The group would contain three vectors called time, *Voltage1* and *Voltage2*. The vectors *Voltage1* and *Voltage2* would have a *reference* of *Time*. *Time* itself would not have a *reference*.

To read in complex values, enclose the real and imaginary parts in parentheses and separate with a comma. E.g:

```
Frequency    :VOUT
1000         (-5.94260997, 0.002837811)
1004.61579   (-5.94260997, 0.00285091)
1009.252886  (-5.94260996, 0.002864069)
1013.911386  (-5.94260995, 0.002877289)
1018.591388  (-5.94260994, 0.00289057)
1023.292992  (-5.94260993, 0.002903912)
1028.016298  (-5.94260992, 0.002917316)
1032.761406  (-5.94260991, 0.002930782)
1037.528416  (-5.9426099, 0.00294431)
1042.317429  (-5.94260989, 0.0029579)
1047.128548  (-5.94260988, 0.002971553)
```

Chapter 10 The Command Shell



Command Line

The command line is at the top of the command shell. See diagram above.

The vast majority of operations with SIMetrix can be executed from menus or pre-defined keys and do not require the use of the command line. However, a few more advanced operations do require the use of the command line. From the command line you can run a script or an internal command. You can also define a new menu to call a script, command or series of commands. In fact all the built in menu and keys are in fact themselves defined as commands or scripts. These definitions can be changed as well as new ones defined. See "User Defined Key and Menu Definitions" on page 332

Details of some of the available commands are given in "Command and Function Reference" on page 281. The remainder are documented in the *SIMetrix Script Reference Manual*.

Command History

A history of manually entered commands is available from the drop down list. (select arrow to the right of the command line). Some other commands entered via menus or from a script may also be placed in the command history.

Message Window

Various messages may be displayed in the message window below the command line. These include command progress, errors, wrnings and listing outputs. The text in the window may be copied to the clipboard using a context sensitive menu activated by the right mouse button.

Multiple commands on one line

You can place multiple commands on the same line separated by a semi-colon - ';' . This is the only way a menu or key can be defined to execute more than one command.

Scripts

SIMetrix features a comprehensive scripting language. Full details of this can be found in the *Script Reference Manual*. This is available as a PDF file on the install CD. A hardcopy version is also available for an additional charge.

Command Line Editing

The command line itself is a windows edit control. The cursor keys, home and end all work in the usual way. You can also copy (control-C), cut (control-X) and paste (control-V) text. There is also a right click popup menu with the usual edit commands.

Maximum Line Length

There is a maximum number of characters that can be entered on the command line but this is very large. The limit is related to the number of words as well as characters and is typically in excess of 2000 words. It is possible to exceed this limit with *braced substitutions* where the result of an expression is placed in the command line. Note that lines larger than 512 characters will not be inserted into the command history. (The drop down list box attached to command line)

Command Line Switches

Many commands have *switches*. These are always preceded by a '/' and their meaning is specific to the command. There are however four global switches which can be applied to any command. *These must always be placed immediately after the command and before any command specific switches*. Global switches are as follows:

- /e Forces command text to copied to command history
- /ne Inhibits command text copying to command history
- /quiet Inhibits error messages for that command. This only stops error message being displayed. A script will still be aborted if an error occurs but no message will be output
- /noerr Stops scripts being aborted if there is an error. The error message will still be displayed.

Editing the Menu System

Overview

The menu system in SIMetrix may be edited by one of two methods:

1. Using the script language. You can either edit the menu.sxscr script that builds the menu system on program start, or you can make additions by adding commands to the start up script

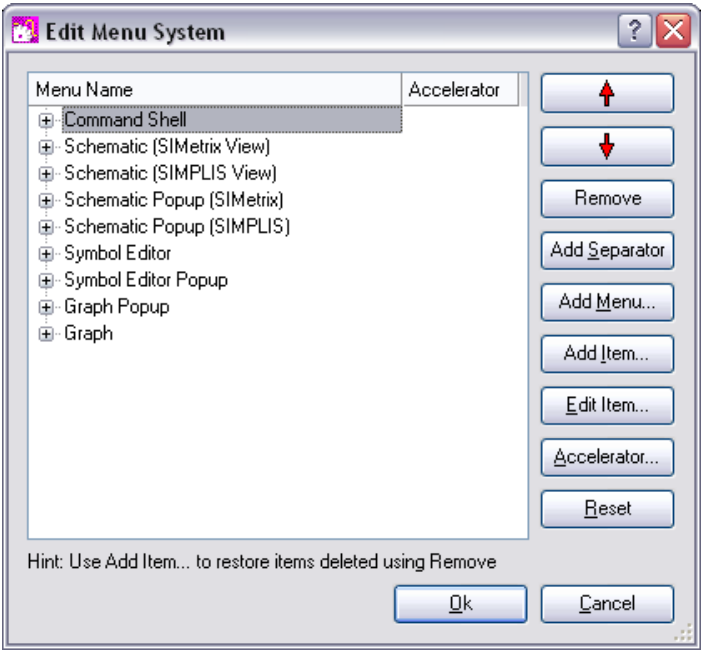
2. Using the GUI based menu editor

The first method offers the ultimate in flexibility but has a steep learning curve. The second method is quite simple to use and is appropriate for simple changes to the menu system such as deleting unused menus or changing hot-key definitions.

The following describes the second method. For details about the first method, please refer to the *Script Reference Manual.*

Procedure

Select menu File | Options | Edit Menu... . This will open the following dialog box



The above view shows the layout for SIMetrix/SIMPLIS products. For SIMetrix only products the top level menu choices will be slightly different.

The left hand pane shows the current menu system in a tree structured list. The buttons on the right allow you to move, delete or add new menu items and sub menus.

To Delete a Menu Item or Entire Sub-menu

Select the item you wish to delete on the left hand side then press Remove. To subsequently restore a deleted item, use Add Item... (see below).

To Move a Menu Item or Sub-menu

Select the item then use the up and down arrows key to move as required. If you wish to move a menu item to a different sub-menu, you should remove it (as described above) then add it again using Add Item... (see below).

To Add a New Menu Item

You can add a previously removed menu item to a new location or you can create a completely new menu item.

In both cases, select the location within a sub-menu and press Add Item... . To add a previously removed menu select Add Existing and choose an item in the left hand pane. This pane will be empty if you have not previously removed any menu items. (This could be in a previous session as deleted items are always remembered).

To add a new item press Add New then enter the required values. For Name enter the name of the menu as you would like to see it in the menu itself. Use the '&' character to denote underlined letters used to denote Alt-key short-cuts. E.g. "&My Menu" will be displayed "My Menu" and will be activated with Alt-M. For Command String you must enter a valid SIMetrix command. Typically this would call a user defined script, but you may also enter primitive commands or a list of primitive commands separated by semi-colons. See the *Script Reference Manual* for full details.

To add a separator to the sub-menu, press Add Separator.

To Create a New Sub-menu

Select the location for your new menu then press Add Menu... . Enter the menu name as required. The new sub-menu will have one single empty item which you can select to add new items to the sub-menu. The empty item will not appear in SIMetrix menus.

To Edit or Add an Accelerator Key

Select the menu item to which you wish to assign the accelerator key. Press Accelerator... . You will now be asked to press a single key or key combination with shift, contol or alt. The key you press will be assigned to the menu.

Press Remove to delete the accelerator key assignment.

To Reset to 'Factory' Settings

Press Reset to reset the menu system back to 'factory settings'. Usually this means that the menu system will revert to the structure defined when SIMetrix was first installed. However, if you defined any menus in the startup script using the DefMenu command, these menus will be faithfully restored as well.

'Reopen' Menu

The Reopen menu in the Command Shell File menu is dynamically updated to include schematic files recently opened or saved. The items in this menu are not listed in the Menu Editor and cannot be edited. The Reopen sub-menu itself should not be deleted, or moved to a new sub-menu nor should it be renamed, but it may be repositioned in the command shell's File menu as desired.

Message Window

The *message window* is the window in the command shell below the command line. The majority of messages, including errors and warnings, are displayed here. The window can be scrolled vertically with the scroll bar.

You can copy a line of text from the *message window* to the command line by placing the cursor on the line and either double clicking the left mouse key or pressing the Insert key.

Up to 2000 lines of messages will be retained for viewing at any time.

Menu Reference

For complete documentation on menu system, please refer to the on-line help. The menu reference topic can be viewed by selecting the menu Help|Menu Reference

Keyboard

The following keys definitions are built in. They can all be redefined using the DefKey command (see "DefKey" on page 282) or short-cut with DefMenu command.

Key	Unshifted	Shift	Control	Shift-Control
A		Place 2-input AND	Ascend one level (schem)	
B	Place fixed voltage probe			
C	Place capacitor		Copy (schem), Copy to clipboard (graph)	
D	Place diode	Place D-type flip-flop	Duplicate (schem)	
E	Place voltage controlled voltage source		Descend into block (schem)	
F	Place current controlled current source			
G	Place ground	Place digital ground	Browse Parts	
H	Place module port			
I	Place current source	Place digital inverter	Show current in pin	

Key	Unshifted	Shift	Control	Shift-Control
J	Place N-JFET			
K	Place P-JFET			
L	Place ideal inductor			
M	Place NMOS transistor		Place bias marker	Update bias values
N	Place NPN transistor	Place 2-input NAND	Show voltage at node	
O	Place Op-amp	Place 2-input OR		
P	Place PNP transistor	Place digital pulse	Show pinname at cursor	
Q			Repeat arc (symbol editor)	
R	Place resistor	Place 2-input NOR	Repeat last probe	
S	Place switch		Show netname at cursor	
T	Place transmission line			
U	Place fixed current probe			
V	Place voltage source	Place digital VCC	Paste	
W	Place waveform generator		Select Window	
X	Place ideal transformer	Place 2-input XOR	Cut	
Y	Place terminal			
Z	Place zener diode		Undo (schematic)	
1				
2	Place NMOS 4-term transistor			
3	Place PMOS 4-term transistor			
4	Place resistor (z-shape)			
5				

Key	Unshifted	Shift	Control	Shift-Control
6				
7				
8				
9				

Key	Unshifted	Shift	Control	Alt
F1	Help			
F2	Step script	Pause script	Resume script	
F3	Start wire (schem), More analysis functions (graph)			
F4	Probe Voltage (immediate)			Quit/ Close window
F5	Rotate (schem, symbol), Cursor to next peak (graph)	Cursor to previous peak (graph)		
F6	Mirror (schem, symbol), Cursor to next trough (graph)	Flip (schem, symbol editor), Cursor to previous trough (graph)		
F7	Edit Part... (schem), Ref cursor to next peak (graph), Edit property/pin/arc (symbol editor)	Edit literal value (schem), Ref cursor to previous peak (graph)	Move value	Edit MOS value
F8	Edit reference (schem), Ref cursor to next trough (graph)	Ref cursor to previous trough (graph)	Move ref	
F9	Start simulation		Open Last Schematic	
F10	New graph sheet			
F11	Open/close simulator command window (schem)			
F12	Zoom out (schem, graph, symbol)	Zoom in (schem, graph, symbol editor)		

Key	Unshifted	Shift	Control	Alt
Insert		Paste	Copy	
Delete	Delete	Cut		
Home	Zoom full (graph, schem, symbol)	Zoom full selected axis (graph)		
End				
Page Up				
Page Down				
Up	Scroll up (schem, graph)	Increment component/ potentiometer (schem), Scroll up selected axis (graph)	Big scroll up (schem)	
Down	Scroll down (schem, graph)	Decrement component/ potentiometer (schem), Scroll down selected axis (graph)	Big scroll down (schem)	
Left	Scroll left (schem, graph)	Scroll left selected axis (graph)	Big scroll left (schem)	
Right	Scroll right (schem, graph)	Scroll right selected axis (graph)	Big scroll right (schem)	
SPACE				
TAB	Step main cursor	Step reference cursor		
ESC	Abort macro, cancel operation or pause simulation			

Chapter 11 Command and Function Reference

There are about 380 functions and 210 commands available but only a few are covered in this chapter. Details of all available functions and commands can be found in the *Script Reference Manual*. This is available as a PDF file on the install CD. A hardcopy version is also available for an additional charge.

Notation

Symbols Used

Square brackets: `[ ]`
These signify a command line parameter or switch which is optional.

Pipe symbol: `|`
This signifies either/or.

Ellipsis: `...`
This signifies 1 or more optional multiple entries.

Fonts

Anything that would be typed in is displayed in `a fixed width` font.
Command line parameters are in *`italics`*.

Case

Although upper and lower cases are used for the command names, they are NOT in fact case sensitive.

Examples

```
OpenGroup [ /text ] [ filename ]
```

Both /text (a switch) and *filename* (a parameter) are optional in the above example.

So the following are all legitimate:

```
OpenGroup
OpenGroup /text
OpenGroup run23.dat
OpenGroup /text output.txt
```

```
DelCrv curve_number...
```

One or more *curve_number* parameters may be given.

So the following are all legitimate:

```
DelCrv 1 2 3
DelCrv 1
```

Command Summary

Only a few of the approximately 220 available commands are detailed in this chapter and a list is given in the table below. Documentation for the remainder is provided in the *Script Reference Manual*. This is available as a PDF file on the install CD and can also be downloaded from our web site. A hardcopy version is available for an additional charge.

Command name	Description
DefKey	Define keyboard key
DefMenu	Define fixed or popup menu item
DelMenu	Delete menu item
ListStdKeys	Write standard key definitions to file
OpenGroup	Create new group (of simulation data) from data file
ReadLogicCompatibility	Read external logic compatibility tables
Reset	Release memory used for simulation
SaveRhs	Create nodeset file to speed DC convergence
Set	Set option
Show	Displays the value of an expression. Can be used to export data to a file in ASCII form
UnSet	Delete option

Reference

DefKey

DefKey *Key_Label Command_string* [*option_flag*]

DefKey is used to define custom key strokes.

Key_Label Code to signify key to define. See table below for list of possible labels. All labels may be suffixed with one of the following:

SCHEM	Key defined only when a schematic window is currently active
GRAPH	Key defined only when a graph window is currently active
SHELL	Key defined only when the command shell is currently active
SYMBOL	Key defined only when a symbol editor window is active

If no suffix is provided the key definition will be active in all windows.

Command_string A command line command or commands to be executed when the specified key is pressed. Multiple commands must be separated by semi-colons (';'). Unless the command string has no spaces, it must wholly enclosed in double quotation marks (").

option_flag A number between 0 and 5 to specify the manner in which the command is executed. These are as follows:

0. Default. Command is echoed and executed. Any text already in command line is overwritten.

5. Immediate mode. Command is executed immediately even if another operation - such as a simulation run or schematic editing operation - is currently in progress. For other options the command is not executed until the current operation is completed. Only a few commands can be assigned with this option. See DefMenu documentation in the *Script Reference Manual* for full details.

Valid key labels:

Function keys: F1, F2, F3, F4, F5, F6, F7, F8, F9, F10, F11, F12

INS	Insert key
DEL	Delete key
HOME	Home key
END	End key
PGUP	Page up key
PGDN	Page down key
LEFT	←
RIGHT	→
UP	↑
DOWN	↓
TAB	Tab key
BACK	Back space
ESC	Escape key
NUM1	Keypad 1
NUM2	Keypad 2
NUM3	Keypad 3
NUM4	Keypad 4
NUM5	Keypad 5
NUM6	Keypad 6
NUM7	Keypad 7
NUM8	Keypad 8
NUM9	Keypad 9
NUM0	Keypad 0
NUM*	Keypad *
NUM/	Keypad /

NUM+ Keypad +
NUM- Keypad -
NUM. Keypad .

_SPACE Space bar (must always be shifted - see below)

All letter and number keys i.e.
A to Z and 0 to 9 referred to by letter/number alone.

Shifted keys
Any of the above prefixed with any combination of 'S' for shift, 'C' for control or 'A' for alt. Note that in windows, the right hand ALT key performs the same action as CONTROL-ALT.

Notes

Unshifted letter and number key definitions will not function when a text edit window such as the simulator command window (F11) is active. Space bar definitions must always be shifted.

The same codes can be used for menu short cuts. See DefMenu command page 284

Key definition will be lost when SIMetrix is exited. To make a key or menu definition permanent you can place the command to define it in the startup file. To do this, select command shell menu File|Scripts|Edit Startup and add the line above.

Examples

To define control-R to place a resistor on the schematic sheet, enter the command:

```
DefKey CR "inst res" 4
```

The built in definition for F12 to zoom out a schematic is

```
DefKey F12:SCHEM "zoom out" 4
```

This definition only functions when a schematic is active. A similar definition for F12:GRAPH zooms out a graph when a graph window is active.

See Also

"User Defined Key and Menu Definitions" on page 332

DefMenu

DefMenu [/immediate] [/shortcut *key_code*] *menuname command_string when_to_enable*

Defines custom menu.

/immediate — Immediate mode. Command is executed immediately even if another operation - such as a simulation run or schematic editing operation - is currently in progress. For other options the command is not executed until the current operation is

completed. Only a few commands can be assigned with this option. See DefMenu command documentation in the *Script Reference Manual* for full details

/shortcut *key_code*

Specify key or key combination to activate menu. Key description is placed on right hand side of menu item. Use any of the codes specified in "DefKey" on page 282 except key pad codes. Note that DefKey has precedence in the event of the key or key combination being defined by both DefKey and DefMenu.

menuname

Composed of strings separated by pipe symbol: '|'. First name must be one of the following:

SHELL	Command shell menu
SCHEM	Schematic popup menu
SIMETRIX	Schematic popup menu - SIMetrix mode only
SIMPLIS	schematic popup menu - SIMPLIS mode only
GRAPH	Graph popup menu
GRAPHMAIN	Graph fixed menu
SCHEMMAIN	Schematic main menu
SIMETRIXMAIN	Schematic main menu - SIMetrix mode only
SIMPLISMAIN	Schematic main menu - SIMPLIS mode only
SYMBOL	Symbol editor popup menu
SYMBOLMAIN	Symbol editor fixed menu

This must be followed by at least two '|' separated values for main menus and at least one '|' separated value for popup menus. Each name describes one level in the menu hierarchy.

Use the '&' symbol to define an underlined ALT-key access letter.

To define a menu separator use the item text "-"

Note that if a menu name contains spaces it must be enclosed in quotation marks.

when_to_enable

A boolean expression specifying under what circumstances the menu should be enabled. (The menu text turns grey when disabled). If omitted the menu will always be enabled. For details, see DefMenu description in the *Script Reference Manual*.

Notes

Changes to a schematic or symbol editor main menu will not affect currently open windows. For the changes to take effect, close the schematic/symbol editor window and open a new one.

DelMenu

DelMenu [/bypos *position*] *menuname*

Deletes specified menu

position — The menu to be deleted is identified by its position. The first item in the menu is at position zero.

menuname — Composed of strings separated by pipe symbol: '|'. First name must be one of the following:

SHELL	Command shell menu
SCHEM	Schematic popup menu
GRAPH	Graph popup menu
LEGEND	Popup menu in graph legend panel. See "Elements of the Graph Window" on page 206
SCHEMMAIN	Schematic main menu
SYMBOL	Symbol editor popup menu
SYMBOLMAIN	Symbol editor fixed menu

The remaining strings identify the menu and item names. See DefMenu (page 284) for details on menu names.

ListStdKeys

ListStdKeys *filename*

OpenGroup

OpenGroup [/text] [/overwrite] [*filename*]

Reads in a data file.

/text — If specified, data file is assumed to be in text format. Otherwise the file is input as a SIMetrix binary data file as saved by the SaveGroup command. See "Data Import and Export" on page 270 for details of text format.

/overwrite — Forces existing group of the same name to be overwritten. If not specified, the group being read in will be renamed if a group of the same name already exists.

filename — Name of file to be input. If not specified, an *open file dialog box* will be opened allowing the user to choose from available files.

OpenGroup creates a new Group. If /text is not specified then the name of the group will be that with which it was stored provided the name does not conflict with an existing group. If there is a conflict the name will be modified to be unique. If /text is specified then the group will be named:

text*n*

where 'n' is chosen to make the name unique.

ReadLogicCompatibility

ReadLogicCompatibility *filename*

Reads a file to define the compatibility relationship between logic families. For an example of a compatibility table, see the file COMPAT.TXT which you will find in the SCRIPT directory. This file is actually identical to the built-in definitions except for the UNIV family which cannot be redefined.

Please refer to the “Digital Simulation” chapter of the *Simulator Reference Manual* for full details on logic compatibility tables.

File Format

The file format consists of the following sections:

Header
In-Out resolution table
In-In resolution table
Out-Out resolution table

Header:
The names of all the logic families listed in one line. The names must not use the underscore ('_') character.

In-Out resolution table:
A table with the number of rows and columns equal to the number of logic families listed in the header. The columns represent outputs and the rows inputs. The entry in the table specifies the compatibility between the output and the input when connected to each other. The entry may be one of three values:

OK	Fully compatible
WARN	Not compatible but would usually function. Warn user but allow simulation to continue.
ERR	Not compatible and would never function. Abort simulation.

In-In resolution table
A table with the number of rows and columns equal to the number of logic families listed in the header. Both column and rows represent inputs. The table defines how inputs from different families are treated when they are connected. The entry may be one of four values:

ROW	Row take precedence
COL	Column takes precedence
OK	Doesn't matter. (Currently identical to ROW)
ERR	Incompatible, inputs cannot be connected.

Out-out resolution table
A table with the number of rows and columns equal to the number of logic families listed in the header. Both column and rows represent outputs. The table defines how outputs from different families are treated when they are connected. The entry may be one of four values:

ROW	Row take precedence
COL	Column takes precedence
OK	Doesn't matter. (Currently identical to ROW)
ERR	Incompatible, outputs cannot be connected.

Reset

Reset

Frees memory associated with most recent simulation run.

It is not normally necessary to use this command unless available memory is low and is needed for plotting graphs or other applications. Note that Reset does not delete the data generated by a simulation only the internal data structures set up to perform a run. These are automatically deleted at the beginning of a new run.

Any graph curves created by fixed probes (i.e. .GRAPH controls) will be updated when this command is executed.

SaveRhs

SaveRhs [/nodeset] *filename*

Creates a file containing every node voltage, inductor current and voltage source current calculated at the most recent analysis point. The values generated can be read back in as nodesets to initialise the dc operating point solution.

/nodeset	If specified the values are output in the form of a .nodeset command which can be read back in directly. Only node voltages are output if this switch is specified. Otherwise, currents in voltage sources and inductors are also output.
filename	File where output is written

This command is intended as an aid to DC operating point convergence. Sometimes the dc operating point solution is known from a previous run but took a long time to calculate. By applying the known solution voltages as nodesets prior to the operating point solution, the new DC bias point will be found much more rapidly. The method is tolerant of minor changes to the circuit. The old solution may not be exact, but if it is close this may be sufficient for the new solution to be found quickly.

If SaveRhs is executed after an AC analysis, the values output will be the real part only.

Set

Set [/temp] [*option_spec* [*option_spec*...]]

Defines an option.

/temp	If specified, the option setting will be temporary and will be restored to its original value when control returns to the command line. (i.e when all scripts have completed).
option_spec	Can be one of two forms: Form1: *option_name* Form2: *option_name* = *option_value* *option_name* can be any of the names listed in "Options" on page 317. For options of type Boolean, use form1. For others, use form 2.

See Also

"Options" on page 317
"Unset" on page 290

Show

Show [/file *filename*] [/append *filename*] [/noindex] [/noHeader] [/plain] [/force] [/clipboard] [/names *names*] [/width *width*] *expression* [*expression* ...]

Displays the value of an expression. This command can be used to export data from the simulator in ASCII form. See "Data Import and Export" on page 270 for more details.

/file *filename*	If specified, outputs result to *filename*. The values are output in a format compatible with OpenGroup /text. (See "OpenGroup" on page 286)
/append *filename*	As /file except that file is appended if it already exists.
/noindex	If the vector has no reference, the index value for each element is output if this switch is *not* specified.
/noHeader	If specified, the header providing vector names etc. will be inhibited.
/plain	If specified, no index (as /noindex), and no header (as /noHeader) will be output. In addition, string values will be output without enclosed single quotation marks.
/force	File specified by /file will be unconditionally overwritten if it exists.

/clipboard	Outputs data to system clipboard.
/names *names*	Semi-colon delimited string providing names to be used as headings for tabulated data. If not specified, the vector names are used instead.
/width *width*	Page width in columns for tabulated data. If not specified no limit will be set.
expression	Expression to be displayed. If *expression* is an array, all values will be displayed.

Notes

The display of arrays with a very large number of elements (>500) can take a long time. For large arrays it is recommended that the /file switch is used to output the results to a file. The file can then be examined with a text editor or spreadsheet program.

Unset

UnSet [/temp] *option_name*

/temp	If specified, the option setting will be deleted temporarily and will be restored to its original value when control returns to the command line. (i.e when all scripts have completed).

Deletes specified option. See "Options" on page 317 for a full explanation.

Note that some Option values are *internal*. This means that they always have a value. If such an option is UnSet, it will be restored to its default value and not deleted. See "Options" on page 317 for more details.

Function Summary

The following table lists a small selection of the functions available with SIMetrix. Full documentation for these is provided in the *Script Reference Manual*. This is available as a PDF file on the install CD. A hardcopy version is also available for an additional charge.

Function name	Description	Page no.
abs(real/complex)	Absolute value	293
arg(real/complex)	phase (result wraps at 180/-180 degress)	293
arg_rad(real/complex)	phase (radians). Result wraps at pi/-pi radians	293
atan(real/complex)	Arc tangent	293
cos(real/complex)	Cosine	293

Function name	Description	Page no.
db(real/complex)	dB(x) = 20 * log10 (mag(x))	293
diff(real)	Return derivative of argument	293
exp(real/complex)	Exponential	293
fft(real [, string])	Fast Fourier Transform	294
FIR(real, real [, real])	Finite Impulse Response digital filter	294
Floor(real)	Returns argument truncated to next lowest integer	295
GroupDelay(real/complex)	Returns group delay of argument	295
Histogram(real, real)	Returns histogram of argument	295
Iff(real, any, any)	Returns a specified value depending on the outcome of a test	296
IIR(real, real [, real])	Infinite Impulse Response digital filter	296
im, imag(real/complex)	Return imaginary part of argument	297
integ(real)	Returns integral of argument	297
Interp(real, real [, real, real])	Interpolates argument to specified number of evenly spaced points	297
IsComplex(any)	Returns TRUE if argument is complex	298
length(any)	Returns number of elements in vector.	298
ln(real/complex)	Natural logarithm	298
log, log10(real/complex)	Base 10 logarithm	298
mag, magnitude(real/complex)	Magnitude (same as abs())	299
maxidx(real/complex)	Returns index of vector where largest value is held	299
Maxima(real [, real, string])	Returns locations of maxima of specified vector	299
mean(real/complex)	Returns statistical mean of all values in vector	300
Mean1(real [, real, real])	Returns mean of data in given range	300
minidx(real/complex)	Returns index of vector where smallest value is held	300

Function name	Description	Page no.
Minima(real [, real, string])	Returns locations of minima of specified vector	300
norm(real/complex)	Returns argument scaled so that its largest value is unity.	301
ph, phase(real/complex)	Returns phase of argument	301
phase_rad(real/complex)	As ph() but result always in radians	301
Range(real/complex [, real, real])	Returns range of vector	301
re, real(real/complex)	Return real part of argument	301
Ref(real/complex)	Returns reference of argument	301
Rms(real)	Returns accumulative RMS value of argument	302
RMS1(real [, real, real])	Returns RMS of argument over specified range	302
rnd(real)	Returns random number	302
RootSumOfSquares(real [, real, real])	Returns root sum of squares of argument over specified range	302
sign(real)	Return sign of argument	302
sin(real/complex)	Sine	302
sqrt(real/complex)	Square root	302
tan(real/complex)	Tangent	303
Truncate(real [, real, real])	Returns vector that is a sub range of supplied vector	303
unitvec(real)	Returns vector of specified length whose elements are all 1	303
vector(real)	Returns vector of specified length with each element equal to its index	303
XFromY(real, real [, real])	Returns array of values specifying horizontal locations where specified vector crosses given y value	303
YFromX(real, real [, real])	Returns array of values specifying the vertical value of the specified vector at the given x value	304

Function Reference

Only a few of the approx. 200 functions are documented here. For the rest, please refer to the “Script Reference Manual”. This is available as a PDF file on the install CD. A hardcopy version is also available for an additional charge. The ones detailed here are the functions that accept and return numeric values and that could conceivably used for graph plots.

abs(real/complex)

Returns absolute value or magnitude of argument. This function is identical to the mag() function.

arg(real/complex)

Same as phase() (page 301) except the result wraps at 180/-180 degrees.

arg_rad(real/complex)

Same as phase_rad() (page 301) except the result wraps at pi/-pi radians.

atan(real/complex)

Returns the arc tangent of its argument. If degrees option is set return value is in degrees otherwise radians.

cos(real/complex)

Return cosine of argument in radians. Use cos_deg if the argument is in degrees.

db(real/complex)

Returns 20*log10(mag(argument))

diff(real)

Returns the derivative of the argument with respect to its reference (x-values). If the argument has no reference the function returns the derivative with respect to the argument's index - in effect a vector containing the difference between successive values in the argument.

exp(real/complex)

Returns e raised to the power of argument. If the argument is greater than 709.016, an overflow error occurs.

fft(real [, string])

Arg1	Vector to be processed
Arg2	String specifying window type. Possible values are: Hanning (default) and None

Performs a Fast Fourier Transform on supplied vector. The number of points used is the next binary power higher than the length of argument 1. Excess points are zero-filled. Window used may be *Hanning* (default) or *None*.

Users should note that using this function applied to raw transient analysis data will not produce meaningful results as the values are unevenly spaced. If you apply this function to simulation data, you must either specify that the simulator outputs at fixed intervals (select the Output at interval option in the Choose Analysis dialog box) or you must interpolate the results using the Interp() function - see page 297. (The FFT plotting menu items run a script which interpolate the data if it detects that the results are unevenly spaced. Use of these menus does not require special consideration by the user.)

Further information on FFTs can be found on page 215.

FIR(real, real [, real])

Arg1	Vector to be filtered
Arg2	Filter coefficients
Arg3	Initial conditions. Default - all zero

Performs Finite Impulse Response digital filtering on supplied vector. This function performs the operation:

$y_n = x_n \cdot c_0 + x_{n-1} \cdot c_1 + x_{n-2} \cdot c_2 \ldots$

Where:
x is the input vector (argument 1)
c is the coefficient vector (argument 2)
y is the result (returned value)

The third argument provide the history of x i.e. x_{-1}, x_{-2} etc. as required.

The operation of this function (and also the IIR() function) is simple but its application can be the subject of several volumes! Below is the simple case of a four sample rolling average. In principle an almost unlimited range of FIR filtering operations may be performed using this function. Any text on Digital Signal Processing will provide further details.

Users should note that using this function applied to raw transient analysis data will not produce meaningful results as the values are unevenly spaced. If you apply this function to simulation data, you must either specify that the simulator outputs at fixed intervals (select the Output at interval option in the Choose Analysis dialog box) or you must interpolate the results using the Interp() function - see page 297

Example

Suppose a vector VOUT exist in the current group (simulation results). The following will plot VOUT with a 4 sample rolling average applied

```
Plot FIR(vout, [0.25, 0.25, 0.25, 0.25])
```

Alternatively, the following does the same

```
Plot FIR(vout, 0.25*unitvec(4))
```

Floor(real)

Returns the argument truncated to the next lowest integer. Examples

```
Floor(3.45) = 3
Floor(7.89) = 7
Floor(-3.45) = -4
```

GroupDelay(real/complex)

Returns the group delay of the argument. Group delay is defined as:

$$\frac{d(phase(y))}{dx} \cdot \frac{1}{2.\pi}$$

where y is the supplied vector and x is its reference. The GroupDelay() function expects the result of AC analysis where y is a voltage or current and its reference is frequency.

This function will yield an error if its argument is complex and has no reference.

Histogram(real, real)

Arg1	Vector
Arg2	Number of bins

Creates a histogram of argument 1 with the number of bins specified by argument 2. The bins are divided evenly between the maximum and minimum values in the argument.

Histograms are useful for finding information about waveforms that are difficult to determine by other means. They are particularly useful for finding flat areas such as the flat tops of pulses as these appear as well defined peaks. The Histogram() function is used in the rise and fall time scripts for this purpose.

Users should note that using this function applied to raw transient analysis data will produce misleading results as the simulation values are unevenly spaced. If you apply this function to simulation data, you must either specify that the simulator outputs at

fixed intervals (select the Output at interval option in the Choose Analysis dialog box) or you must interpolate the results using the Interp() function - see page 297

Iff(real, any, any)

Arg1	Test
Arg2	Result if test TRUE
Arg3	Result if test FALSE

Arg2 and Arg3 must both be the same type

If the first argument evaluates to TRUE (i.e. non-zero) the function will return the value of argument 2. Otherwise it will return the value of argument 3. Note that the type of arguments 2 and 3 must both be the same. No implicit type conversion will be performed on these arguments.

IIR(real, real [, real])

Arg1	Vector to be filtered
Arg2	Coefficients
Arg3	Initial conditions - default zero

Performs Infinite Impulse Response digital filtering on supplied vector. This function performs the operation:

$y_n = x_n \cdot c_0 + y_{n-1} \cdot c_1 + y_{n-2} \cdot c_2 \ldots$

Where:
x is the input vector (argument 1)
c is the coefficient vector (argument 2)
y is the result (returned value)

The third argument provide the history of y i.e. y_{-1}, y_{-2} etc. as required.

The operation of this function (and also the FIR() function) is simple but its application can be the subject of several volumes! In principle an almost unlimited range of IIR filtering operations may be performed using this function. Any text on Digital Signal Processing will provide further details.

Users should note that using this function applied to raw transient analysis data will not produce meaningful results as the values are unevenly spaced. If you apply this function to simulation data, you must either specify that the simulator outputs at fixed intervals (select the Output at interval option in the Choose Analysis dialog box) or you must interpolate the results using the Interp() function - see page 297

Example

The following graph shows the result of applying a simple first order IIR filter to a step:

The coefficients used give a time constant of 10 * the sample interval. In the above the sample interval was 1μSec so giving a 10μSec time constant. As can be seen a first order IIR filter has exactly the same response as an single pole RC network. A general first order function is:

$y_n = x_n \cdot c_0 + y_{n-1} \cdot c_1$

where c_0=1-exp(-T/τ)
and c_1=exp(-T/τ)
and τ=time constant
and T=sample interval

The above example is simple but it is possible to construct much more complex filters using this function. While it is also possible to place analog representations on the circuit being simulated, use of the IIR function permits viewing of filtered waveforms after a simulation run has completed. This is especially useful if the run took a long time to complete.

im(real/complex), imag(real/complex)

Returns imaginary part of argument.

integ(real)

Integrates the argument with respect to its reference (x-values).

The function uses simple trapezoidal integration.

An error will occur if the argument supplied has no reference.

Interp(real, real [, real, real])

Arg1	Vector to be interpolated
Arg2	Number of points in result
Arg3	Interpolation order
Arg4	(Boolean) include last point

Returns a vector with length specified by argument 2 obtained by interpolating the vector supplied as argument 1 at evenly spaced intervals. The optional third argument specifies the interpolation order. This can be any integer 1 or greater but in practice there are seldom reasons to use values greater than 4.

The Interp() function overcomes some of the problems caused by the fact that raw transient analysis results are unevenly spaced. It is used by the FFT plotting scripts to provide evenly spaced sample points for the FFT() function. The Interp() function also makes it possible to perform operations on two vectors that originated from different transient runs and therefore will have different sample points.

IsComplex(any)

Returns 1 (=TRUE) if the supplied argument is complex and 0 (=FALSE) if the argument is any other type

length(any)

Returns the number of elements in the argument. The result will be 1 for a scalar and 0 for an empty value.

The length() function is the only function which will not return an error if supplied with an *empty* value. Empty variables are returned by some functions when they cannot produce a return value. All other functions and operators will yield an error if presented with an empty value and abort any script that called it.

ln(real/complex)

Returns the natural logarithm of the argument.

Using ln() with Negative or Complex Values

If the argument is real and 0 or negative an error will result. If the argument is complex it will return a complex result even if the imaginary part is 0 and the real part negative.

E.g.

```
ln(-1)
```

will produce an error. But:

```
ln((-1,0))
```

will give the answer (0,3.1415926535897931) = $j\pi$

An error will always occur if both real and imaginary parts are zero.

Using ln() with AC Analysis Data

See notes under log10() function below.

log10(real/complex), log(real/complex)

Returns log to base 10 of argument. In general, we recommend using log10 rather than log. Software products of all types vary in their interpretation of log(). Some treat it as log to the base 10 and others treat it as log to the base *e*. By using log10() there will never be any doubt.

Using log10() with Negative or Complex Values

See notes above under ln() function

Using log10() with AC Analysis Data

The data output by the simulator when running an AC or TF analysis is complex. As described in "Using ln() with Negative or Complex Values" above, all SIMetrix logarithm functions correctly handle complex arguments and return a complex value. This means that the following expression to calculate dB will not produce the expected result:

```
20*log(data)
```

where *data* is a value produced by an AC analysis simulation. What you should do is:

```
20*log(mag(data))
```

The mag() function will convert the complex data to real values which is actually what is intended. Better still use:

```
db(data)
```

This is equivalent to 20*log(mag(*data*)).

Note that the graph system will always plot the magnitude of complex data. But, any expression presented for plotting will be evaluated as complex and only the final result is converted to real. So 20*log(*data*) will be plotted as mag(20*log(*data*)). This is not the same as 20*log(mag(*data*)) when *data* is complex.

mag(real/complex), magnitude(real/complex)

Returns the magnitude of the argument. This function is identical to the abs() function.

maxidx(real/complex)

Returns index of the array element in argument 1 with the largest magnitude.

Maxima(real [, real, string])

Arg1	Vector
Arg2	Minimum value. Default -∞
Arg3	Options array. Possible values are: xSort Sort output in order of x values noInterp Don't interpolate.

Returns an array of values holding every maximum point in the supplied vector whose value is above argument 2. The value returned - if *noInterp* is not specified - is obtained by fitting a parabola to the maximum and each point either side then calculating the x,y location of the point with zero slope. If *noInterp* is specified, the peak values are those found in argument 1 without any interpolation. The vector returned by this function has an attached reference which contains the x values of the maximum points. If *xSort* is not specified, the vector is arranged in order of descending y values i.e. largest y value first, smallest last. Otherwise, they are organised in *ascending* x-values.

Maximum(real/complex [, real, real])

Arg1	Vector
Arg2	Start x value
Arg3	End x value

Returns the largest value found in the vector in the interval defined by start x value and end x value. If the vector is complex the operation will be performed on the magnitude of the vector.

mean(real/complex)

Returns the average of all values in supplied argument. If the argument is complex the result will also be complex.

Mean1(real [, real, real])

Arg1	Vector
Arg2	Start x value. Default: start of vector
Arg3	End x value. Default: end of vector

Returns the integral of the supplied vector between the ranges specified by arguments 2 and 3 divided by the span (= arg 3 -arg 2). If the values supplied for argument 2 and/or 3 do not lie on sample points, second order interpolation will be used to estimate y values at those points.

minidx(real/complex)

Returns index of the array element in argument 1 with the smallest magnitude.

Minima(real [, real, string])

Arg1	Vector
Arg2	Maximum value. Default +∞
Arg3	Options array. Possible values are: xSort Sort output in order of x values noInterp Don't interpolate.

Returns array of values holding every minimum point in the supplied vector whose value is below argument 2. The value returned - if *noInterp* is not specified - is obtained by fitting a parabola to the minimum and each point either side then calculating the x,y location of the point with zero slope. If *noInterp* is specified, the values are those found in argument 1 without any interpolation. The vector returned by this function has an attached reference which contains the x values of the minimum points. If *xSort* is not specified, the vector is arranged in order of ascending y values i.e. smallest y value first, largest last. Otherwise, they are organised in ascending x values.

Minimum(real/complex [, real, real])

Arg1	Vector
Arg2	Start x value
Arg3	End x value

Returns the smallest value found in the vector in the interval defined by start x value and end x value. If the vector is complex the operation will be performed on the magnitude of the vector.

norm(real/complex)

Returns the input vector scaled such that the magnitude of its largest value is unity. If the argument is complex then so will be the return value.

ph(real/complex), phase(real/complex)

Returns the phase of the argument. ph() is identical to phase() and return the phase in degrees.

The ph() and phase() functions produces a continuous output i.e. it does wrap from 180 degrees to -180 degrees.

phase_rad(real/complex)

Identical to ph() and phase() functions except that the result is in radians.

Range(real/complex [, real, real])

Arg1	Vector
Arg2	Start index. Default: 0
Arg3	End index. Default: vector length -1

Returns a vector which is a range of the input vector in argument 1. The range extends from the indexes specified by arguments 2 and 3. If argument 3 is not supplied the range extends to the end of the input vector. If neither arguments 2 or 3 are supplied, the input vector is returned unmodified.

re(real/complex), real(real/complex)

Returns the real part of the complex argument.

Ref(real/complex)

Returns the reference or x-values of the argument.

Rms(real)

Returns a vector of the accumulative RMS value of the input. Unlike RMS1() this function returns a vector which can be plotted.

RMS1(real [, real, real])

Arg1	Vector
Arg2	Start x value. Default: start of vector
Arg3	End x value. Default: end of vector

Returns the root mean square value of the supplied vector between the ranges specified by arguments 2 and 3. If the values supplied for argument 2 and/or 3 do not lie on sample points, second order interpolation will be used to estimate y values at those points.

rnd(real)

Returns a vector with each element a random value between 0 and the absolute value of the argument's corresponding element.

RootSumOfSquares(real [, real, real])

Arg1	Vector
Arg2	Start x value. Default: start of vector
Arg3	End x value. Default: end of vector

Similar to RMS1 function but returns the root of the sum without performing an average.

sign(real)

Returns 1 if argument is greater than 0 otherwise returns 0.

sin(real/complex)

Return sine of argument in radians. Use sin_deg if the argument is in degrees.

sqrt(real/complex)

Returns the square root of the argument. If the argument is real and negative, an error will result. If however the argument is complex a complex result will be returned.

SumNoise(real [, real, real])

Identical to RootSumOfSquares() function. See page 302

tan(real/complex)

Return tan of argument in radians. Use tan_deg if the argument is in degrees.

Truncate(real [, real, real])

Arg1	Data
Arg2	Start x Value
Arg3	End x value

Returns a portion of the input vector with defined start and end points. Interpolation will be used to create the first and last points of the result if the start and end values do not coincide with actual points in the input vector.

Arguments 2 and 3 define the beginning and end of the vector.

Example

Suppose we have a vector called VOUT which was the result of a simulation running from 0 to 1mS. We want to perform some analysis on a portion of it from 250µS to 750µS. The following call to Truncate would do this:

```
Truncate(VOUT, 250u, 750u)
```

If VOUT did not actually have points at 250µS and 750µS then the function would create them by interpolation. Note that the function will not extrapolate points before the start or after the end of the input vector.

unitvec(real)

Returns a vector consisting of all 1's. Argument specifies length of vector.

vector(real)

Returns a vector with length specified by the argument. The value in each element of the vector equals its index.

XFromY(real, real [, real, real])

Arg1	Input vector
Arg2	Y value
Arg3	Interpolation order (1 or 2)
Arg4	Direction of slope. 0 = any, 1 = +ve, -1 = -ve

Returns an array of values specifying the horizontal location(s) where the specified vector (argument 1) crosses the given y value (argument 2) in the direction specified by argument 4. If the vector never crosses the given value, an empty result is returned. The sampled input vector is interpolated to produce the final result. Interpolation order is specified by argument 3.

XY(real, real)

Returns a vector with y-values of argument 1and x-values of argument 2. This function provides a means of creating X-Y plots using the .GRAPH control. See the "Command Reference" chapter of the *Simulator Reference Manual* for details.

YFromX(real, real [, real])

Arg1	Input vector
Arg2	Y value
Arg3	Interpolation order

Returns an array of values (usually a single value) specifying the vertical value of the specified vector (argument 1) at the given x value (argument 2). If the given x-value is out of range an empty result is returned. The sampled input vector is interpolated to produce the final result. Interpolation order is specified by argument 3.

Chapter 12 Monte Carlo Analysis

Overview

Monte Carlo analysis is a procedure to assess manufacturing yields by repeating simulation runs with varying applied random variations to component parameters. The technique is very powerful and usually gives a more realistic result than *worst-case* analysis which varies component values to their extremes in a manner which produces the worst possible result.

The implementation of Monte Carlo analysis in SIMetrix has been designed to be quick to set up for simple cases while still providing the required flexibility for more advanced requirements as might be required for integrated circuit design.

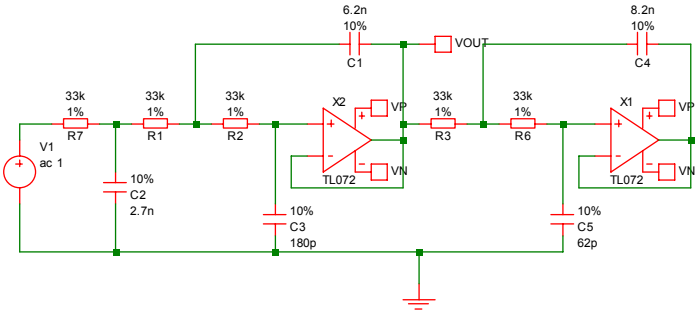
In this chapter we cover the aspects of setting up a Monte Carlo analysis from the front end. This includes setting device tolerances in the schematic, setting up and running a Monte Carlo simulation and analysing the results.

This chapter covers Monte Carlo analysis for SIMetrix (SPICE) simulations. Monte Carlo analysis is also available for SIMPLIS simulations. See "Multi-step and Monte Carlo Analyses" on page 200.

Setting model tolerances is not covered here but in the Monte Carlo Analysis chapter in the *Simulator Reference Manual*.

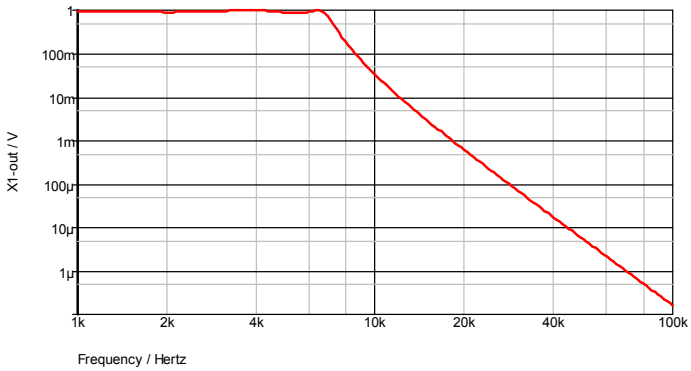
An Example

Consider the following active filter circuit.



This circuit can be found in *EXAMPLES*/MonteCarlo/cheb.sxsch

The circuit is a 5th order low-pass 7kHz Chebyshev filter with a 1dB passband ripple specification. Its nominal response is:



This circuit is to be used in an application that requires the gain of the amplifier to remain within 2dB of the dc value from 0 to 6kHz. A 1dB ripple specification therefore seems a reasonable choice. Clearly though the tolerance of the capacitors and resistors may upset this. To investigate, a Monte Carlo analysis is required. The standard component tolerances are 10% for capacitors and 1% for resistors. With the example circuit the tolerances are already applied but the procedure for doing this is as follows:

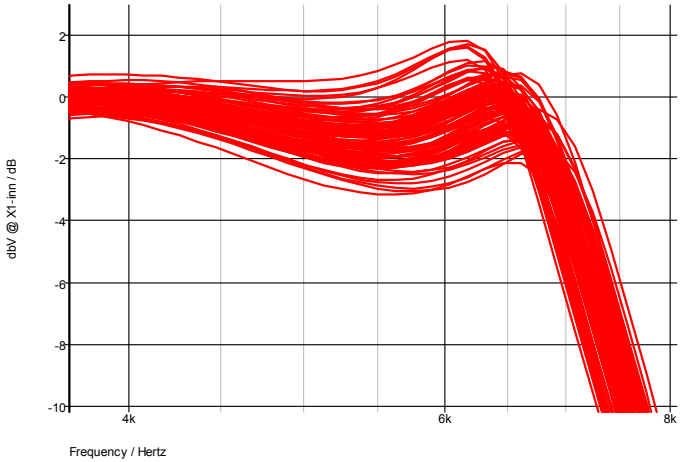
1. Select menu item Monte-Carlo|Set All Resistor Tolerances
2. Enter 1%. (The % *is* recognised)
3. Select menu item Monte-Carlo|Set All Capacitor Tolerances
4. Enter 10%.

The example circuit has already been set up to run 100 steps of Monte Carlo. To view the settings:

1. Select menu Simulator|Choose Analysis...
2. Note in the section Monte Carlo and Multi-step Analysis the Enable multi-step box is checked.
3. Press the Define... button.
4. Note that in the Sweep Mode section, Monte Carlo is selected and in the Step Parameters section Number of steps has been set to 100.

Start the analysis in the usual way. It takes about 2.5 seconds with a 1.5G P4.

The analysis will be repeated 10 times. Now plot the output of the filter in the usual way (Probe AC/Noise|dB - Voltage...). The result is the following:



As can be seen, the specification is not met for some runs.

The SIMetrix Monte Carlo analysis implementation has many more features such as:

- Random variation of device model parameters.
- Support for matched devices.
- Log file creation
- Seed selection to allow repeated runs with same randomly applied values.

Component Tolerance Specification

In this section we will only cover the simple case of how to specify tolerances on devices at the schematic level. SIMetrix has much more comprehensive features for specifying tolerances aimed primarily at Integrated Circuit design. For complete documentation on tolerance specification please refer to the “Monte Carlo Analysis” chapter of the *Simulator Reference Manual*.

Note that Monte Carlo analysis is not available with the SIMPLIS simulator.

Setting Device Tolerances

To select individual device tolerances proceed as follows:

1. Select component or components whose tolerances you wish to be the same. (You can individually select components by holding the control key down and left clicking on each).
2. Select menu Monte Carlo|Set Selected Component Tolerances... and enter tolerance in the dialog box. You may use the '%' symbol here if you wish, so 5% and 0.05 have the same effect. (Note: this is the only place that '%' is recognised - you can't use it netlists or models).

If all the resistors or all the capacitors in a circuit are to have the same tolerance, select either Monte Carlo|Select All Capacitor Tolerances or
Monte Carlo|Select All Resistor Tolerances.

Device tolerances can be applied to the following components:

Capacitors
Resistors
Inductors
Fixed voltage sources
Fixed current sources
Voltage controlled voltage sources
Voltage controlled current sources
Current controlled voltage sources
Current controlled current sources
Lossless transmission lines (applied to Z0 parameter)

Device tolerance will be ignored for other devices.

Model Tolerances

Refer to "Monte Carlo Analysis" on page 224 of the "Simulator Reference Manual"

Matching Devices

Some devices such as resistor networks are constructed in a manner that their tolerances track. Such devices often have two specifications one is an absolute tolerance and the other a matching tolerance. A thin film resistor network might have an absolute tolerance of 1% but a matching tolerance of 0.05%. This means that the resistors will vary over a +/-1% range but will always be within +/-0.05% of each other.

To specify matched devices for Monte Carlo analysis two pieces of information are required. Firstly, the components that are matched to each other must be identified and secondly their matching tolerances need to be specified.

To Identify Matched Devices

- Select the components you wish to match to each other. (Use control key to select multiple components.)
- Select menu item Monte Carlo|Match Selected Devices
- You must now supply a *lot* name which must be unique. You can use any alphanumeric name.

Matching Tolerances

To specify device match tolerances, proceed as follows:

- Select the components you wish to match to each other. (Use control key to select multiple components.)
- Select menu item Monte Carlo|Set Match Tolerances
- Enter the desired tolerance.

If using device tolerance parameters, note that any absolute tolerance specified must be the same for all devices within the same lot. Any devices with the same lot name but different absolute tolerance will be treated as belonging to a different lot. For example if a circuit has four resistors all with lot name RN1 but two of them have an absolute tolerance of 1% and the other two have an absolute tolerance of 2%, the 1% resistors won't be matched to the 2% resistors. The 1% resistors will however be matched to each other as will the 2% resistors. This does not apply to match tolerances. It's perfectly OK to have devices with different match tolerances within the same lot.

Random Distribution

The default distribution for device tolerances is Gaussian with the tolerance representing a 3σ spread. This can be changed to rectangular using two simulator options. These are

MC_ABSOLUTE_RECT	If set absolute tolerances will have a rectangular distribution
MC_MATCH_RECT	If set matching tolerances will have a rectangular distribution.

Distributions can be specified on a per component basis or even a per parameter basis by using distribution functions in an expression. See the “Monte Carlo Analysis” chapter of the *Simulator Reference Manual* for details.

Running Monte Carlo

Overview

There are actually two types of Monte Carlo analyses. These are:

1. Single step Monte Carlo sweep
2. Multi step Monte Carlo run.

1. above is applicable to AC, DC, Noise and Transfer Function analyses. 2. can be applied to the same analyses in addition to transient analysis.

An example of 1. can be seen on page 173. This was a run where the gain at a single frequency was calculated 1000 times with the Monte Carlo tolerances applied. This used AC analysis with the Monte Carlo sweep mode - one of the six modes available. Only a single curve is created hence the name *single step*

An example of 2 is the example at the beginning of this chapter. Here a complete frequency sweep from 1kHz to 100kHz was repeated 100 times creating 100 curves.

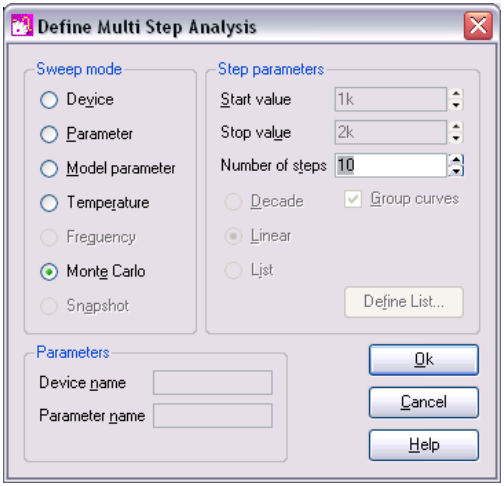
Setting up a Single Step Monte Carlo Sweep

1. Select schematic menu Simulator|Choose Analysis.... Select the AC, DC, Noise or TF tab as required.
2. In the Sweep Parameters section, press the Define... button.
3. In the Sweep Mode section select Monte Carlo.

4. In the Parameters section enter the required value for the Number of points.
5. For AC, Noise and TF, you must also supply a value for Frequency.

Setting up a Multi Step Monte Carlo Run

1. Select schematic menu Simulator|Choose Analysis.... Select the AC, DC, Noise, Transient or TF tab as required.
2. Define the analysis as required.
3. In the Monte Carlo and Multi-step Analysis section, check the Enable multi-step box then press the Define... button. This will open:-



4. In the Sweep mode section, select Monte Carlo.
5. In the Step Parameters section, enter the number of steps required.

Running a Monte Carlo Analysis

Monte Carlo analyses are run in exactly the same way as other analyses. Press F9 or equivalent menu.

Setting the Seed Value

The random variations are created using a pseudo random number sequence. The sequence can be seeded such that it always produces the same sequence of numbers for a given seed. In Monte Carlo analysis, the random number generator is seeded with a new value at the start of each run and this seed value is displayed in the log file. It is also possible to fix the first seed that is used using the SEED option. This makes it possible to repeat a run. To do this, note the seed value of the run of interest from the log file then set the seed as follows:

1. Select schematic menu Simulator|Choose Analysis....

2. Select Options tab and enter the seed value in the Monte Carlo section.

The first run of each Monte Carlo analysis will use the same random values as the run from which you obtained the seed value in the log file. Note this assumes that only changes in values are made to the circuit. Any topology change will upset the sequence.

This technique is a convenient way of investigating a particular run that perhaps produced unexpected results. Obtain the seed used for that run, then repeat with the seed value but doing just a single run. You will then be able to probe around the circuit and plot the results for just that run.

Analysing Monte-Carlo Results

Plots

Plots of Monte Carlo analyses are performed in exactly the same manner as for normal runs. When you probe a circuit point curves for each run in the MC analysis will be created. You will notice, however, that only one label for each *set* of curves will be displayed. Operations on curves such as deleting and moving will be performed on the complete set.

Identifying Curves

Sometimes it is useful to know exactly which run a particular curve is associated with. To do this proceed as follows:

1. Switch on graph cursors. (Cursors|Toggle On/Off menu)
2. Pick up the main cursor (the one with the short dashes) and place it on the curve of interest. (To pick up a cursor, place mouse cursor at intersection, press left key and drag).
3. Select Show Curve Info menu. Information about the curve will be displayed in the command shell.

This is an example of what will be displayed

```
Source group: ac1
Curve id: 4
Run number: 49
```

The information of interest here is the *Run number*. With this you can look up in the log file details of the run i.e. what values were used for each component and parameter. You can also obtain the seed value used so that the run can be repeated. See “Setting the Seed Value” on page 310.

Plotting a single Curve

If you wish to plot a single curve in a Monte Carlo set, you must obtain the run number then use the Probe|Add Curve... menu to plot an indexed expression. We use an example to explain the process.

Using the Chebyshev filter example, let's suppose that we wish to plot the curve of the filter output created by run 49 alone without the remaining curves. Proceed as follows.

1. Run the chebyshev filter example as explained at the beginning of this chapter.
2. Select menu Probe|Add Curve...
3. Click on the output of the filter. You should see C4_P entered in the Y expression box.
4. You must now modify the expression you have entered to give it an index value. For the simple case of a single voltage or current just append it with

   ```
   [index]
   ```

   where *index* is the run number less 1. In this example the run number is 49 so we enter 48 for the index. You should now have:

   ```
   C4_P[48]
   ```

   displayed in the Y expression box.
5. Close box. You should see a single curve plotted.

An alternative method of plotting single curves is given in "Setting the Seed Value" on page 310.

Creating Histograms

See "Performance Analysis and Histograms" on page 255.

Chapter 13 Sundry Topics

Symbolic Path Names

Overview

Some file system path names used by SIMetrix may be defined using a symbolic constant. Such paths are of the form:

%symbol%path

Where *symbol* is the name of the constant and *path* is any sequence of characters valid for a path name. The actual path is resolved by substituting %*symbol*% with the value of *symbol*.

Symbolic paths make it easy to move files to new locations as only the values for their symbols need to be changed in order for SIMetrix to be able to continue to find them.

Definition

There are two types of symbolic constant. These are *system constants* and *user constants*. system constants are pre-defined while user constants can be arbitrarily defined by the user. There are currently 5 system constants. These are:

STARTPATH	Full path of the current working directory from where SIMetrix was launched
DOCSPATH	Full path of the *My Documents* folder on Windows, $HOME on Linux.
EXEPATH	Full path of the location of the SIMetrix binary SIMetrix.exe on Winodws, SIMetrix on Linux).
APPDATAPATH	Full path of the *Application Data* directory.
TEMPPATH	Path of temporary directory

User constants must be defined in the configuration file. See "Configuration Settings" on page 316 for more information. User constants are defined in the [Locations] section of the file. Currently these must be added by hand using a text editor.

The format used is as follows:

[Locations]
symbol_definitions

Where *symbol_definitions* is any number lines of the form:

symbolname=symbolvalue

symbolvalue may be any sequence of characters that are valid for a system path name and may contain spaces. There is no need to enclose it in quotation marks even if the

value contains spaces. Nested definitions to any level are permitted. That is *symbolvalue* may also itself use other symbolic constants. Recursive definitions won't raise an error but will not be meaningful.

UNC paths (e.g. \\server\c\project) may be used for *symbolvalue*.

Comments may be added to the project file prefixed with a semi-colon.

Configuration File Example

The following shows examples of symbolic path name definitions in the configuration file. Lines such as these may be placed anywhere in the file, but we recommend that they are placed at the end.

```
; Project file
[Locations]
Project=c:\Projects\proj1
Cells=%PROJECT%\Cells
```

Using Symbolic Names

Symbolic path constants may be used in the applications listed below. In all cases a mechanism called *automatic path matching* is used which means that to use symbolic paths, all you need to do is define the values in the project file then carry on working as before. The automatic path matching algorithm attempts to match a user symbol or one of the EXEPATH or DOCSPATH system symbols to a part of the path being processed. If a match is found, the path name will be stored with the symbolic value.

Component paths

If a component is placed using the full path option, the automatic path matching mechanism described above will be invoked. For example suppose the user symbol CELLS has the value C:\Projects\Proj1\Cells and the component with path C:\Projects\Proj1\Cells\celllib1\inv.sxsch is placed *using the full path method*. The actual value of the *schematic_path* property will become %CELLS%\celllib1\inv.sxsch. The matching of C:\Projects\Proj1\Cells to %CELLS% is performed automatically.

Note that automatic path matching will not be invoked for components placed using the relative path method.

Global model library file paths

Model files installed globally can use symbolic paths. The automatic path matching mechanism described above will be invoked when models are installed. So if the model file C:\SPICELIB\OnSemi*.mod and the symbol MODELLIB has the value C:\SPICELIB, the model file path will be saved as %MODELLIB%\OnSemi*.mod.

Path option variables

StartupDir
ScriptDir
BiScriptDir
TempDataDir

PSpiceIniPath
DefaultLib
SymbolsDir

Automatic path matching is invoked whenever these values are set or modified.

Symbol file locations

Schematic symbol file paths may be stored using symbolic constants. Automatic path matching is invoked whenever a library is installed.

Notes for Windows

The automatic path matching system will correctly match a drive based path (e.g. h:\projects\proj1) with its mapped UNC path (e.g. \\server1\c\projects\proj1) provided the drive based path points to a network share and not a local drive. For example if the project fie contains the entry:

```
Project=\\server1\c\projects\proj1
```

and \\server1\c is mapped to the H: drive then the file H:\Projects\proj1\cell23.sxcmp will be stored as %Project%\cell23.sxcmp. However, if you are actually running SIMetrix from the machine server1 and \\server1\c is the share name for the local C: drive then C:\Projects\proj1\cell23.sxcmp will not be recognised as equivalent to %Project%\cell23.sxcmp. This limitation is due to security restrictions in Windows NT/2000/XP.

SIMetrix Command Line Parameters

A number of command line parameters may be supplied to the SIMetrix binary (SIMetrix.exe on Windows, SIMetrix on Linux) when starting the program. The full syntax is as follows:

SIMetrix(.exe) [*schematic_file*] [/s *startup_script*] [/i] [/n] [/c *config_location*] [/f *features*]

schematic_file	Path of a schematic file usually with extension .sxsch. This file will be opened immediately.
/s *startup_script*	Name of script file or command that will be executed immediately after SIMetrix starts.
/i	If specified, the *schematic_file* or/and *startup_script* will be opened/run in an existing instance of SIMetrix if there is one. That is, a new instance will not be started unless none are already running.
/n	Inhibits the display of the splash screen. (Inactive for version 5.1 as this does not display a splash screen).
/c *config_location*	This identifies where SIMetrix stores its configuration settings. *config_location* should be of the form: PATH;*file_pathname*

file_pathname identifies the location of a file to store the configuration settings. You may use any of the system constants defined in "Definition" on page 313 in this definition of *file_pathname*. E.g. %EXEPATH% for the executable directory.

See "Configuration Settings" below for details of configuration settings

The 'REG;' syntax available with earlier versions is no longer supported.

/f *features* — Specifies which features are enabled. See "Mixed Feature Licenses" on page 25 for more information about this option.

Using startup.ini

Start-up parameters can also be specified in a file called startup.ini. On Windows this must be located in the same directory as SIMetrix.exe. On Linux the file must be located at $HOME/.simetrix/startup.ini. The format of the file is as follows:

[StartUp]
settings

settings can be any combination of the following:

StartupScript=*startup_script* (equiv to /s on command line)
UsePrevInst= (equiv to /i on command line)
InhibitSplash= (equiv to /n on command line)
ConfigLoc=*config_location* (equiv to /c on command line)
Features=*features* (equiv to /f on command line)

Configuration Settings

Overview

SIMetrix, in common with most applications, needs to store a number of values that affect the operation of the program. These are known as configuration settings. Included among these are the locations of installed symbol libraries, installed model libraries, font preferences, colour preferences and default window positions.

Default Configuration Location

By default, SIMetrix stores configuration settings in a single file. This file is located at:

simetrix_app_data_dir\v*XX*\Base.sxprj

Replace *XX* with the version number. E.g. 51 for version 5.1x

See "Application Data Directory" below for location of *simetrix_app_data_dir*.

Application Data Directory

SIMetrix stores a number of files in its *application data directory.* On the Linux platform this is simply at:

$HOME/.simetrix

On Windows the directory is at this location:

sys_application_data_dir\Catena Software\SIMetrix

Where sys_*application_data_dir* is a system defined location. The following table shows typical locations for all supported Windows systems:

Operating System	Path
Windows 2000 Windows XP	C:\Documents and Settings*username*\Application Data
Windows NT 4	C:\WINNT\Profiles*username*\Application Data
Windows 95/98/ME	Unsupported platform

username is the log on name currently being used. The above are only typical locations on English language versions of Windows. The user or system administrator may move them and also the names used may be different for non-English versions of Windows.

Specifying Other Locations for Config Settings

You can specify alternative locations for the configuration settings. This can be done with the /c switch on the command line or ConfigLoc setting in the startup.ini file. See "SIMetrix Command Line Parameters" on page 315 for more details.

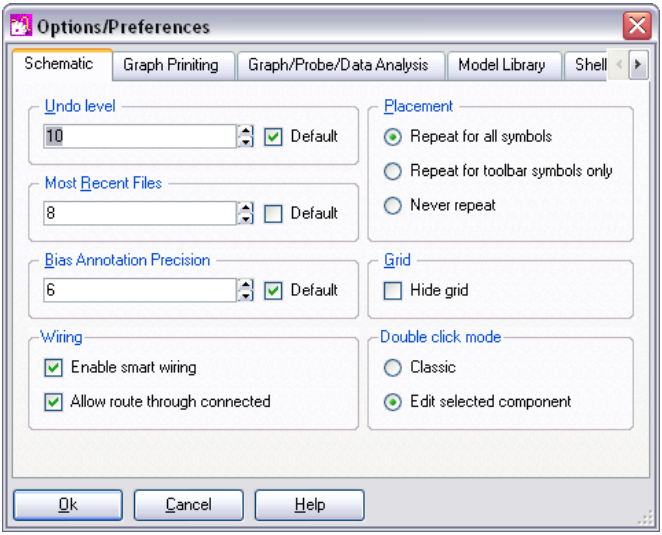
Options

Overview

There are a number of options affecting all aspects of SIMetrix. Many of these may be viewed and adjusted using the Options dialog box, others can only be accessed from the command line using the Set and UnSet commands.

Using the Options Dialog

This is invoked with the menu File|Options|General... . This brings up the following:



Schematic Sheet

Undo Level — Number of levels of schematic undo. See "Creating a Schematic" on page 52

Placement — When to auto-repeat placement of schematic components. If auto-repeat is enabled, a new symbol to be placed is automatically displayed after each placement. This speeds the placement of many instances of the same device.

Most Recent Files — Controls how many recently used files files are displayed in the File|Reopen menu

Double click mode — Selects action when double clicking a schematic instance. Select Classic to retain pre version 5.0 behaviour whereby double clicking always starts a new wire. Select Edit selected component for the default behaviour which is to invoke the device value editor.

Bias Annotation Precision — Controls the precision of the schematic voltage and current bias annotation markers.

Grid — Option to hide the schematic's grid

Wiring — Enable smart wiring enable the smart wiring algorithm. See "Wiring" on page 74 for details about smart wiring

Allow route through connected is an option for the smart wiring algorithm that allows it select routes that pass through existing wires that are already connected to the source or target

destinations.

Double click mode — Classic: Double click action behaves the same as for versions 4.5 and earlier

Edit selected component: Double clicking a symbol in the schematic invokes the value editor. (Same as pressing F7)

Graph Printing

Axis line width — Width in mm of printed axis

Grid line width — Width in mm of printed grid lines

Curve line width — Width in mm of printed curves

Curve identification — When printing on monochrome printers or if Use markers for colour is selected, curves are differentiated using different line styles (solid, dashed etc.) and marker shapes (circles, squares etc.). For a large number of curves both methods are used but for just a few you can use this option to state your preference

Prefer line styles
printed curves will first be differentiated using line styles

Prefer curve markers
Printed curves will first be differentiated using curve markers

Use markers for colour
Even if printing to a colour printer, curves will still be printed using markers and variable line styles to differentiate them. They will also be printed in colour. This is useful when creating on-line documents (e.g. using Adobe Acrobat Distiller) which might subsequently be viewed on-line or printed out.

Graph/Probe/Data Analysis

Probe update times — Plots created from fixed probes are updated on a regular basis. This controls how frequently and when it starts.

Period
Update period in seconds

Start
Start delay in seconds

Temporary data file delete
Simulation data is stored in data files that are placed in the temporary data directory (see file locations below). These options control when these data files are deleted.

Never
Temporary files are never deleted but will be overwritten in subsequent sessions. Not recommended unless you only ever do short simulations.

When SIMetrix starts

All temporary files are deleted when SIMetrix starts.

When SIMetrix closes
All temporary files are deleted when SIMetrix is shut down. While using SIMetrix, you can recover earlier simulation runs. Normally, only the 3 most recent are kept but earlier ones can be recovered from the TEMPDATA directory using File|Load Data... .

When data is no longer needed
This is the most aggressive delete method and is recommended if you do many long runs or/and have limited disc space. By default, the 3 most recent runs are kept but with the other options above, the data files are not deleted when the data is not needed but links to the data in them are released. (See explanation below). If this option is set, the data files are deleted as soon as they become out of date, optimising use of disc space at the expense of not being able to recover old data.

Sizes

Curve weight
Thickness of displayed curves. Curves display much quicker if this value is set to 1 but are clearer (but can lose detail) if set to 2.

Digital Axis Height
Sets height of axes (in mm) used to plot digital traces.

Min grid height
When a grid is added to a graph window, existing grids are reduced in height to accommodate the new one. But they won't be reduced to a height lower than specified by this setting. When this limit is reached, the vertical space will be increased by allowing the window to scroll.

Curosr readout

Controls where cursor values are displayed.

On graph
Values are displayed on the graph itself

Status bar
Values are displayed in status bar boxes at the bottom of the graph window

Both
Displayed in both locations as described above.

How data is stored. For info only

Simulation data is stored in temporary data files as explained above. The data is not read into system memory until it is needed - say - to plot a graph. However, the location in the file of the various vectors is always in memory so that the data can be extracted from the file as rapidly as possible. It is this latter location data that is destroyed when a simulation run gets out of date. The file containing the data gets deleted at a time set by the above options, not necessarily when the data is no longer needed. As long as the file exists, the data can be recovered by calling File|Data|Load... or File|Data|Load Temporary Data... which re builds the location data.

Model Library

Library Diagnostics — Determines whether messages are displayed when models are found in the library.

Model read in — If the Don't abort on unknown parameters check box is cleared, the simulation will abort if models are found that have parameters unsupported by SIMetrix

File Locations

Locations in your files system of various files and folders needed for correct operation of SIMetrix.

Scripts — Location of script directory. This directory is searched for any scripts you run. Only change this setting if you are actually moving the script directory. Changing this setting has no effect until you restart SIMetrix.

Start up — Current working directory on start up.

Temp Data — Location of temporary simulation data files. Changing this setting has no effect until you restart SIMetrix. Note that this should always be a local directory. That is, it must not be on a remote network partition.

Built-in Scripts — This is the first location that SIMetrix searches for scripts. Much of the user interface is implemented with scripts and these are all internal to the program. These can be overridden by placing scripts of the same name at this location. This allows modification of the UI. Changing this setting has no effect until you restart SIMetrix.

Start up Script — Name of script that is automatically run on startup. You can place custom menu or key definitions in this file.

Editor — Text editor called by EditFile command as used by a number of menus. Default is notepad.

PSpice inifile — Set this file location if you wish to use the PSpice 'Schematics' translator. See "PSpice Schematics Translation" on page 114 for more information.

System Symbols Location — Directory location where the standard symbols are located.

User Symbols Location — Directory where user symbol libraries are expected to be located. Note, you can place symbol libraries anywhere. This directory is simply a location that some UI functions use as a default.

Shell/Scripts

Script Options — Echo all messages
If set, all script lines will be displayed in the message window. This will result in a great deal of output and will slow down the

whole program operation. Only set this if you are debugging your own scripts.

Don't abort scripts on error
Normally scripts abort if an error is detected. Check this box to disable this behaviour.

Menu/Keys disable — The built-in menu and key definitions can be disabled, allowing you to define your own. See "User Defined Key and Menu Definitions" on page 332 for more info on how to do this.

Disable standard menus
Disables menu definitions and any key defined as short-cuts to a menu. Does not take effect until you restart SIMetrix.

Disable standard key definitions
Disable key definitions. Note that many of the key assignments are defined as menu short-cuts (their name appears in the menu text). These are not disabled by this option. Does not take effect until you restart SIMetrix.

File Extensions

Defines extensions used for the various files used by SIMetrix.

Note that the default settings for three file types have five letters rather than the usual three. This is to avoid conflict with other applications where file associations are involved. Some file servers on network systems do not support five letter extensions. If you are using such a system you will need to change these settings.

For each setting, the supported extensions are separated by a semi-colon. The first in the list is the default. So, for example, the default schematic extension is sxsch so when you save a schematic without giving an extension, it will automatically be given the extension sxsch.

Schematic Files	Extensions used for schematic files.
Schematic Components	Extensions used by schematic component files.
Data Files	Extensions used for simulation data files
Text files	Supported extensions for text files. (File|Scripts|Edit File will list all files with these extensions)
Symbol Files	Extension used for binary schematic symbol files. This is for future expansion. Currently this setting has no effect.
Logic Def. Files	Files used for logic definitions for the digital simulator's arbitrary logic block. If the extension is omitted in the model (FILE parameter) this will be used.
Scripts	Default extension for scripts if called without an extension
Device models	SPICE model files. For future expansion, currently unused.
Device catalogs	Extension for device catalogs used by parts browser system.

Using the Set and Unset commands

All options have a name and many also have a value. These are set using the Set command (page 289) and can be cleared with UnSet (page 290). When an option is cleared it is restored to its default value. A complete listing of available options with possible values is given below. Note that option settings are *persistent.* This means that their values are stored either in the .INI file or in the system registry (see "Configuration Settings" on page 316) and automatically restored at the start of each subsequent SIMetrix session.

List of Options

Upper and lower case letters have been used for the option names in the following listing only for clarity. Option names and their values are not in fact case sensitive. Many of the options described below are supported by the Options dialog box in which case they are noted accordingly.

Name	Type	Description	User interface support
700Extensions	Boolean	Schematic symbols for the 700 series semi-custom arrays are enabled if this is set.	
AlwaysUseMarkers	Boolean	Graphs are printed with markers even for colour printers.	Options dialog
AxisPrintWidth	Numeric	Default = 0.5 Width of printed axis in mm. See also CurvePrintWidth and GridPrintWidth	Options dialog
BiScriptDir	Text	This is the first location that SIMetrix searches for scripts. See File Locations section of options dialog above for more info.	Options dialog

Name	Type	Description	User interface support
CancelOnFocusLost	Boolean	Default = True on Windows, False on Linux When true, interactive actions are cancelled when the window focus is lost. This can cause problems if the environment is set up with 'Point to give focus' as moving the mouse outside the active window then cancels the user's action. 'Point to give focus' is available on Linux systems.	No
CursorDisplay	String	Default = *Graph*. Controls initial graph cursor readout display. *Graph* Display on graph only *StatusBar* Display on status bar only *Both* Display on both graph and status bar	Options dialog
CurvePrintWidth	Numeric	Default = 0.5mm Width of printed graph curves in mm. See also GridPrintWidth.	Options dialog
CurveWeight	Numeric	Default = 1 Sets the line width in pixels of graph curves. Note that although widths greater than 1 are clearer they normally take considerably longer to draw. This does however depend on the type of adapter card and display driver you are using.	Options dialog

Name	Type	Description	User interface support
DataGroupDelete	Text	Default = *OnStart* Determines when temporary simulation data is deleted. Possible values, *Never*, *OnStart*, *OnClose* and *OnDelete*. See"Graph/Probe/Data Analysis" on page 319 for details.	Options dialog
DigAxisHeight	Numeric	Default = 8.0mm Height of digital axis in mm. (Screens are typically 75pixels/inch)	Options dialog
EchoOn	Boolean	When set, all commands are echoed to the command shell message window. This is used primarily for script debugging.	Options dialog
Editor	Text	Default = NOTEPAD.EXE Default text editor.	Options dialog
ExportRawFormat	Text	Default = SPICE3 Possible values, SPICE3, SPECTRE and OTHER. Controls format of raw output. See "Exporting SPICE3 Raw Files" on page 271	No
GridPrintWidth	Numeric	Default = 0.3mm Width of printed graph grid lines in mm. See also CurvePrintWidth	Options dialog
GroupPersistence	Numeric	Default = 3 Sets the number of groups that are kept before being deleted. See "Plotting the Results from a Previous Simulation" on page 233	No
HideSchematicGrid	Boolean	If set, the schematic grid will be suppressed	Options dialog

Name	Type	Description	User interface support
HighlightIncrement	Numeric	Default = 1 Highlighted graph curves are thicker than normal curves by the amount specified by this option	No
InhibitAutoCD	Boolean	The current working directory is automatically changed to the displayed schematic when you switch schematic tabs. Set this option to disable this feature.	No
LibraryDiagnostics	Text	Default = *Full* Possible values, *Partial*, *None* and *Full*. Affects progress information displayed during model library searching.	Options dialog
MaxVectorBufferSize	Numeric	Default=32768 See "Data Buffering" on page 17 of the *Simulator Reference Manual* for a full explanation	
MinGridHeight	Numeric	Minimum allowed height of graph grid	Options dialog
MRUSize	Numeric	Default = 4 Number of items in File|Reopen menu.	Options dialog
NoKeys	Boolean	If on, the default key definitions will be disabled. Note this will not take affect until the *next* session of SIMetrix.	Options dialog
NoMenu	Boolean	If on, the default menu definitions will be disabled and no menu bar will appear. This will not take affect until the *next* session of SIMetrix.	Options dialog

Name	Type	Description	User interface support
NoStopOnError	Boolean	If disabled, scripts and multi-command lines (i.e. several commands on the same line separated by ';') are aborted if any individual command reports an error.	Options dialog
NoStopOnUnknownParam	Boolean	If on, a warning rather than an error is given if an unknown device model parameter is found. The simulation will continue if there are only warnings but will not if there are errors.	Options dialog
OpenIntro	Boolean	If set the Welcome dialog box is opened on startup.	Check box in Welcome dialog
Precision	Numeric	Default = 10 Precision of numeric values displayed using Show command.	No
PrintOptions	Text	Options set in print dialog	Print dialog
PrintWireWidth	Numeric	Default=5 Width in pixels of schematic wires when printed	No
ProbeStartDelay	Numeric	Default = 1 Delay after start of simulation run before fixed probe graphs are first opened.	Options dialog
ProbeUpdatePeriod	Numeric	Default = 0.5 seconds Update period for fixed probe graphs	Options dialog
PSpiceIniPath	Text	Path of PSPICE.INI file needed for the PSpice ‘Schematics’ translator.	Option dialog

Name	Type	Description	User interface support
RepeatPlace	Text	Default = *Toolbar* Controls when schematic placement is repeated. Possible values, *Always*, *Toolbar* (toolbar symbols only) and *Never*.	Options dialog
ScriptDir	Text	Directory used to search for scripts and symbol files if not found in the current directory. Changes to this option do not take effect until next session.	Options dialog
SIMPLISComponentButtons	Text	As ComponentButtons but for SIMPLIS operation	Schematic Toolbar menu
StartUpDir	Text	Current directory set at start of session.	Options dialog
StartUpFile	Text	Default = Startup.SXSCR Script that is automatically run at start of each session.	Options dialog
StatusUpdatePeriod	Numeric	Default = 0.2 seconds Minimum delay in seconds between updates of simulator status window during run.	No
SymbolsDir	Text	Path of directory where system symbol libraries are located.	Option dialog
TempDataDir	Text	Default = %TEMPPATH%\SIMetrixTempData See "Default Configuration Location" on page 316 for definition of %TEMPPATH% Directory where temporary simulation data files are placed.	Options dialog

Name	Type	Description	User interface support
TotalVectorBufferSize	Numeric	See "Data Buffering" on page 17 of the *Simulator Reference Manual* for a full explanation	
UndoBufferSize	Numeric	Default = 10 Number of levels of schematic undo. See "Creating a Schematic" on page 52	Options dialog
UpdateClosedSchematics	Boolean	Allows SIMetrix to write to closed schematic if required. See "Closed Schematics" on page 227	
UseAltGraphPrintStyles	Boolean	Determines method of differentiating curves on monochrome hardcopies. See "Graph Printing" on page 319	Options dialog
UseOldOpenSave	Boolean	If specified the old style dialog box is used for File open and close operations. This is faster for some systems.	No
UseGreekMu	Boolean	Prefix for 10E-6 displayed as the greek letter μ. Otherwise displays a u. Off by default as μ displays incorrectly with some non-English OS versions	No
UserScriptDir	Text	Alternative location for user scripts. See *Script Reference Manual* for more information	No
UserSymbolsDir	Text	Path of directory where the user's symbol libraries are stored.	Options dialog
WireWidth	Numeric	Width in pixels of schematic lines. Default = 1.	No

File Extension

The following options set default file extensions. See options dialog for more details.

Option name	Default value	Description
CatalogExtension	cat	Catalog files
ComponentExtension	sxcmp	Schematic component files
DataExtension	sxdat;dat	Data files
GraphExtension	sxgph	Graph binary files
LogicDefExtension	ldf	Arbitrary block logic definition files
ModelExtension	lb;lib;mod;cir	SPICE model files
SchematicExtension	sxsch;sch	Schematic files
ScriptExtension	sxscr;txt	Scripts
SnapshotExtension	sxsnp	Simulator snapshot files
SymbolExtension	lib	Binary symbol files
TextExtension	txt;net;cir;mod; ldf;sxscr;lib;lb; cat	Text files

Toolbar Buttons

The buttons displayed on each of the standard toolbars are defined with an option variable - that is one for each toolbar. The value of the option consists of a series of semi-colon delimited button names. A complete list of button names and full information concerning user defined toolbars can be found in the *Script Reference Manual.* The toolbar option variable names are listed below.

Option name	Description
ComponentButtons	Schematic parts in SIMetrix mode
CommandShellMainButtons	Command shell toolbar
SIMPLISComponentButtons	Schematic parts in SIMPLIS mode
SchematicMainButtons	Schematic main toolbar
SchematicFileButtons	Schematic file operations toolbar
SymbolMainButtons	Symbol editor toolbar
GraphMainButtons	Graph window toolbar

Colours and Fonts

Colours

Colours for schematic symbols, wires, graph curves and graph grids may be customised using the colour dialog box. This is opened using the File|Options|Colour menu item.

Select the object whose colour you wish to change then select Edit button to change it. The colours you select are stored persistently and will remain in effect for future sessions of SIMetrix.

Fonts

Fonts for various components of SIMetrix may be selected using the font selection dialog box. This is opened using the File|Options|Font... menu item.

Select the item whose font you wish to change the press Edit to select new font. Items available are:

Font object name	Where font used
Associate Model Text	Model display window in associate model dialog box
Command Line	Command line at top of command shell
F11 Window	Schematic F11 window used for simulator commands
Graph	Graph windows
Graph Caption	Graph Caption objects placed using Annotate|Add Caption
Graph Free Text	Graph Free Text object placed using Annotate|Add Free Text
Legend Box	Graph Legend Box object placed using Annotate|Add Legend Box
Message Window	Bottom part of command shell
Print Caption	Font used at base of printed schematic and graph
Schematic	Default for schematics. Note that the size for all schematic fonts is relative. The actual font size used also depends on current zoom level. The font you select will be the size used for zoom magnification 1.0 as displayed in the status bar of the schematic.
Schematic - annotation	Schematic used by bias annotation markers

Font object name	Where font used
Schematic - caption	Schematic captions. (Popup menu Add Caption...)
Schematic - free text	Schematic free text. (Popup menu Add Free Text...)
Schematic - user 1-4	Unassigned schematic fonts. You can assign any of these fonts (or in fact any of the other schematic fonts) to any symbol property at the symbol definition stage. You can also change the font assignment of any unprotected property on a schematic using the popup menu Edit Properties... .
View File Window	Window opened for viewing files - such as the simulator list file or netlist file

Notes on Schematic Fonts

There are 8 fonts assigned for use on schematics. This means that you can have up to eight different fonts on a schematic. The actual definition of that font is defined in the Font dialog and stored with your user settings and is not stored in the schematic. Only the name (as in the list above) is stored with the schematic property. This means that if you give a schematic file to a colleague, it may display differently on his machine depending on how the font options are set up. So for this reason it is best to keep to the allocated purpose for each font. Caption fonts should be large and possibly bold, free text should be smaller etc. etc.

User Defined Key and Menu Definitions

The menu system and most of the keyboard are user definable. In principle it is possible to define completely new menus which bear no similarity with the built-in menus. A more normal use of menu and key redefinition would probably be to add a special function or perhaps to delete some unused menus.

Menus are defined using the DefMenu command and keys can be defined with the DefKey command. Unless you only wish to make a temporary definition it is best to place DefMenu and DefKey commands in the start up script so that they are automatically defined for all future sessions.

Key definitions may be *context sensitive*. That is, the definition is dependent on which type of window is currently active. See DefKey command page 282) for more details.

The commands ListStdMenu and ListStdKeys list to a file the definitions for the built-in menu and key definitions. These can be used to modify the existing definitions.

You can disable the built-in definitions from the options dialog box.
(File|Options|General...)

Menu Short-cuts

These are keys which activate defined menus. The key name is displayed to the right of the menu text. All menu definitions may have short-cuts specified using the /shortcut switch for the DefMenu command. A potential problem arises if the same key is used for a short-cut and a key definition using DefKey. If this happens, the DefKey definition takes precedence.

User Defined Toolbars and Buttons

All toolbars and buttons are user definable and it is also possible to create new toolbars and buttons. Full details are provided in the *Script Reference Manual* Chapter 7.

Startup Script

The startup script is executed automatically each time SIMetrix is launched. By default it is called startup.sxscr but this name can be changed with in the options dialog box. (File|Options|General...). The startup file may reside in the script directory (defined by ScriptDir option variable) or in a user script directory (defined by UserScriptDir option variable).

The most common use for the startup script is to define custom menus and keys but any commands can be placed there.

To edit the startup script, select the File|Scripts|Edit Startup menu item.

Index

.LIB 159
.OUT file 253
.PARAM 151
.param 151

3dB points, calculating 244
700Extensions option variable 323

A
abs function 293
ABSTOL 187
AC sweep analysis 176
    SIMPLIS 199
ALL.CAT 158
AlwaysUseMarkers option variable 323
Analog behavioural modelling
    laplace 141
    non-linear 139
Analog-digital converter 137
Analysis modes
    AC sweep 176
    choose analysis dialog 162
    DC sweep 174
    Monte Carlo sweep 173
    multi-step 188
    noise 177
    operating point 169
    options 186
    pole-zero 185
    real time noise 181
    sensitivity 185
    SIMPLIS 195
        AC 199
        Periodic operating point (POP) 197–199
        transient 195
    specifying 57, 162
    sweep modes 170–174
    sweeping devices 170
    sweeping frequency 173

sweeping model parameters 171
sweeping parameters 171
sweeping temperature 171
transfer function 182
transient 164–169
restarting 167
transient snapshots 167
APPDATAPATH system path 313
Application data directory 317
arg function 293
arg_rad function 293
atan function 293
Axes
creating new 231
deleting 232
editing 232
reordering digital 233
selecting 231
AxisPrintWidth option variable 323

B

Bandwidth
function 263
Bias Point 253
BiScriptDir option variable 314, 323
Blackman FFT window 220
Bode plot 208
BPBW function 263
Bus connections - see Schematic; bus connections

C

CancelOnFocusLost option variable 324
Capacitor
editing values 133
initial condition 134
non-linear 142
sweeping 170
Catalog files 158
ALL.CAT 158
OUT.CAT 158
USER.CAT 158
CatalogExtension option variable 330
CentreFreq function 264
Chokes 129
see also Inductor

Choose analysis dialog 162
Circuit rules 54
Circuit stimulus 55
Clipboard
    copying graphs 247
    copying schematics 76
Colours, customising 331
Command history 273
Command line 273
    maximum line length 274
Commands, full list 282
ComponentExtension option variable 330
Configuration settings 316
Core materials 129
cos function 293
Current
    plotting 66, 67
Current source
    controlled 136
    fixed 135
    sweeping 171
CursorDisplay option variable 324
Cursors, graph 236–240
    see also Graph cursors
CurvePrintWidth option variable 324
CurveWeight option variable 324

D
DataExtension option variable 330
DataGroupDelete option variable 325
dB
    function 293
    plotting 67, 208, 213
DC sweep analysis 174
decscript property 102
DefaultLib option variable 315
Defining keys 332
    DefKey command 282
    ListStdKeys command 286
Defining menus 332
    DefMenu command 284
    DelMenu command 286
DefKey command 282
Deleting schematic wires 71
DelMenu command 286

Device power, probing 214
diff function 293
Differential voltage, probing 68
DigAxisHeight option variable 325
Digital-analog converter 137
Disconnecting schematic wires 53, 71
Distortion
    calculating 243, 245
DOCSPATH system path 313
Duplicate models 160
Duty cycle
    calculating 243
Duty function 264

E
EchoOn option variable 325
Editor option variable 325
EXEPATH system path 313
exp function 293
Exporting data 271
ExportRawFormat 325
Expressions 150
Extensions, file 322

F
Fall function 265
Fall time
    calculating 242
Fall time, calculating 245
Fast start, for transient analysis 166
ferrite 129
FFT
    function 294
    of selected curve 246
    phase 218
    plotting 217
File extensions 322
Filter response functions 142
FIR function 294
Flipping schematic components 53, 70
Floor function 295
Fonts, customising 331
Fourier analysis 215–220
Frequency
    function 266

sweeping 173
with multi-step analysis 190
Functional modelling
arbitrary non-linear passive devices 142
generic ADCs and DACs 137
generic digital devices 138
laplace transfer function 141
non-linear transfer function 139
Functions, full list 290

G
Global nets 82
Global pins 82
Goal functions 261
full list 261─263
Graph cursors 236─240
changing styles 238
displaying 237
freezing 238
moving 237
moving to peak or trough 237
readout 238
Graph toolbar 207
GraphExtension option variable 330
Graphs 206
annotation 249─252
AutoAxis 231
captions and free text 252
changing curve weight 320
changing digital axis height 320
copying to clipboard 247
creating new axes 231
creating new grids 231
cursors 236─240
see also Graph cursors
deleting axes and grids 232
deleting curves 235
editing axes 232
hiding curves 235
highlighting curves 236
logarithmic 211, 226
measurements 240
moving curves 231
multiple y-axes 229
naming curves 235

plotting 206
printing options 319
saving and restoring 252
scrolling 246
selecting axes and grids 231
selecting curves 235
showing curves 235
zooming 246
GridPrintWidth option variable 325
Grids
creating new 231
deleting 232
reordering 233
Group curves, multi-step analysis feature 189
Group delay
plotting 213
GroupDelay
function 295
GroupPersistence option variable 234, 325

H
Hamming (FFT window) 220
handle property 102
Hanning (FFT window) 220
HideSchematicGrid option variable 325
Hierarchical schematics - see Schematic; hierarchical
HighlightIncrement option variable 326
Histogram function 295
Histograms 258
HPBW function 266

I
if (template property keyword) 109
ifd (template property keyword) 110
Iff function 296
IIR function 296
im function 297
Impedance, probing 214
Importing data 270
incscript property 102
Inductor
editing values 133
initial condition 134
mutual 132
non-linear 129, 142

sweeping 171
InhibitAutoCD option variable 326
Initial condition
capacitor 134
force resistance 187
inductor 134
inode (template property keyword) 106
Installation 15
integ function 297
Integration method 166
Interp function 297
IsComplex function 298

J
join (template property keyword) 110
join_num (template property keyword) 110
join_pin (template property keyword) 110

K
Keyboard 277

L
Laplace expression 142
length function 298
LibraryDiagnostics option variable 326
Licensing 18
network 19
stand alone 18
List file 253
ListStdKeys command 286
ln function 298
log function 298
log10 function 298
LogicDefExtension option variable 330
lot property 102
LPBW function 267

M
mag function 299
mappednode (template property keyword) 105
mappedpinnames (template property keyword) 105
mapping property 102
match property 102
maxidx function 299
Maxima function 299
MaxVectorBufferSize option variable 326

MC_ABSOLUTE_RECT option variable 309
MC_MATCH_RECT option variable 309
Mean
    calculating 241
    function 300
Mean1 function 300
Menu reference 277
Menu short-cuts 333
Message window 277
MinGridHeight option variable 326
minidx function 300
Minima function 300
Minimum function 301
Mirroring schematic components 53, 70
Model libraries
    .LIB 159
    associating models with symbols 156
    diagnostics 160
    duplicates 160
    importing to schematic 159
    indexes 160
    installing 48, 154
    removing 156
    SPICE to SIMPLIS conversion 123
model property 101, 147
ModelExtension option variable 330
Module port 79
Monte Carlo analysis 305
    analysing results 311
    distributions 309
    example 305
    plotting single curve 311
    running 309
    setting seed 188, 310
    sweep 173, 309
    tolerance
        device 307
        matching 308
        model 308
Moving schematic components 71
MRUSize option variable 326
Multiple schematic placement 77

N
Navigating hierarchical designs 80

netname property 102
Nets
    global 82
node (template property keyword) 106
nodelist (template property keyword) 106
nodename (template property keyword) 106
Noise analysis 177
    plotting results 214
    real time 181
NoKeys option variable 326
NoMenu option variable 326
norm function 301
NoStopOnError option variable 327
NoStopOnUnknownParam option variable 327
Nyquist, plots 213

O
OpenGroup command 286
OpenIntro option variable 327
Operating point analysis 169
    viewing results 253
Options 317–330
    bus probes 221
    colours 331
    dialog box 317
    fixed probe 209
    fonts 331
    SIMPLIS 199
    simulator 186
    variables
        full list 323–330
        GroupPersistence 234
        Set command 289
        UnSet command 290
        UpdateClosedSchematics 227
OUT.CAT 158
Overshoot
    calculating 243, 245
    function 267

P
parallel (template property keyword) 109
Parameters 150
    list file output 188
    passing through hierarchy 84

passing through subcircuits 148
start up 315
sweeping 171
with multi-step analysis 190
params property 102
Parts browser 153
Path names
symbolic 313
Peak, calculating 241
Peak-Peak, calculating 241
PeakToPeak function 268
Period function 268
Periodic operating point 197–199
ph function 301
Phase
function 301
plotting 67, 208, 213
phase_rad function 301
pinlist (template property keyword) 106
pinnames (template property keyword) 106
Pins
global 82
Plotting
arbitrary expressions 222
noise analysis 214
results from earlier run 233
see also Probing
transfer function analysis 215
X-Y 223
Pole-zero analysis 185
viewing results 185
POP 197–199
Potentiometer 134
Precision option variable 327
PrintOptions option variable 327
PrintWireWidth option variable 327
ProbeStartDelay option variable 327
ProbeUpdatePeriod option variable 327
Probing 65–68, 206, 207–228
arbitrary expressions 68, 222
busses 220
device power 214
fixed 65, 208–212
after run has started 212

changing update delay and period 212, 319
current 66
differential voltage 66, 68
in hierarchy 211
list of types 208
options 209
persistence 209
voltage 66
fixed vs random 207
fourier phase 218
fourier spectrum 215
impedance 214
in hierarchical designs 227
old results 233
random 66, 212–228
busses 220
current 67
dB 67
fourier 215
functions 212
phase 67
voltage 67
results from earlier run 233
Properties - see Schematic; properties
PSP 196
PSpice schematic translator 114
configuring 114
opening schematics 115
symbol libraries 115
PSpiceIniPath option variable 315, 327
PulseWidth function 268

R

Random Probes 66
Range function 301
re function 301
ReadLogicCompatibility 287
real function 301
Real time noise analysis 181
ref (template property keyword) 107
Ref function 301
ref property 101, 147
RELTOL 187
repeat (template property keyword) 107
RepeatPlace option variable 328

Reset command 288
Resistor
    additional parameters 133
    editing values 133
    non-linear 142
    sweeping 171
Restarting transient analysis 167
Rise function 269
Rise time, calculating 242, 245
RMS
    calculating 241
    function 302
RMS1 function 302
rnd function 302
RootSumOfSquares function 302
Rotating schematic components 53, 70
Running simulation 64
    basic steps 52
    hierarchical designs 64

S
Saturation 129
SaveRhs command 288
Saving
    graphs 252
    simulation data 254
Schematic
    annotating 77
    bus connections 75
        add 76
        in hierarchy 81
        probing 220
        ripper 76
        wiring 76
    checking 77
    copy to clipboard 76
    creating 69
    displaying bias point 253
    editing 70
        adding free text 73
        copying across schematics 72
        deleting wires 71
        disconnecting wires 53, 71
        duplicating items 71
        labelling nets 78

move single component 71
moving labels 71, 73
placing components 70
rotate, mirror or flip a component 53, 70
undo 72
undo, setting level 318
wiring 71
getting started 52
grid, hiding 318
hierarchical 78
ascending 80
bottom-up method 79
connecting busses 81
creating blocks 79
descending 80
global nets 82
global pins 82
navigating 80
passing parameters 84
probing 211, 227
running simulation 64
top-down method 79
importing models 159
modes 69
net names
displaying 78
user defined 78
preferences 77
component placement options 77
toolbar 77
properties 88, 100
decscript 102
editing in schematic 103
handle 102
incscript 102
lot 102
mapping 102
match 102
model 101, 147
netname 102
params 102
ref 101, 147
restoring 103
schematic_path 102

scterm 102
simulator 102
template 102
tol 102
value 101, 147
valuescript 102
selecting 70
components only 72
multiple 72
wires only 72
symbols
adding properties 95
changing search order 113
copying 113
creating 92
creating from script 99
defining pins 93
drawing arcs 92
drawing segments 92
editing 92
editing properties 98
graphical editor 91
how they are stored 118
installing 112
library manager 111
pin order 94
properties 88, 100
renaming 113
symbol generator 86
uninstalling 113
Xspice pin attributes 95
toolbar
editing 77
placement options 318
unselecting 72
in box 72
using for IC design 116
automatic area and perimeter calculation 117
window 69
worksheets - adding and removing 78
zooming
box 73
in 73
out 73

to fit 73
schematic_path property 102
SchematicExtension option variable 330
ScriptDir option variable 314, 328
ScriptExtension option variable 330
Scripts 274
location 321
options 321
startup 333
Scrolling
graph 246
scterm property 102
Selecting schematic components and wires 70
Sensitivity analysis 185
sep (template property keyword) 107
series (template property keyword) 108
Set command 289
Settling time
calculating 243
Show command 289
sign function 302
SIMPLIS
Analysis modes
AC 199
Periodic operating point (POP) 197─199
transient 195
analysis modes 195
options 199
primitive components 128
using SPICE models 123
SIMPLISComponentButtons option variable 328
Simulation
modes 52
Simulator controls
manual entry 64
Simulator options 186
simulator property 102
SIMXIDX.n 160
sin function 302
Singular matrix 55
SnapshotExtension option variable 330
Snapshots (SIMPLIS) 197
sqrt function 302
STARTPATH system path 313

Startup script 333
STARTUP.INI 316
StartUpDir option variable 328
StartupDir option variable 314
StartUpFile option variable 328
StatusUpdatePeriod option variable 328
step (template property keyword) 109
Stimulus 55
Subcircuits 145
    calling from a schematic 147
    creating from schematic 145
    expanding 188
    passing parameters 148
SumNoise function 302
Sweep modes 170─174
Switch
    voltage controlled 136
    with hysteresis 137
Switches, command line 274
Symbol editor 91
SymbolExtension option variable 330
Symbolic path names 313
Symbols - see Schematic; symbols
SymbolsDir option variable 315, 328
System requirements 29

T
tan function 303
TempDataDir option variable 314, 328
Temperature
    setting 187
    sweeping 171
    with multi-step analysis 190
template property 102, 103
TEMPPATH 313
TextExtension option variable 330
Timestep too small error 166
tol property 102
Tolerance
    current 187
    relative 187
    voltage 187
Toolbar
    graph 207
    schematic 69

configure 77
TotalVectorBufferSize option variable 329
Transfer function analysis 182
plotting results 215
Transformer
ideal 131
non-linear 129
Transient analysis 164–169
SIMPLIS 195
Transient snapshots 167
Transmission line
lossy 135
Truncate function 303
Tutorial 31

U
UIC 134
Undo
Graph Zoom 247
UndoBufferSize option variable 329
Uninstalling 15
unitvec function 303
Unselecting schematic items 72
Unset command 290
UpdateClosedSchematics option variable 227, 329
Upgrade notes 30
UseAltGraphPrintStyles option variable 329
UseGreekMu option variable 329
UseOldOpenSave option variable 329
USER.CAT 158
UserScriptDir option variable 329
UserSymbolsDir option variable 329

V
value property 101, 147
valuescript property 102
vector function 303
VNTOL 187
Voltage
plotting 66, 67
plotting differential 66
Voltage source
controlled 136
fixed 135
sweeping 171

W
Window
    graph 206
    schematic 69
    symbol editor 91
WireWidth option variable 329
Worksheets - schematic 78

X
XatNthY function 269
XatNthYn function 269
XatNthYp function 269
XatNthYpct function 270
XFromY function 303
XY function 304

Y
YatX 270
YatXpct 270
YFromX function 304

Z
Zooming
    graph 246